

CAMBRIDGE

# ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

Fourth Edition

---

Pre-intermediate  
and Intermediate

Stuart Redman

Experience  
Better  
Learning

# **ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE**

**Vocabulary  
reference and  
practice  
with answers  
and ebook**

**Fourth Edition**

---

**Pre-intermediate  
& Intermediate**

**Stuart Redman**



**CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS**



University Printing House, Cambridge cb2 8bs, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi –110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/elt](http://www.cambridge.org/elt)

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997

Fourth edition

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

ISBN 978-131662831-7 Edition with answers and ebook

ISBN 978-131663171-3 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-131663172-0 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# Contents

## Thanks

## Introduction

## Learning

- 1 [Learning vocabulary](#)
- 2 [Keeping a vocabulary notebook](#)
- 3 [Using a dictionary](#)
- 4 [English language words](#)

## The world around us

- 5 [Country, nationality and language](#)
- 6 [The physical world](#)
- 7 [Weather](#)
- 8 [Animals and insects](#)

## People

- 9 [The body and movement](#)
- 10 [Describing appearance](#)
- 11 [Describing character](#)
- 12 [Feelings](#)
- 13 [Family and friends](#)
- 14 [Growing up](#)
- 15 [Romance, marriage and divorce](#)

## Daily life

- 16 [Daily routines](#)
- 17 [The place where you live](#)
- 18 [Around the home](#)
- 19 [Money](#)
- 20 [Health](#)
- 21 [Clothes](#)
- 22 [Fashion and buying clothes](#)
- 23 [Shopping](#)
- 24 [Food](#)
- 25 [Cooking](#)
- 26 [City life](#)
- 27 [Life in the country](#)
- 28 [Transport](#)

29 [On the road](#)

30 [Notices and warnings](#)

## Education and study

- 31 [Classroom language](#)
- 32 [School education](#)
- 33 [Studying English and taking exams](#)
- 34 [University education](#)

## Work and business

- 35 [Jobs](#)
- 36 [Talking about your work](#)
- 37 [Making a career](#)
- 38 [Working in an office](#)
- 39 [Running a company](#)
- 40 [Business and finance](#)

## Leisure and entertainment

- 41 [Sport and leisure](#)
- 42 [Competitive sport](#)
- 43 [Books and films](#)
- 44 [Music](#)
- 45 [Special events](#)

## Tourism

- 46 [Travel bookings](#)
- 47 [Air travel](#)
- 48 [Hotels and restaurants](#)
- 49 [Cafés](#)
- 50 [Sightseeing holidays](#)
- 51 [Holidays by the sea](#)

## Communication and technology

- 52 [Newspapers and television](#)
- 53 [Phoning and texting](#)
- 54 [Computers](#)
- 55 [Email and the Internet](#)

## Social issues

- 56 [Crime](#)
- 57 [Politics](#)
- 58 [Climate change](#)
- 59 [War and violence](#)

## Concepts

- 60 [Time](#)
- 61 [Numbers](#)
- 62 [Distance, dimensions and size](#)
- 63 [Objects, materials, shapes and colour](#)
- 64 [Containers and quantities](#)

## Functional language

- 65 [Apologies, excuses and thanks](#)
- 66 [Requests, permission and suggestions](#)
- 67 [Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing](#)
- 68 [Likes, dislikes, attitudes and preferences](#)
- 69 [Greetings, farewells and special expressions](#)

## Word formation

- 70 [Prefixes: changing meaning](#)
- 71 [Suffixes: forming nouns](#)
- 72 [Suffixes: forming adjectives](#)
- 73 [Compound nouns](#)

## Phrase building

- 74 [Word partners](#)
- 75 [Fixed phrases](#)
- 76 [Fixed phrases in conversation](#)
- 77 [Verb or adjective + preposition](#)
- 78 [Prepositional phrases](#)
- 79 [Phrasal verbs 1: form and meaning](#)
- 80 [Phrasal verbs 2: grammar and style](#)

## Key verbs

- 81 [Make, do and take: uses and phrases](#)
- 82 [Key verbs: give, keep and miss](#)
- 83 [Get: uses, phrases and phrasal verbs](#)
- 84 [Go: meanings and expressions](#)
- 85 [The senses](#)

## Words and grammar

- 86 [Uncountable nouns](#)
- 87 [Verb constructions 1](#)
- 88 [Verb constructions 2](#)
- 89 [Adjectives](#)
- 90 [Prepositions: place and movement](#)
- 91 [Adverbs](#)

## Connecting and linking

- 92 [Time and sequence](#)
- 93 [Addition and contrast](#)
- 94 [Reason, purpose, result, condition](#)

## Style and register

- 95 [Formal and informal English](#)
- 96 [Completing forms and CVs](#)
- 97 [Writing an essay](#)
- 98 [Formal letters and emails](#)
- 99 [Informal emails and messages](#)
- 100 [Abbreviations](#)

## Answer key

## Phonemic symbols

## Index

## Acknowledgements

ELT COURSEBOOKS

# Thanks

Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Fourth Edition: Unit 46, Travel Bookings and Unit 49, Cafés. The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this edition.

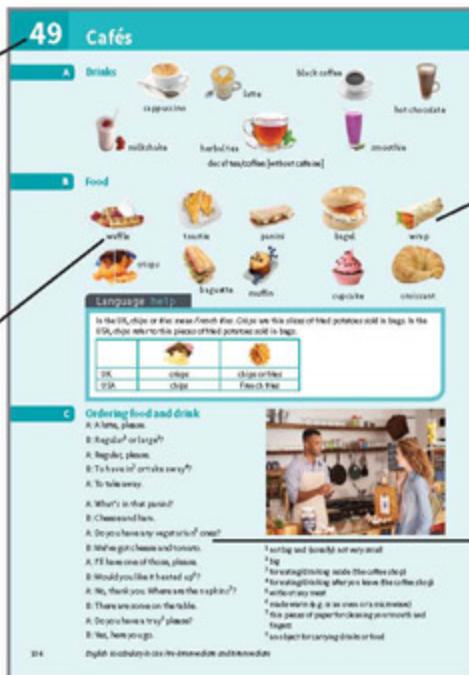
# Introduction

## To the student

This book will help you learn more than 2,000 words and phrases, and you can use it without a teacher. There are 100 units in the book. You can study them in any order, but the first four units have information about vocabulary that will help you with your learning.

Here is what the pages look like:

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.



New vocabulary is in **bold**.

The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

Exercises

49.1 Put the words from A and B in the correct category.

49.2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

49.3 Match the past tense beginning on the left with the best ending on the right.

49.4 Choose the correct word to complete the dialogue.

49.5 Over to you

Over to you is a chance for you to use the new words to write about yourself, your life and your country.

There is space for you to write your answers.

There is an example in each exercise to help you.

After you do the exercises, you can check your answers in the **Answer key** at the back of the book. You will also find possible answers for most of the **Over to you** exercises.

The **Index** at the back of the book has all the new words and phrases from the units, with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation. If you have the edition with the ebook, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and there are more practice exercises as well. see [p262](#) for more information about the ebook.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary when you use the book. sometimes you may want a bilingual dictionary, so you can find a translation; sometimes the book asks you to use an English dictionary for an exercise. You also need a notebook when you are studying. The study units 1–4 in this book will give you ideas and information to help you to use your notebook and become a better learner. I hope you enjoy using this book.

## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or for self-study. It is intended for learners at the upper A2 level and B1 level on the Council of Europe scale, and teaches more than 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary is organised around common everyday topics, but also contains units on different aspects of language such as phrasal verbs, uncountable nouns and link words and phrases. These units provide key information about lexis, but also help to ensure that learners are exposed to the most important vocabulary for their level. The first four units are dedicated to aspects of vocabulary learning such as record keeping and dictionary use. The book has been written so that units can be studied in any order, but I recommend you look at these four study units first, as they provide learners with important advice about vocabulary learning in general.

Throughout the book, vocabulary items have been chosen for their usefulness in a wide range of everyday situations, and this task has been made easier by having access to the English Profile (EP). Forming part of a large research programme sponsored by the Council of Europe, the EP helps teachers and students identify the words or phrases that a learner can be expected to know at each level of the Common European Framework. The words and phrases have mainly been selected using the Cambridge Learner Corpus, examination wordlists and classroom materials, and in this book the main focus is on words and phrases at the upper end of the A2 level and across the B1 level.

Much of the new vocabulary (on average about 25 items per unit) is presented through different types of text, and then explained immediately after the item appears, or in a separate glossary below the text; some words are presented in tables or lists, and contextualised in sentence examples; some of the new vocabulary is presented in pictures and diagrams.

The new vocabulary is then practised on the right-hand pages through a wide range of exercise types. These pages generally progress from easier to more difficult exercises, with items often tested receptively first, e.g. through a matching or grouping exercise, before moving on to more challenging productive exercises such as gap-fill texts or sentence transformations. In many units, the final exercise is called **Over to you**. This indicates a personalised exercise, in which learners have an opportunity to use some of the new vocabulary to talk about themselves, their lives and their country, and sometimes to express their own personal opinions. These make ideal classroom speaking activities for pairs or groups, but many of the exercises on the right-hand page can be adapted for speaking practice. For example, where there are short question and answer dialogues, students can first read the dialogues out loud, then one student can ask the questions, and their partner has to respond appropriately using target vocabulary from the unit, but without referring to the book.

There is a comprehensive Answer key at the back of the book, as well as an Index of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where each item appears.

Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

We hope you enjoy using this new edition.

## A

## Using this book

It's a good idea to have a **routine** when you use this book. [something you do often and usually in the same way] For example:

- a **weekly** routine when you study a new unit for **at least** [not less than] 30–45 minutes;
- a **daily** routine when you **revise** that unit. [study it again] You may only need to revise for five or ten minutes each time.

## 1.1

## Over to you

Write your answers.

1 How often can you spend at least half an hour or forty-five minutes on a unit?

.....  
2 How often can you revise? How much time can you spend when you revise? Where will you do it?

.....

## B

## Studying a new unit

When you are studying a unit for the first time, you need to be **active** when you are learning.

- With a new word or phrase, **say it aloud** [speak it so you can hear it], and repeat it to yourself **silently** [in your head, not speaking]. If you have the eBook that goes with the book, use it to check the pronunciation.
- Use a **highlighter pen** to mark words you think are important or difficult.
- Write down new words and phrases in your notebook. (See Unit 2 for more information.)
- Always try to write an example sentence for new words. You can choose an example from this book or a dictionary, but an example from your own life will often help you to remember a word, e.g. *I shared a flat with an Australian girl when I was in London last year.*
- Do exercises in pencil, then you can **rub** them **out** (using a **rubber**) and do them again later. This is a good way to revise vocabulary.

## 1.2

## Over to you

Write your answers.

1 Which of these things do you do now when you are learning vocabulary?

.....

2 What will you do in the future? .....

.....

## C

## Revising a unit

When you are revising a unit one or two days later, it is also important to be as active as possible.

- Test yourself, e.g. look at a word and cover the meaning. Can you remember what the meaning is? If you can't, check the meaning, then come back to the word in five minutes' time and test yourself again.
- Look at what you wrote in your notebook when you first studied the unit. Is there any new information you want to add, e.g. something about the pronunciation, or a common word partner? (See Unit 2.)
- Diagrams may help you to organise some of the vocabulary differently, and help you to remember it.

Who took my pen?

Let's take a break now.

## 1.3

## Over to you

Write your answers.

1 Do you revise vocabulary that you study? If so, how often? .....

2 Will you try to revise more often in the future? If so, will you use some of the ideas above? .....

**take**

I took notes during the lecture.

What size shoes do you take?

D

## Expanding\* your vocabulary

- When you learn a word, e.g. *dirty*, think of **synonyms** (*syn*) [words with a similar meaning] or **opposites** (*opp*) in your language. Look them up in a bilingual dictionary to find the English words, then look up the English words in an English dictionary to check the meaning. From this, you will find that the opposite of dirty is clean, and you may also find **filthy** [very dirty].

\* making something bigger

## 1.4 Using this method, find opposites for the words in bold.

- 1 My room is very **clean**. opp *dirty* .....
- 2 It's a **permanent** job. opp .....
- 3 He was **kind** to all of his animals. opp .....
- 4 Babies have very soft, **smooth** skin. opp .....
- 5 Where's the **entrance**? opp .....
- 6 Was the bird **dead**? opp .....
- 7 Did they **accept** the invitation? opp .....

- Building word families (see Units 70–72) will also help to expand your vocabulary. From a noun, verb or adjective, you can often find related words in the dictionary with a similar meaning. So, you can often learn two or three words, and not just one, e.g. **argue** *v* = have an angry discussion; *n* = **argument**.

## 1.5 Use a dictionary to find the related parts of speech for the words in bold.

- 1 She gave me some **advice**. *verb* *advise* .....
- 2 We mustn't **argue**. *noun* .....
- 3 I will have to **revise** this unit. *noun* .....
- 4 Is there a **choice**? *verb* .....
- 5 I want to **expand** my vocabulary. *noun* .....
- 6 The two boys are very **different**. *noun* .....
- 7 They need to **communicate** more. *noun* .....

- Try to read and listen to English as much as possible. The more you read and listen, the more you will learn. When you read, try to:
  - **Highlight** or underline interesting new words.
  - Highlight words if they are familiar but you can't remember the meaning.
- There is a lot of spoken English on the Internet which you can play again and again. Try to make a note of interesting words and look up the meaning.

## 1.6

## Over to you

Now choose a unit that interests you. Study the left-hand page, then do the exercises in pencil. Wait for at least 24 hours, revise the unit, then answer these questions.

1 How many answers did you get right the first time? .....

2 How many answers did you get right the second time? .....

## A

## What do you do?

This is what some students do.



RAFAEL

I **write down** new English words and phrases in my notebook, and next to each one I write a Spanish **translation**. I usually write down if a word is a *noun, verb, adjective*, and so on.



KAZUO

I sometimes write a word in phonemics because English pronunciation is very difficult for me. But my notebook is a **mess** [nothing is in a good order; syn **untidy**]. I like to **draw** pictures.



EUN

I sometimes **make a note of** new words in my notebook, but I often **forget** [don't remember]. I usually write a translation, and sometimes I write example sentences as well.



ANDREY

I've got a notebook. I don't use it much but when I do, I try and list words by **topic**, so I put all the animals together, and all the clothes words together, and so on. I find it's easier to remember the words this way.



DONATA

I **note down** new words and phrases. Sometimes I **translate** them **into** Polish, and sometimes I write an **explanation** [a description of what something means] in English if it is not difficult. For example:  
*kitten – a very young cat*

## B

## Tips for your notebook

A **tip** is a piece of advice to help you. Here are some tips for your notebook.

- Put words from one **topic** in the same place, e.g. food in one place, clothes in another, etc. Don't **mix them up** [put them together with no order]. You can also have grammar topics, e.g. 'uncountable nouns', or a page for words that all have a connection, e.g. words and phrases that were all in a story you read in English. Some words and phrases will go in more than one topic.
- If you can't find a topic for a new word or phrase, e.g. *useful* or *in particular*, put them in a different place in your notebook, e.g. a page for each day or each week, or perhaps one page for every English lesson you have. Write the **date** clearly at the top, e.g. Monday 14<sup>th</sup> May.
- When you write down new vocabulary, write a translation if it is **necessary** [you need it; opp **unnecessary**], but also write the meaning in English if it is possible, or draw pictures.
- If possible, add synonyms, opposites, other parts of speech, etc. (See Unit 1.)  
**awful adj** = terrible (syn **dreadful**)  
**enjoy v** = like something and get pleasure from it    **n** = **enjoyment adj** = **enjoyable**
- Example sentences help you with the grammar of a word, or with word partners (collocations).  
**I enjoy living** in a big city. (NOT **I enjoy to live** in a big city.) (See Units 87–8.)  
**I spent two weeks in** Rome. (NOT **I passed** two weeks in Rome. You spend time in a place.) (See Unit 74.)
- Remember, words often have more than one meaning that you need to know, e.g. a **tip** is also money that you give, for example, to a waiter for serving you in a restaurant.

# Exercises

- 2.1** Organise the words into the topics below. One word can go in two different topics.  
Use a dictionary to help you.

diet branch lay the table count **v** dig **v** ground flour add up  
raw leaf minus butcher thousand frozen zero butterfly

food	garden	numbers
<i>diet</i>		

- 2.2** Explain these words in English, or draw a picture, or if you think an explanation is too difficult and a drawing is not possible, write a translation instead.

- 1 raw *not cooked* .....
- 2 dig .....  
.....
- 3 butcher .....  
.....
- 4 leaf .....  
.....
- 5 flour .....  
.....
- 6 lay the table .....  
.....
- 7 add up .....  
.....
- 8 minus .....  
.....

- 2.3** What information could you include with these words? The answers are all on the opposite page.

- 1 forget *opposite – remember* .....
- 2 awful .....  
.....
- 3 necessary .....  
.....
- 4 translate .....  
.....
- 5 tip .....  
.....
- 6 enjoy .....  
.....

**2.4**

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Look again at what the students said on the opposite page. What are the good things that they do? Underline them.
- 2 Do you do all of these things? .....
- 3 Is there anything you don't do now, but will do in the future?  
.....
- 4 At the moment, which person's notebook is most like your notebook? .....
- 5 What are the most useful tips on the opposite page for you?  
.....

## A

## What dictionaries do I need?

A **bilingual** dictionary [using two languages] is easy for you to understand, and quick and easy to use. A dictionary in English will give you reading practice in English and many more examples of how words are used. If possible, use both. These are good dictionaries in English for your level, and most of them are available online:

*Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*  
*Longman Active Study Dictionary*

*Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*  
*Macmillan Essential Dictionary*

## B

## Information in dictionaries

If you **look up a word** [find a word in a dictionary] using the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*, the information is shown like this:

pronunciation using **phonemic symbols** (see page 247)

a **definition** explains the meaning

**bold italics** show common word partners (see Unit 74)

**part of speech** (= noun)

[U] tells you that *fun* is uncountable (see Unit 86)

**fixed phrases** using the word are shown in **bold** (see Units 75–6)

examples are in **italics**

**fun<sup>1</sup>** /fʌn/ **noun** [u]

1 enjoyment or pleasure, or something that gives you enjoyment or pleasure  
*She's great fun to be with.*  
*Have fun!* (= enjoy yourself)  
*It's no fun having to work late every night.*

2 **for fun/for the fun of it** for pleasure and not for any other reason

3 **make fun of sb/sth** to make a joke about someone or something in an unkind way.  
*The other children at school used to make fun of his hair.*

## 3.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- 1 allways .....  
2 realy .....  
3 unfortunatly .....  
4 expecially .....  
5 cloths .....

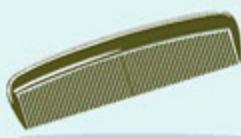
- 6 confortable .....  
7 accomodation .....  
8 beautifull .....  
9 unbelievable .....  
10 neccesary .....

3.2 In the word *island* /'aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words.

1 knee



2 comb



3 castle



4 salmon



5 receipt



## C

## Defining words

'Defining words' are words that dictionaries use when they **define** [explain] the words in the dictionary. Some of these are quite common.

**emphasise** [give something more attention and importance], e.g. My teacher has always emphasised the importance of writing down new words in a notebook.

**relating to** or **connected to/with** [having a relationship with someone or something], e.g. *musical* is connected with / related to *music*

**amount** [how much there is of something], e.g. £5 million is a large amount of money.

**official** [done by the government or someone in authority], e.g. A passport is an official document.

**behave** [do or say things in a particular way], e.g. People can behave strangely when they're nervous.

# Exercises

## 3.3 Complete the dictionary definitions using words from the box.

connected with emphasise relating to behave official amount

- 1 **industrial** /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 1 adjective ..... *connected with* industry
- 2 **sum** /sʌm/ noun [C] an ..... *of money*
- 3 **pretend** /prɪ'tend/ verb [I,T] to ..... *as if something is true when it is not*
- 4 **certificate** /sə'tifikət/ noun [C] an ..... *document that gives details to show something is true*
- 5 **not at all** /nɒt ət ə:l/ used instead of ‘no’ or ‘not’ to ..... *what you are saying: I’m not at all happy about it*
- 6 **legal** /'li:gəl/ adjective ..... *the law*

D

## Using a dictionary

- When you use a dictionary to check the meaning of a word, put a **tick** (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, **see** [find out] if you remember the word.
- When you meet a new word or phrase in a text, first try to **guess the meaning** [try to think of the meaning when you don’t know it]. Then, use a dictionary to see if your **guess** was correct.
- Don’t just read the dictionary definition. Example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they help you to understand the meaning more clearly.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get two or three different translations, check these words in an English dictionary to see which translation is the best one for the situation.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. You may need to read through the different meanings.

## 3.4 Answer the questions, and use an English dictionary to check the answers.

- 1 What does *puppy* mean? ..... *It’s a very young dog.*
- 2 Is the correct spelling *organize* or *organise*? .....
- 3 What part of speech is *extremely*? .....
- 4 What kind of noun is *advice*? .....
- 5 What preposition follows the verb *rely*? .....
- 6 Look up *friend*, and then the words in **bold** that are often used with it. Can you complete these phrases? She’s an ..... friend; he’s my ..... friend; you ..... friends with people.

## 3.5 Match the sentences on the right with the different meanings of *post* on the left.

**post<sup>1</sup>** /pəʊst/ noun

- 1 **System** [no plural] UK (US mail)  
the system for sending letters, parcels, etc  
*Your letter is in the post.*  
*I'm sending the documents by post.*
- 2 **Letters** [u] UK (US mail)  
letters, parcels, etc that you send or receive  
*Has the post arrived/come yet?*
- 3 **Job** [c] formal  
a job  
*A part-time post.*  
*A teaching post.*
- 4 **Pole** [c]  
a long, vertical piece of wood or metal fixed into the ground at one end.  
*I found the dog tied to a post.*

- 1 He’s applied for a post overseas.
- 2 Did you send the cheque by post?
- 3 I tied the flag to a post.
- 4 We haven’t had any post yet.

**A****Parts of speech**

“I have a brown leather chair by the window, and I often sit there in the morning to listen to music.”

In the sentence above, *I* is a **pronoun**; *chair*, *window*, *morning* and *music* are all **nouns**; *have*, *sit* and *listen* are **verbs**; *brown* and *leather* are **adjectives**; *often* is an **adverb**; *by* and *to* are **prepositions**; *the* is a **definite article**; *a* is an **indefinite article**; *and* is a **conjunction** or **link word**.

Here are two more examples:

“We saw an elephant at the zoo yesterday.”

*Elephant* and *zoo* are nouns; *saw* is a verb; *at* is a preposition; *an* is an indefinite article; *the* is a definite article.

“It was a cold night, so I walked quickly.”

*Was* and *walked* are verbs; *cold* is an adjective; *night* is a noun; *quickly* is an adverb; *so* is a link word.

**B****Grammar**

When you are learning vocabulary, you need to know certain things about different words; for example, if nouns are **countable**, e.g. *books*, *apples*, *chairs*; or **uncountable**, e.g. *information* (NOT *informations*), *advice* (NOT *advices*). (See [Unit 86](#).)

With verbs, you need to know if they are **regular**, e.g. *work*, *live*, etc; or **irregular**, e.g. *go/went*, *take/took*. You will also need to learn the grammar of **phrasal verbs**, e.g. *take something off*, *wake up*. (See [Units 79–80](#).)

You also need to learn certain groups of words as **phrases**, e.g. *at the moment*, *never mind*, *see you later*. (See [Units 75–6](#).)

**C****Word building**

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include *in-* and *dis-*, e.g. *incorrect* and *dislike*. Common suffixes include *-ment* and *-ive*, e.g. *improvement* and *attractive*. (See [Units 70–72](#).)

**D****Pronunciation**

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. *book* /bʊk/, *before* /bɪ'fɔ:/, *cinema* /'sinəmə/.

Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. *book* has one syllable, *before* has two syllables, *cinema* has three syllables.

It is important to know which syllable to **stress**, e.g. on *before* it is the second syllable (*be'fore*), on *cinema* it is the first syllable ('*cinema*). The vertical mark ' shows where the stressed syllable begins.

**E****Punctuation**

Every sentence must begin with a **capital letter** and end with a **full stop**. Some sentences have a **comma**, which often shows a **pause** [when you stop reading or speaking for a short time] in a long sentence. Did you also know that a question must end with a **question mark**?

# Exercises

## 4.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

noun comma phonemic symbol adverb stress  
question mark syllable preposition full stop adjective

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
<i>noun</i>		

## 4.2 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money because it was a wonderful and it was very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else. I may go back next year if have enough time.

- 1 *Spain (noun)*.....  
 2 .....  
 3 .....  
 4 .....  
 5 .....  
 6 .....  
 7 .....  
 8 .....  
 9 .....  
 10 .....

## 4.3 Answer the questions.

- What type of verb is **break**? *an irregular verb*.....
- What does a sentence begin with? .....
- What do you put at the end of every sentence? .....
- What's missing here. .....
- What shows you there is a pause in the middle of a long sentence? .....
- What type of noun is **butter**? .....
- What type of verbs are **pick somebody up** and **grow up**? .....
- What are **full stop** and **comma** examples of? .....
- How do dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word? .....
- Is the 'a' in **phrase** pronounced the same as **can**, **can't** or **late**? .....

## 4.4 Mark the stress on each word. How many syllables are there?

'English 2 informal opposite syllable  
decide adjective education pronunciation

## 4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions.

cheap dangerous kind lucky

- What part of speech are these words? *adjectives*.....
- Can you change the first two words into adverbs? .....
- Is the pronunciation of *kind* like *wind* (noun) or *find* (verb)? .....
- What prefix do you need to form the opposite of the last two words? .....
- What suffix makes a noun from *kind*? .....

# Country, nationality and language

A

# Who speaks what where?

country	nationality	language
Australia	Australian	English
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
China	Chinese	Mandarin (and Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
(South) Korea	Korean	Korean
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
the UK (United Kingdom)*	British	English
the USA (United States of America)	American	English

\*the UK (England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland)

I come from Argentina, so I'm Argentinian and my first language is Spanish. The capital is Buenos Aires, which has a population of more than 10 million people.

## Common mistakes

He's **E**nglish. (NOT He's **e**nglish.); We ate **F**rench food. (NOT We ate **f**rance food.)

I went to **the USA**. (NOT I went to ~~USA~~.) I also visited **the UK**. (NOT I also visited ~~UK~~.)

B

## Parts of the world

The **continents** in the world are **Europe, Africa, Asia, North America, South America, Australia [Australia and New Zealand] and Antarctica.**

We also use these terms for different parts of the world:

**the Middle East** (e.g. United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia), **the Far East** (e.g. Thailand, Japan), **the Caribbean** (e.g. Jamaica, Barbados), **Scandinavia** (Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Finland).

C

## The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, we add 's' to nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an', but we need the definite article (the) for most others.

With both groups we can also use the word 'people', e.g. Brazilian people, British people, etc.

# Exercises

## 5.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 What nationality are people from Poland? *Polish* .....
- 2 What nationality are people from Thailand? .....
- 3 What language is spoken in Spain? .....
- 4 Where do people speak Hebrew? .....
- 5 Where do people speak Mandarin? .....
- 6 What language is spoken in Brazil? .....
- 7 What language is spoken in Egypt? .....
- 8 What nationality are people from Germany? .....
- 9 Write down three countries whose first language is English. .....
- 10 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland. .....

## 5.2 What parts of the world are these countries in? Write the continent, e.g. Europe, or the area, e.g. the Far East.

- |                               |                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Germany <i>Europe</i> ..... | 4 Italy .....     |
| 2 Japan .....                 | 5 Jamaica .....   |
| 3 Saudi Arabia .....          | 6 Argentina ..... |

## 5.3 Underline the main stress in the words in the box, and practise saying them. Use the pronunciation in the index to help you.

Brazilian	Japan	Egyptian	Arabic	Scandinavia
Chinese	Portuguese	Australia	Saudi Arabia	

## 5.4 Write the answers.

- 1 Bangkok is the capital of *Thailand* .....
- 2 Ankara is the capital of .....
- 3 Seoul is the capital of .....
- 4 Moscow is the capital of .....
- 5 Buenos Aires is the capital of .....
- 6 Athens is the capital of .....

## 5.5 Complete the sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1 I've worked a lot with <i>the French</i> ..... | FRANCE      |
| 2 I know lots of .....                           | GERMANY     |
| 3 We do a lot of business with .....             | JAPAN       |
| 4 I used to know a lot of .....                  | ISRAEL      |
| 5 I have always found ..... very friendly.       | BRAZIL      |
| 6 People often say that ..... are very reserved. | BRITAIN     |
| 7 ..... are very organised.                      | SWITZERLAND |
| 8 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Moscow.     | RUSSIA      |

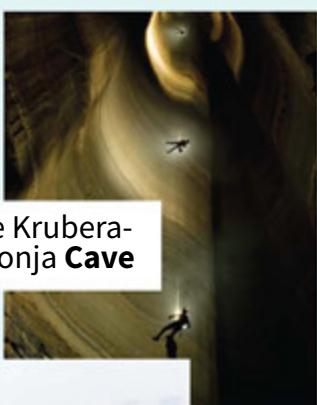
## 5.6 Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then ask a friend – if possible, someone from a different country – and write their answers.

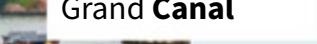
- 1 What's your nationality? .....
- 2 What's the capital city and population of your country? .....
- 3 What's your first language? .....
- 4 What other languages do you speak? .....
- 5 Which countries have you visited? .....
- 6 Which countries would you like to visit? .....

# 6 The physical world

## A Facts



The Krubera-Voronja Cave



Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal



The Angel Falls

**DID YOU KNOW...?**

Two thirds of the **surface**<sup>1</sup> of the **Earth**<sup>2</sup>, is **covered in**, water.

El Azizia in Libya is the hottest place **in the world**, where **temperatures** of **over**<sup>3</sup> 57 °C (57 **degrees** Celsius) have been recorded.

The coldest place **on earth** is probably Vostok in Antarctica, which reached a temperature of **minus** 89 °C.

The Krubera-Voronja **Cave** near the Black Sea coast in Georgia, is the deepest cave in the world. It is **over** 2000 metres deep.

The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand **Canal** is the longest canal in the world. It is 1,794 kilometres long.

The highest **waterfall** in the world is the Angel Falls in Venezuela. It is 979 metres high.

The Amazon Rainforest is the largest **rainforest** in the world, **covering** 40% of the South American continent.

The Pacific is the largest **ocean** in the world, and is nearly twice the size of the Atlantic Ocean.

<sup>1</sup>the top or outside part

<sup>2</sup>the planet we live on

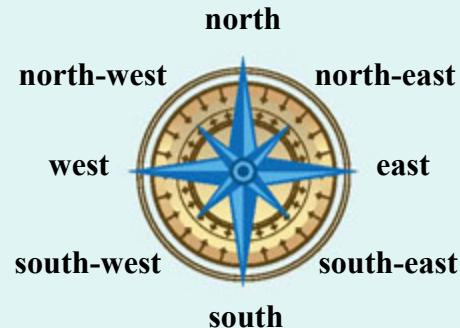
<sup>3</sup>more than

## Language help

**Cover** can mean that something is over something else, e.g. *The surface was covered in water; The ground was covered with snow*. Cover can also refer to the size of something, e.g. *The Amazon rainforest covers 40% of South America*, or the distance you travel, e.g. *We covered ten miles in one day*.

## B Geography

Switzerland **consists of** [is made or formed from] three main geographical **regions** [areas in a country or the world]: The Swiss Plateau, The Jura, and The Alps. Switzerland is a land of **contrasts** [big differences], with completely different **landscapes** [the appearance of an area of land]. The **climate** [weather conditions] can also change within a very short **distance**. For example, Ascona **in the south** has an almost Mediterranean climate, but the Dufour Peak in Valais has a very cold climate. The **distance** between the two is just 70 kilometres.



# Exercises

## 6.1 Look at the map of Switzerland and complete the sentences.

- 1 Zurich is *in the north*.....
- 2 The Jura mountains are ..... .
- 3 Geneva is ..... .
- 4 St Gallen is ..... .
- 5 Basel is ..... .
- 6 Lake Constance is ..... .
- 7 Locarno is ..... .

## 6.2 Test your knowledge. Can you complete these sentences without looking at the opposite page?

- 1 Two thirds of the *surface* ..... of the Earth is covered in water.
- 2 Vostok in Antarctica is the ..... .
- 3 El Azizia in Libya is the ..... .
- 4 The Krubera-Voronja ..... is the deepest in the world.
- 5 The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand ..... is the longest in the world.
- 6 At 979 metres the Angel Falls is the highest ..... in the world.
- 7 The Amazon is the largest ..... .
- 8 The largest ..... in the world is the Pacific.
- 9 The ..... we live on is called the Earth.

## 6.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the *world* .....
- 2 In the autumn, the ground is ..... in leaves that have fallen off the trees.
- 3 You find this animal in the semi-desert ..... of Australia.
- 4 Brazil is a country of ..... : large empty areas inland, and cities near the coast.
- 5 The Amazon rainforest ..... 40% of the South American continent.
- 6 Mountains and lakes are typical of the ..... in Switzerland.
- 7 It was a freezing night. The ..... was well below zero.
- 8 Switzerland ..... of three main geographical regions.
- 9 It takes the moon just under 28 days to go round the ..... .
- 10 People say Cape Town in South Africa has a wonderful ..... : sunny for much of the year, and never too hot or very cold.
- 11 The ..... from London to Paris is 340 kilometres; that's less than the ..... from London to Edinburgh.
- 12 When the temperature fell to ..... 10 ..... Celsius, all the schools in the town closed.

## 6.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions about your country and your region.

- 1 What are the highest and lowest temperatures?
- 2 Do you like the climate?
- 3 Are there any regions which have a very different landscape from the rest of the country?
- 4 Do you have any long canals, or famous caves or waterfalls?
- 5 How would you describe the landscape in the region where you live?
- 6 What's the distance from the place where you live to the next big town?



# Exercises

## 7.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                            |                 |
|------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a sunny  | <input type="checkbox"/> e | a with rain     |
| 2 heavy    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b fog           |
| 3 a strong | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c sky           |
| 4 a clear  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d and lightning |
| 5 pour     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e day           |
| 6 thick    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f rain          |
| 7 thunder  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g wind          |

## 7.2 Write short sentences to describe the weather conditions in each picture.



1 It's foggy.



3



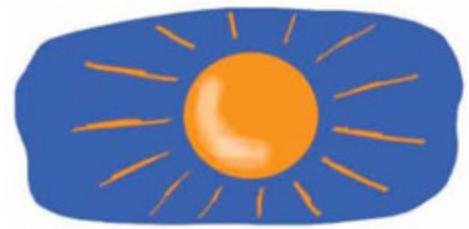
5



2



4



6

## 7.3 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 When it's foggy, you need sunglasses. *False. When it's foggy you can't see very well.*
- 2 It's nice to sit outside when it's freezing.
- 3 If you're boiling, you might enjoy a swim.
- 4 A shower is a type of wind.
- 5 If it's chilly, you may want to put on a coat.
- 6 If it's humid, the air will be very dry.
- 7 A mild winter means it is colder than usual.
- 8 If it rains, the road will be wet.

## 7.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 We had really thick fog this morning.
- 2 I don't mind wet weather if it stays quite mild. I just hate the rain.
- 3 We had a heavy rain this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
- 4 It was wet with rain when we left the house.
- 5 It was minus ten degrees in New York yesterday. It is often below zero here in winter. It's very cold!
- 6 It's getting very humid. We might have a shower later.
- 7 It was cloudy and grey this morning, but when the sun came out it was quite hot.
- 8 What's the temperature today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
- 9 It was hot sitting in the sun, but under the beach umbrella it was nice and cool.

## 7.5

### Over to you

Do you have these weather conditions in your country? When do you have them?

humid weather  
thick fog

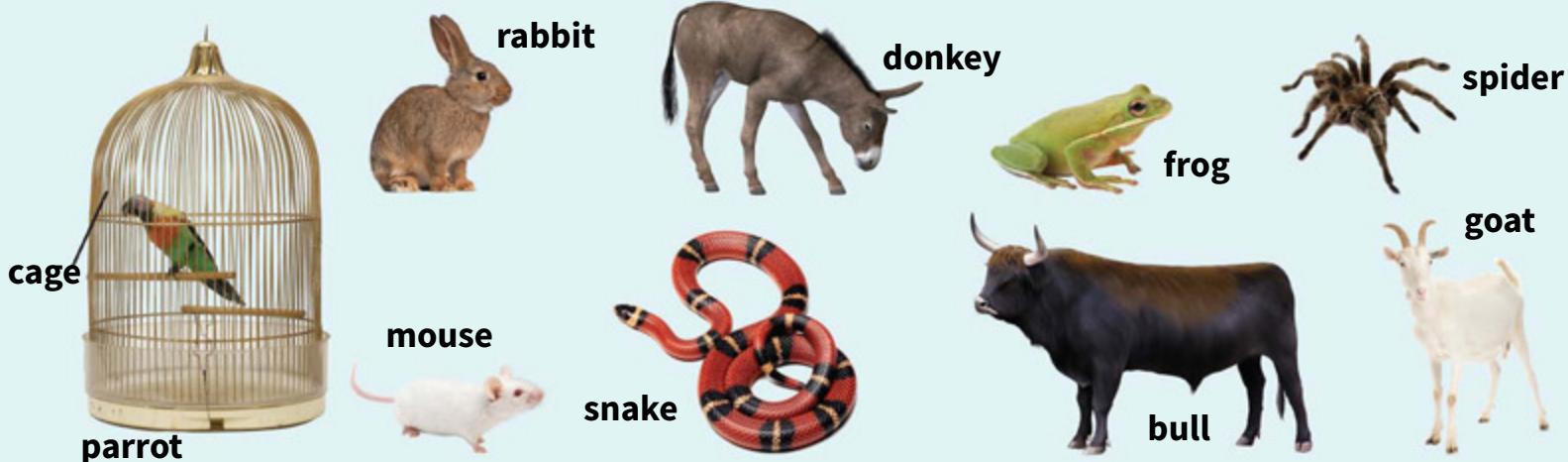
storms and thunderstorms  
temperatures below zero

strong winds  
showers

## A

## Pets and farm animals

In the UK, many people **keep pets** [animals that live with people]. The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep birds, e.g. **parrots**, that are usually in a **cage**. Children sometimes keep **mice** (*sing mouse*) and **rabbits**. Some people keep more unusual animals as pets, e.g. **frogs**, **snakes** and **spiders**.

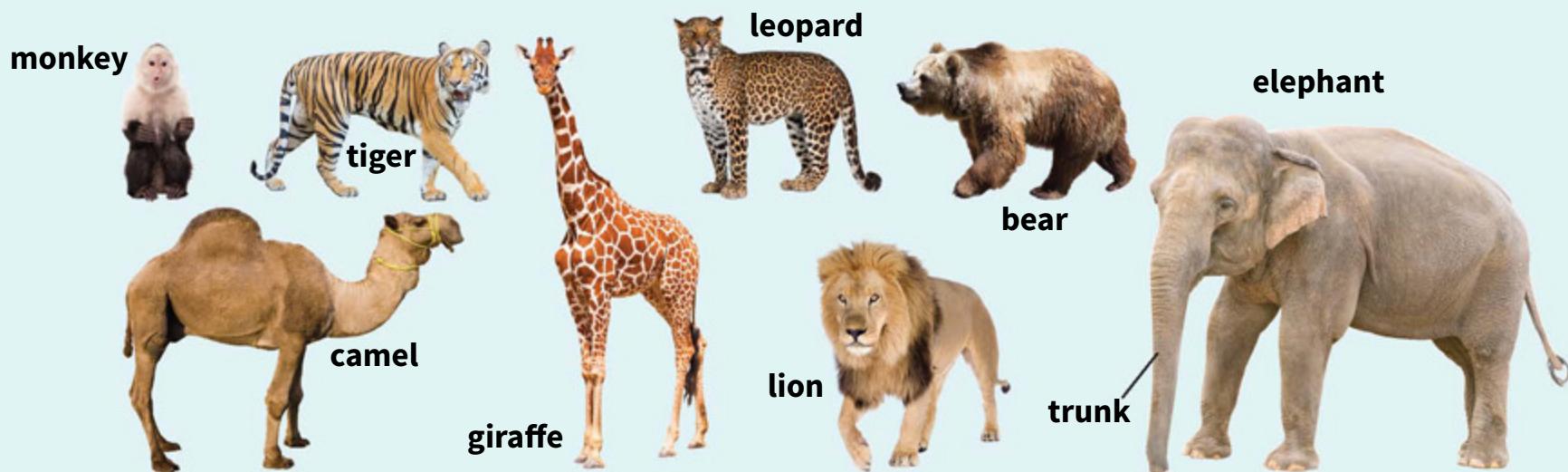


Farms in the UK may have sheep, pigs, cows, horses, **donkeys**, chickens, **goats** and a **bull**.

## B

## Wild animals

The pictures show a number of **wild animals** [animals that normally live in natural conditions]. If you are lucky, you may see these animals **in the wild** [living free], but you will probably see them in a **zoo**. Some of these animals, for example tigers, are now quite **rare** [not often seen or found]. It is important that we **protect** [keep safe] these **endangered animals**.



## C

## Insects



## D

## Sea creatures

Many different **creatures** [living things, e.g. animals] live in the sea.



# Exercises

## 8.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

goat monkey goat fly bull bee elephant pig  
mosquito tiger donkey camel ant leopard butterfly

farm animals	wild animals	insects
goat		

## 8.2 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- |                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 whale water <i>different</i> | 6 goat giraffe .....  |
| 2 cat camel <i>same</i>        | 7 spider wild .....   |
| 3 bear bee .....               | 8 camel snake .....   |
| 4 leopard mosquito .....       | 9 leopard shark ..... |
| 5 lion tiger .....             | 10 monkey frog .....  |

## 8.3 Complete the sentences.

- Cats and dogs are the most common *pets* ..... in the UK.
- I've only seen ..... animals in zoos or on TV.
- I don't like keeping birds in a ..... ; they need more space.
- I hate ants and mosquitos. In fact, I hate all .....
- It's hard to see tigers in the wild because they are now .....
- Some animals are disappearing, so we must ..... them.

## 8.4 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

- Sharks* ..... can swim very long distances.
- ..... are very clever and are similar to humans.
- ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
- ..... can be 25 metres in length.
- ..... can eat leaves from tall trees when they are standing on the ground.
- ..... sometimes change their skin several times a year.
- ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
- ..... are kept as pets, usually in cages, and some can even talk!

## 8.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Have you got any pets? What pets?
- Have you ever seen animals in the wild? What did you see? Where?
- How do you feel about birds in cages and wild animals in zoos?
- Are you frightened of any creatures, e.g. mice?

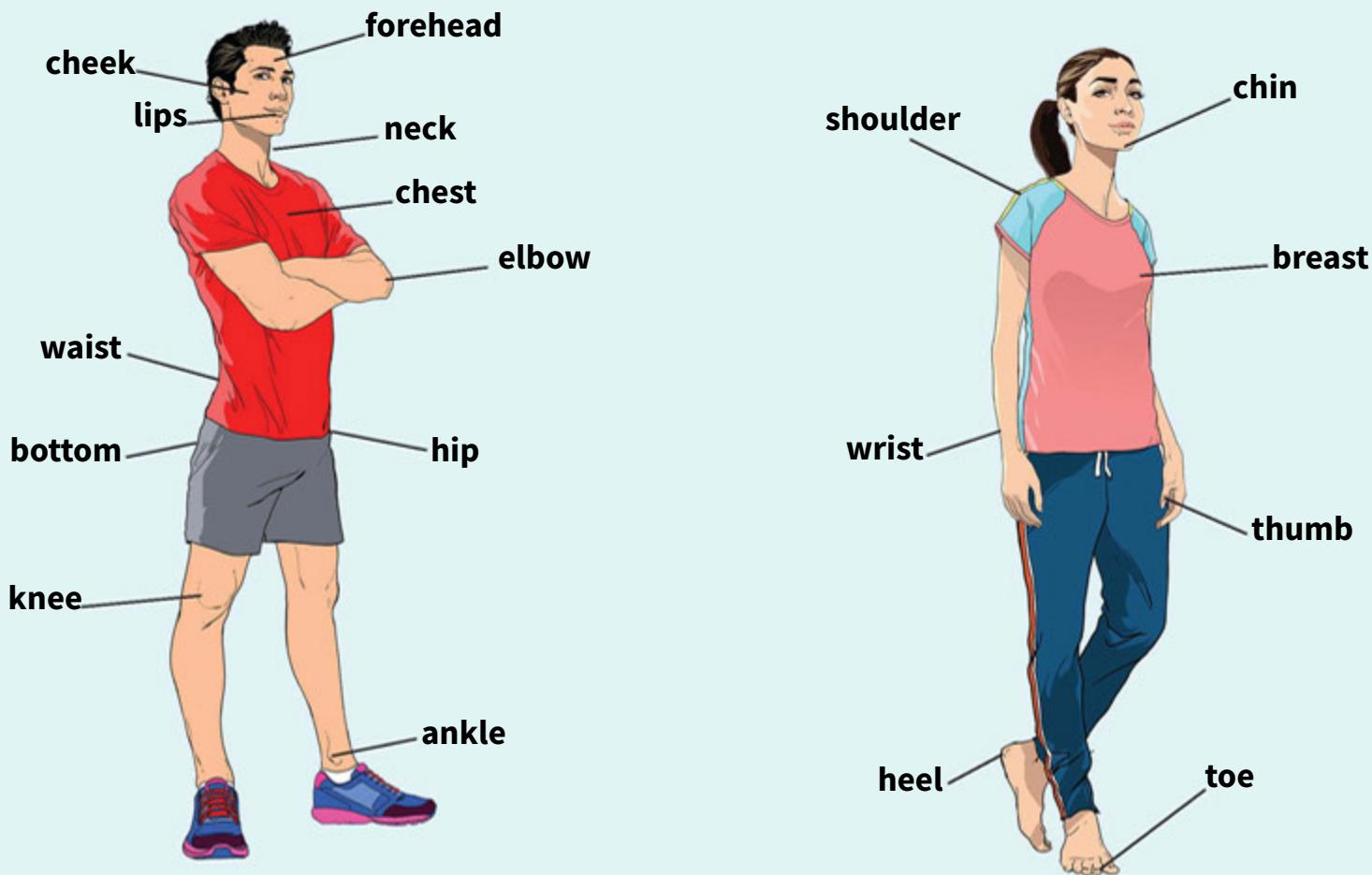
## 9

# The body and movement

A

## Parts of the body

The outer part of the body is covered in **skin**. Too much sun is bad for your skin.



B

## Movements with your mouth, face and head

People **breathe** through their nose or mouth. You **breathe in** and **out** about 12–15 times a minute.

People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite.

People **laugh at** things which are funny.

People sometimes **cry** if they're very unhappy, or receive bad news.

People in some countries **nod their head** [move it up and down] to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** [move it from side to side] for 'no'.

People often **yawn** when they're tired, and sometimes when they're bored.

C

## Common expressions



**shake hands  
with someone**



**comb your  
hair**



**blow your  
nose**



**fold your  
arms**



**wave to  
somebody**

# Exercises

## 9.1 Find ten more words for parts of the body, either across or down.

T	H	U	K	C	A	P
O	N	H	N	H	N	I
E	C	H	E	E	K	O
H	I	P	E	S	L	C
E	A	N	K	T	E	H
E	L	B	O	W	E	I
L	I	P	S	K	I	N

toe .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

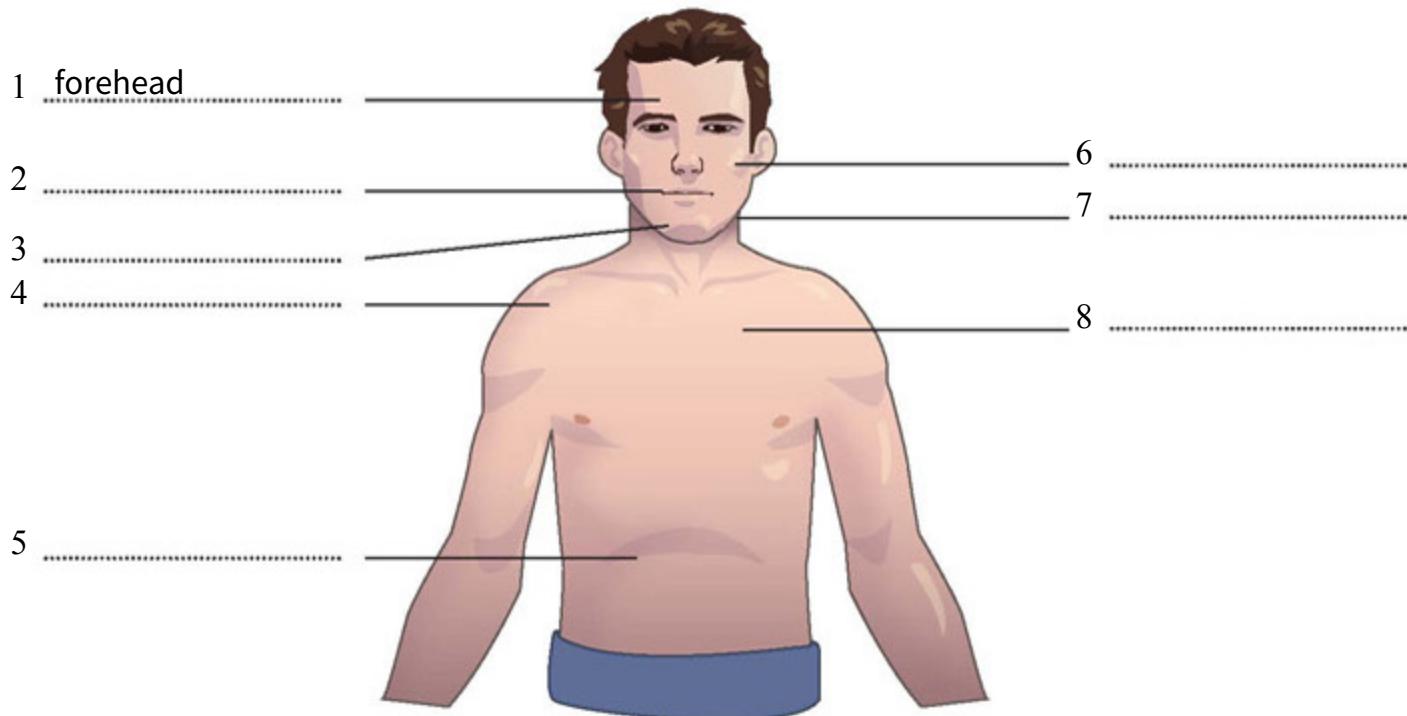
.....

## 9.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- 1 shake  e
- 2 wave
- 3 comb
- 4 fold
- 5 blow
- 6 nod

- a your hair
- b your nose
- c to somebody
- d your head
- e hands
- f your arms

## 9.3 Label the picture.



## 9.4 What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

- 1 People often smile ..... *when they're happy*
- 2 They often breathe quickly after .....
- 3 They laugh .....
- 4 They may wave to somebody .....
- 5 They blow their nose .....
- 6 They shake their head .....
- 7 And nod their head .....
- 8 They cry .....
- 9 They yawn .....

## A

**Describing beauty**

Your **appearance** is the way you look, and we sometimes use different words to talk about **beauty** in men and women.

**WOMEN** can be **attractive** or **good-looking** [nice to look at], and we often use **pretty** [attractive] to describe a girl. We use **beautiful** or **gorgeous** for women who are very attractive.

**MEN** can be attractive and good-looking, but also **handsome**. If men are very attractive, we can say they are **gorgeous** or very **good-looking**, but not usually **beautiful**.

Liam has become quite **handsome**.

Olivia was very **pretty** when she was younger.

Bella looks **gorgeous** in that dress.

They're a very **good-looking** couple.

## Language help

The opposite of **beautiful** is **ugly**, but it is not very polite to describe someone as ugly; **ordinary** [not special or different] is more polite. It also isn't polite to say that someone is fat; **overweight** is more polite.

## B

**Size**

We can talk about a person's **height** [how tall or short they are] and their **weight** [how heavy they are], e.g. *I'm roughly* [about; syn **approximately**] *one metre eighty (tall)*, and *I weigh* just under eighty kilograms. If someone is not tall or short, you can describe them as **medium height**. If a person is very similar to most other people in height and weight, you can say they are **average**.

A: How tall is Hannah?

B: **Medium height**, I'd say.

A: Is Marco quite big?

B: No, about **average**.

## C

**Hair**

**blonde**  
(or **blond**)



**fair**



**brown**



**dark**



**black**



**straight**



**wavy**



**curly**

## Common mistakes

Remember that 'hair' is uncountable, e.g. She's got straight **hair**. (NOT She's got straight **hairs**.)

Also: She's got long black hair. (NOT She's got a long black hair.)

## D

**Talking about someone's appearance**

A: **What does** Sophia's boyfriend **look like**? [Can you describe his appearance?]

B: He's blond, and quite good-looking.

A: Is he tall?

B: Er, **tallish** [quite tall], but he's got **broad** shoulders [wide; opp **narrow**]. He looks very **athletic** [strong, healthy and often good at sports]. I think he does a lot of sport.

A: Is he quite **smart** [clean, tidy and stylish]?

B: Yeah, he **dresses** quite **well** [the clothes he wears are quite nice].

## Language help

We can use the suffix **-ish** at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite', e.g. *She's got **longish** hair*, and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less', e.g. *He's **twentyish***.

# Exercises

## **10.1 Complete the sentences.**

- 1 She's got straight *hair* .....
  - 2 Isabella is very good-.....
  - 3 Beata's got blonde ..... .
  - 4 Her brother's got very broad ..... .
  - 5 That's a nice suit: Jack's very ..... today.
  - 6 I would say he was medium ..... .
  - 7 Charlotte's hair is fair but her brother's is quite ..... .

## **10.2 Find six more pairs of words in the box. Why are they pairs?**

attractive height average good-looking weight narrow roughly  
tall curly approximately medium wavy broad weigh

*Attractive and good-looking are similar in meaning.*

### **10.3 Complete the dialogues using words that are similar to the underlined words.**

- 1 A: She's good-looking.  
B: Yes, very ..... .
  - 2 A: María José looked beautiful last night.  
B: Yes, absolutely ..... .
  - 3 A: Her boyfriend's quite good-looking.  
B: Yes, he is rather ..... .
  - 4 A: Andreas looks very strong and healthy.  
B: Yes, I think he's very ..... .
  - 5 A: That little girl is attractive, isn't she?  
B: Yes, she's very ..... .
  - 6 A: Ethan's getting fat.  
B: Yes, he is a bit ..... .
  - 7 A: Did you think he was a bit ugly?  
B: Yes, he was quite ..... .
  - 8 A: Is she about 25?  
B: Yes, ..... .
  - 9 A: He's just above average height.  
B: Yes, he is ..... , isn't he?

10.4

Over to you

## Answer the questions.

- 1 How tall are you? .....
  - 2 What's your hair like? .....
  - 3 Think about one of your best friends. What does he/she look like?

# 11 Describing character

A

## What are you like?

Choose the number that describes you. For example, in the first line  
1 = very positive, 3 = not very positive or negative, 5 = very negative.

	1	2	3	4	5	
I think I'm very <b>positive</b> <sup>2</sup> .	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm quite a <b>negative</b> person.
I'm usually <b>reliable</b> <sup>3</sup> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm quite <b>unreliable</b> .
I'm quite <b>confident</b> <sup>4</sup> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm quite <b>shy</b> <sup>5</sup> .
I'm <b>hard-working</b> <sup>6</sup> .	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm quite <b>lazy</b> .
I have a good <b>sense of humour</b> <sup>7</sup> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm usually quite <b>serious</b> <sup>8</sup> .
I'm usually quite <b>patient</b> <sup>9</sup> .	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	I'm quite <b>impatient</b> .

<sup>1</sup> what you are like as a person

<sup>2</sup> believe that good things will happen

<sup>3</sup> can be trusted to do what people expect you to do

<sup>4</sup> feeling sure about yourself and your abilities

<sup>5</sup> not confident, especially about meeting or talking to new people

<sup>6</sup> putting a lot of effort into your work and spending a lot of time on it

<sup>7</sup> the ability to laugh and understand when something is funny

<sup>8</sup> a serious person is quiet and doesn't laugh very much

<sup>9</sup> able to stay calm and not get angry, especially when things take a lot of time

### Common mistakes

A: What's he like? (NOT How is he like?)

B: He's very **nice**. (NOT He's like very nice.)

B

## Opposites

positive	negative
<b>generous</b> [happy to give more money or help than is usual]	<b>mean</b>
<b>honest</b> [an honest person tells the truth]	<b>dishonest</b>
<b>clever, intelligent</b> [able to learn and understand things quickly]	<b>stupid</b>
<b>calm</b> [relaxed and not worried or frightened]	<b>nervous, anxious</b>

### Language help

We use **kind** to describe someone who wants to help people a lot, and **nice, friendly** or **pleasant** for someone who is happy to talk to people. The opposites are **unkind, unfriendly** and **unpleasant**.

C

## Describing a friend

“The first thing I would say about my best friend is that she’s very **sensible**<sup>1</sup>. I’ve never known Emilia to do anything **silly**<sup>2</sup>, and I know I can always **trust**<sup>3</sup> her. She’s also very **creative**<sup>4</sup>; she makes things, and she’s a very **talented**<sup>5</sup> artist. I **wish**<sup>6</sup> I had her **talent**. ”

<sup>1</sup> practical; doesn’t do stupid things

<sup>5</sup> has a natural ability

<sup>2</sup> not sensible, a bit stupid

<sup>6</sup> I would like to have her talent but I haven’t got it.

<sup>3</sup> be sure that she is honest

<sup>4</sup> good at thinking of new ideas and using her imagination

# Exercises

## 11.1 Find five pairs of opposites and put them into the correct columns.

nice mean sensible lazy calm generous  
unpleasant hard-working silly nervous

positive	negative
<i>nice</i>	

## 11.2 Write the opposites using the correct prefix.

- 1 *un*kind                    3 ..... pleasant                    5 ..... honest  
2 ..... friendly                4 ..... patient                    6 ..... reliable

## 11.3 Describe the person in the sentences, in one word.

- 1 My brother is in the office from 8 am to 6 pm every day. *hard-working*.....
- 2 He has never bought me a drink in ten years. .....
- 3 She often promises to do things but sometimes she forgets. .....
- 4 My teacher explains things again and never gets angry. .....
- 5 Emma finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers. .....
- 6 Noah is practical and doesn't do anything stupid. .....
- 7 Our teacher is nice, but he's quiet and he doesn't laugh a lot. .....
- 8 Danya is very relaxed and doesn't seem to worry about things. .....
- 9 My boss is really good at using his imagination to think of new ideas. .....
- 10 Ava can play several musical instruments. .....

## 11.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My sister can't wait for anything; she's so *impatient*.....
- 2 I get very ..... before exams; I need to try and relax a bit more.
- 3 I ..... I could paint as well as your brother; he's so creative.
- 4 Adeline hasn't done a thing since she's been here. Honestly, she's so .....
- 5 I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of .....
- 6 My younger sister is able to understand new ideas so quickly; she's very.....
- 7 If Sarah says she'll do it, then she'll do it. I ..... her completely.
- 8 He'd like to be relaxed and confident, but it's just not part of his .....
- 9 He failed his exams, but he isn't ..... He just didn't do any work.
- 10 Aurora helped me bake some cakes last week; she's very .....

## 11.5 Over to you

Complete the quiz on the opposite page for yourself. From all the words on the opposite page, which one would you most like to be, and which is the one you would hate to be? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

## A

## How do you feel?

## Language help

We use **emotion** and **feeling(s)** for something which someone feels strongly about, e.g. love, hate or anger. **Emotions** are part of our character, e.g. *Timo is a very emotional person.* [shows his feelings easily] **Feeling** is often plural, e.g. *She doesn't like talking about her feelings.*

I'm very **proud**<sup>1</sup> of my son's success, but I'm a bit **disappointed**<sup>2</sup> that the local paper hasn't shown more interest in the story.

<sup>1</sup> feeling good because you (or someone you know) has done something well

<sup>2</sup> unhappy because someone or something was not as good as you hoped.

We were **curious**<sup>5</sup> to see what all the noise was about, but I felt **anxious**<sup>6</sup> when I saw how angry the men were, and really **scared**<sup>7</sup> when they started coming towards us.

<sup>5</sup> wanting to know or learn about something

<sup>6</sup> worried

<sup>7</sup> afraid; syn **frightened**

The politicians seem **confused**<sup>3</sup> about what to do, so I'm not **hopeful**<sup>4</sup> that things will improve.

<sup>3</sup> not able to think clearly or understand something

<sup>4</sup> feeling positive about a future situation

I think Harry ended the relationship because his girlfriend was getting **jealous**<sup>8</sup>, but now he's quite **upset**<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> unhappy and angry because someone you love seems too interested in another person

<sup>9</sup> unhappy because something unpleasant has happened

## Language help

adjective	noun
proud	<b>pride</b>
jealous	<b>jealousy</b>
curious	<b>curiosity</b>

adjective	noun
disappointed	<b>disappointment</b>
confused	<b>confusion</b>
anxious	<b>anxiety</b>

## B

## The effect of the weather on our feelings

Why do people say they feel more **cheerful** [happy] when the sun shines, and **miserable** [unhappy] when it's raining? Why do some people suffer from SAD (seasonal affective disorder), which makes them feel **depressed** [unhappy, often for a long time, and without hope for the future] during long dark winters? Can the weather really affect our **mood** [the way we feel at a particular time], or is it just in our imaginations?

## C

## The effect of colour on our emotions

## COLOUR

can have an **effect** on our mood, but how do specific colours relate to our emotions?

**RED** can make us feel **energetic**<sup>1</sup>, but it can also indicate **anger**<sup>2</sup>.

**PINK** though, is softer and more about maternal love and **caring for**<sup>3</sup> people.

**GREEN** is associated with nature and is good for people suffering from **stress**<sup>4</sup>.

**BLUE** is relaxing and helps us to be **creative**<sup>5</sup>, but too much dark blue can make us depressed.

<sup>1</sup> wanting to be busy and doing a lot of things

<sup>2</sup> being angry

<sup>3</sup> looking after someone, especially someone young or old

<sup>4</sup> feelings of worry caused by difficult situations such as problems at work

<sup>5</sup> good at thinking of new ideas or using our imagination

# Exercises

## 12.1 Cover the opposite page. Complete the tables.

adjective	noun
angry	anger
jealous	
confused	
	pride

adjective	noun
disappointed	
	curiosity
anxious	
	emotion

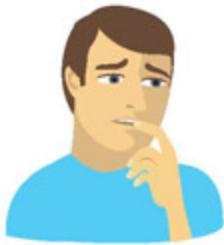
## 12.2 Find the best sentence ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

- |                              |                            |   |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1 He was very anxious when   | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a he heard his aunt had died.                             |
| 2 He was very jealous when   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.      |
| 3 He was very scared when    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c his 14-year-old daughter didn't get home until 2 am.    |
| 4 He was very proud when     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d he saw the man coming towards him with a knife.         |
| 5 He was very upset when     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e he was ill.   |
| 6 He was very miserable when | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked. |

## 12.3 Match the words and faces.

anxious ..... scared ..... cheerful ..... upset ..... confused ..... depressed .....

1



2



3



4



5



6



## 12.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My aunt had to care ..... for her elderly mother for years.
- 2 I can't tell whether Mia is happy or not; she never shows her ..... .
- 3 I'm much more ..... in the mornings. By the afternoon I feel tired.
- 4 Weather has a big ..... on the way I feel.
- 5 He's been under a lot of ..... recently because of the amount of work he has to do.
- 6 Oliver's cheerful one minute and miserable the next; his ..... changes all the time.
- 7 It's been a depressing month, but I'm ..... things will get better next month.
- 8 I don't like walking home in the dark. I get very ..... .

## 12.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Does colour or the weather have an effect on your emotions? How?
- 2 Do you ever suffer from stress? Why?
- 3 Does your mood change a lot from day to day? Why?
- 4 Do you feel more energetic at certain times of the day? Why?

## A

## Relatives\*

## RELATIVES



My father died when I was nine, and so my mother was a **widow**<sup>1</sup> with four young children. She **remarried** five years later, so now I have a **stepfather**. As he is not my real father, I call him by his first name, which is Dieter. I've got an **elder**<sup>2</sup> brother called Thomas and two younger sisters, Anya and Claudia, who are **twins**<sup>3</sup>. We're a **close family**<sup>4</sup>.

My mother is an **only child**<sup>5</sup>, but I've got two uncles on my father's side. One is married with two children, and the other is married with three children, so **altogether** I have five **cousins**. I **get on well with**<sup>6</sup> Uncle Rolf, and he always tells me I'm his favourite **nephew**. Of his **nieces**, I think he likes Anya best.

Recently my brother Thomas **got married**. His wife's name is Sabine, so I now have a **sister-in-law**<sup>7</sup> as well.

\* members of your family; syn **relations**

<sup>1</sup> a woman whose husband has died

<sup>2</sup> older

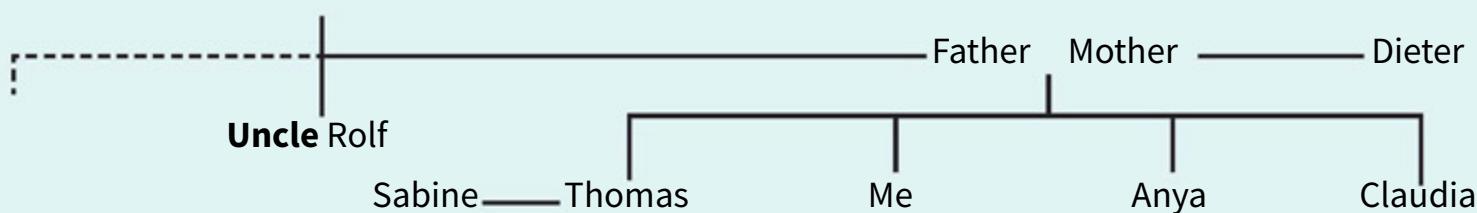
<sup>3</sup> two children born to one mother at the same time

<sup>4</sup> a family who like each other and stay together a lot

<sup>5</sup> without brothers or sisters

<sup>6</sup> have a good relationship with

<sup>7</sup> (also **mother/brother/son-in-law**, etc.)



## Common mistakes

It's more common and more natural to say '**Thomas's** wife' (NOT the wife of Thomas) or '**Anna's** younger sister' (NOT the younger sister of Anna).

## B

## Friends

## FRIENDS

My **best friend** is Florian, an **old school friend**<sup>1</sup>. We **got to know each other**<sup>2</sup> when we were in the same class at school. We've been **mates**<sup>3</sup> **ever since**<sup>4</sup>, and our **friendship** is very important to both of us. He spends a lot of time with my family, and his **current**<sup>5</sup> girlfriend is actually one of Thomas's **ex**-girlfriends. But we all get on really well.

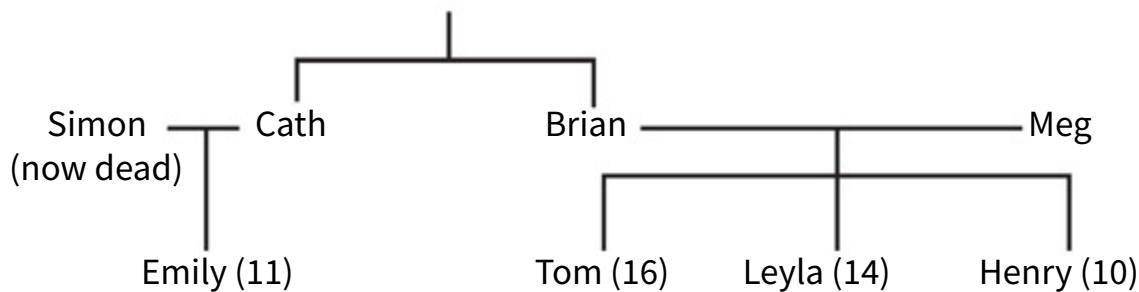


## Language help

We use the prefix **ex-** for a relationship we had in the past but do not have now, e.g. *The children stay with my ex-husband at the weekend; I saw an ex-girlfriend of mine yesterday.*

# Exercises

## 13.1 Look at the family tree, then complete the sentences below.



- 1 Simon died two years ago, so Cath is a *widow*.
- 2 Leyla is Cath's .....
- 3 Tom is Cath's .....
- 4 Cath is Meg's .....
- 5 Simon was Brian's .....
- 6 Tom is Leyla's ..... brother.
- 7 Emily is Leyla's .....
- 8 Emily is an ..... child.

## 13.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 Your *current* boyfriend is the one that you have now.
- 2 ..... means get married again.
- 3 ..... are all the members of your family.
- 4 Your ..... friend is the one you like more than any other.
- 5 An ..... friend is someone you have known for a long time.
- 6 ..... are two children born to one mother at the same time.
- 7 ..... is an informal word for a friend.
- 8 ..... is the noun when two people are friends.
- 9 Your ..... is the man who is married to your mother but is not your father.

## 13.3 Complete the text.

“I was still going out with James when I met my husband, Ben. We <sup>1</sup> ..... each other because we went to the same gym twice a week. We went out with each other for about 18 months, and we got <sup>2</sup> ..... three years ago, so <sup>3</sup> ..... we've been a couple for almost five years. We've continued to go to the gym ever <sup>4</sup> ..... we got married, and I still quite often see James when we're there. It's nice if you can still <sup>5</sup> ..... with an <sup>6</sup> ..... -boyfriend or -girlfriend.”

## 13.4 Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Are you an only child? If not, do you have elder brothers or sisters? .....
- 2 Do you get on well with other members of your family? .....
- 3 Are you a close family? .....
- 4 Who was the last person in your family to get married? When? .....
- 5 Who's your best friend? .....
- 6 How long have you known him/her? .....
- 7 How did you get to know each other? .....

## A

## Ages and stages in the UK



Age	Stage
0	<b>birth</b> [the moment a baby is born]
Up to 12 months	a <b>baby</b>
12 months – 3 years old	a <b>toddler</b>
3–12 years old	a <b>child</b> : this period is your <b>childhood</b>
13–18 approximately	a <b>teenager</b> : during this period you are <b>in your teens</b>
18+	an <b>adult</b>
40+ approximately	people are <b>middle-aged</b> [in the middle of their lives]
60 or 65	<b>retirement</b> [when people stop work; they are <b>retired</b> ]
80+	old age (we usually describe people as <b>elderly</b> )

## B

## Approximate ages

I'm **in my early twenties** [21–23].

My parents are **in their mid-fifties** [54–56].

My grandmother is **in her late seventies** [77–79].

My grandfather is **nearly/almost eighty** [he's probably 79].

My English teacher's **approximately/roughly** thirty.

[about 30 / more or less 30]

## Common mistakes

We can say, **he's 30** or **he's 30 years old**. (NOT he has 30 or he's 30 years)

Also: a **30-year-old man** (NOT a 30-years-old man)

## C

## Past and present

## PAST AND PRESENT

My grandmother's name was Mary. She's **dead**<sup>1</sup> now. She died about ten years ago when I was in my teens, but I remember her well. She was **brought up**<sup>2</sup> on a farm in Wales, and her parents were very **strict**: as a teenager, they didn't **allow**<sup>3</sup> her to listen to the radio or go to parties in the village. **In the end**<sup>4</sup>, she decided to leave home and get a job in Cardiff. **At first**<sup>5</sup> it wasn't easy, but she **managed**<sup>6</sup> to find work, and she also met the man who became her husband: my grandfather. My mother was born four years later. She had a very different childhood. She grew up in the city, she **was allowed to** go to parties, and when she was in her teens, her parents **let**<sup>7</sup> her **stay out late**<sup>8</sup>. My mum is the same with me.



<sup>1</sup> not living; opp **alive**

<sup>2</sup> looked after until you are an adult

<sup>3</sup> give permission

<sup>4</sup> finally, after a lot of time or thought

<sup>5</sup> at the beginning

<sup>6</sup> was able (but it was difficult)

<sup>7</sup> allowed

<sup>8</sup> not go home until late

## Language help

**Let** and **allow** have the same meaning. **Let** is slightly more informal, and **allow** is often used in the passive.

*My dad **let me drive** his car. I **was allowed to drive** my dad's car.*

*You're **not allowed to** smoke in that room. (NOT It's **not allowed** to smoke in that room.)*

# Exercises

## 14.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Isabella is only six months old – she's still a baby.....
- 2 Louis was 22 a few months ago, so he's in his ..... .
- 3 Amelia is 35, so she's in her ..... .
- 4 Abigail will be 13 this year, so she'll soon be a ..... .
- 5 William is 53 and his wife is 47, so they're both ..... .
- 6 Joan is 80 this year, so she is quite ..... .
- 7 Michael was a bus driver for 40 years but he's now ..... .
- 8 Leon is 18 this year, so legally he becomes ..... .
- 9 The boys are 14 and 16, so they're both in their ..... .
- 10 Holly is just over a year old and she's starting to walk, so she's a ..... now.

## 14.2 Are the sentences true or false about Mary's life on the opposite page? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 Mary was brought up in the city. *False. Mary was brought up on a farm.* .....
- 2 She grew up in Wales. .....
- 3 Her parents let her do what she wanted. .....
- 4 She wasn't allowed to listen to the radio. .....
- 5 Life was easy when she went to Cardiff. .....
- 6 She couldn't get a job in Cardiff. .....

## 14.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 My parents <u>are dead</u> now.                                | My parents <u>aren't alive now</u> ..... |
| 2 It was hard but <u>finally</u> I did it.                       | It was hard but .....                    |
| 3 She's <u>approximately</u> my age.                             | She's .....                              |
| 4 They're <u>almost</u> thirty now.                              | They're .....                            |
| 5 <u>I had to do what</u> my parents <u>wanted</u> .             | My parents were .....                    |
| 6 My parents <u>let me</u> stay up and watch TV.                 | I was .....                              |
| 7 My mum <u>looked after me</u> in Scotland.                     | I was .....                              |
| 8 <u>I was able to</u> pass my exams <u>but it wasn't easy</u> . | I .....                                  |
| 9 <u>I didn't go home until</u> late.                            | I .....                                  |
| 10 <u>I was allowed to</u> wear what I liked.                    | My parents .....                         |
| 11 I was happy <u>as a child</u> .                               | I had a happy .....                      |
| 12 My grandparents <u>don't work any more</u> .                  | My grandparents are .....                |

## 14.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

1 Where were you brought up? .....

2 What do you particularly remember about your childhood? .....

3 Were your parents strict? What weren't you allowed to do when you were a child? .....

4 How late were you allowed to stay out when you were a teenager? .....

## A

## Romance

“ I had my first **date**<sup>1</sup> when I was 16, and it was terrible. I took a girl to the cinema but she didn’t like the film and looked bored all evening; it was a bad start. Then, when I was 17, I **went out with**<sup>2</sup> a girl for three months, but we **broke up**<sup>3</sup> when she met a boy who was two years older than me, and had a car. My first **serious relationship**<sup>4</sup> was when I went to university. I **got to know**<sup>5</sup> Melanie because we were on the same course. At first we were just friends, then we started going out with each other, and after a few months we realised we were **in love**. We **got engaged**<sup>6</sup> a couple of<sup>7</sup> years after we left university and then ... ”



<sup>1</sup> a planned romantic meeting

<sup>5</sup> became friends with

<sup>2</sup> had a romantic relationship with

<sup>6</sup> formally agreed to marry

<sup>3</sup> the relationship ended

<sup>7</sup> two, perhaps three

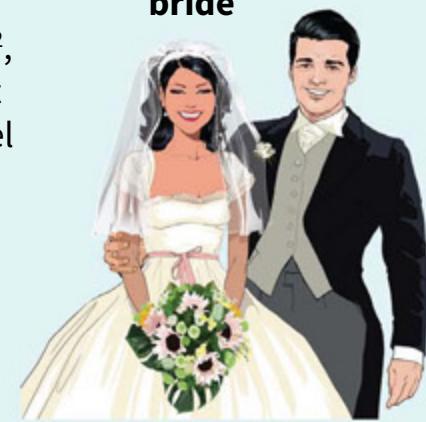
<sup>4</sup> important romantic relationship

(bride) groom

## B

## Marriage\*

“ ... we **got married**<sup>1</sup> the following year. We didn’t want a big **ceremony**<sup>2</sup>, so we had the **wedding**<sup>3</sup> in the local church near Melanie’s home with just family and a few friends. afterwards we had the **reception**<sup>4</sup> in a small hotel nearby, and then went on our **honeymoon**<sup>5</sup> to Greece. ”



\* the time when you are married

<sup>3</sup> the ceremony when people get married

<sup>1</sup> became husband and wife

<sup>4</sup> the wedding party

<sup>2</sup> an important public event

<sup>5</sup> a holiday just after getting married

## Common mistakes

She **got to know** Darren at university. (NOT She **knew** Darren at university.)

Now they plan to **get married**. (NOT They plan to **get marry**; or They plan to **married**.)

She’s getting married **to** Darren next year. (NOT She’s getting married **with** Darren next year.)

## C

## Children

“ Just over three years later Melanie **got pregnant**, and our first child, Cal, was born just two days after our fourth wedding **anniversary**<sup>1</sup>. We had a big **celebration**<sup>2</sup>. ”



<sup>1</sup> a day that is exactly one or more years after an important event

<sup>2</sup> a time when you do something you enjoy because it is a special day

## Language help

adjective	noun
engaged	<b>engagement</b>
pregnant	<b>pregnancy</b>

verb	noun
<b>celebrate</b>	celebration
<b>marry</b>	marriage

## D

## Divorce\*

“ Things started to **go wrong**<sup>1</sup> when I got a job as manager of a sportswear company. I was working six days a week and I had to do a lot of travelling. It was difficult for Melanie as well. She was working during the week, then at weekends she was often **alone / on her own**<sup>2</sup> with two young children. I felt I couldn’t **give up**<sup>3</sup> my job, and in the end Melanie decided to **leave**<sup>4</sup> me. The following year we **got divorced**<sup>5</sup>. ”

\* when a marriage officially ends

<sup>1</sup> become a problem

<sup>2</sup> without other people

<sup>3</sup> stop doing

<sup>4</sup> stop living with me

<sup>5</sup> the marriage officially ended

# Exercises

## 15.1 Put the events in a logical order.

- I went out with Gabriel.  
We got married.  
I got pregnant three months later.  
We got engaged.  
I got to know Gabriel.  
Our son was born just after our first anniversary.  
We went on our honeymoon.  
I met Gabriel at a party.  
We had a big reception.

<input type="checkbox"/>
1
<input type="checkbox"/>



## 15.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 The big party you have after the wedding. *reception* .....
- 2 A romantic meeting you plan before it happens. .....
- 3 The period of time when you are married. .....
- 4 How you describe a woman who is going to have a baby. .....
- 5 The day that is exactly one year, or a number of years, after an important event. .....
- 6 The name given to the woman and man on their wedding day. ..... and .....
- 7 Stop doing a job or activity. ..... something up

## 15.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: When did they get *engaged* ?  
B: Last week. They plan to get married in a ..... of years.
- 2 A: Where did they meet?  
B: I think he got ..... her at university.  
A: And now they're married?  
B: Yes, the ..... was last week.
- 3 A: Is it going to be a big wedding?  
B: No, they're having a small ..... in the village church.  
A: And what about the reception?  
B: They're having a reception but no ..... . They're going straight back to work.
- 4 A: So, it's all over.  
B: Yes. Lily ..... him and moved out last month.  
A: Oh dear. Have they had problems for a long time?  
B: I think it all started to go ..... when they moved to Woodbridge.  
A: And what about Oliver? Is he alone now?  
B: Yes, completely on ..... . He doesn't want any new relationships yet.  
A: But the marriage is definitely over?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid they're getting ..... .

## 15.4 Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Can you remember your first date? (When, and who with?)
- 2 Can you remember your first serious relationship? (Who was it with? Did you break up, or are you still with the same person?)
- 3 Whose was the last wedding you went to?
- 4 What was the last big celebration (other than a wedding) that you went to?

## A

**Sleep**

“ During the week I usually **wake up**<sup>1</sup> about 7.30 am. If I don’t, my mum **wakes me up**. I **get up**<sup>2</sup> a few minutes later. In the evenings I **go to bed** about 10.30 pm, and usually **go to sleep**<sup>3</sup> **straight away**<sup>4</sup>. If I **have a late night**<sup>5</sup> I try to **have a sleep**<sup>6</sup> in the afternoon when I get home from college. ”

<sup>1</sup> stop sleeping

<sup>4</sup> immediately

<sup>2</sup> get out of bed

<sup>5</sup> go to bed very late; opp **have an early night**

<sup>3</sup> start sleeping; syn **fall asleep**

<sup>6</sup> a short period of sleeping, e.g. half an hour

## B

**Food**

“ I have coffee and **cereal** for breakfast, then **have a light lunch**<sup>1</sup>, maybe a sandwich and an apple, and a **snack**<sup>2</sup> in the afternoon. We have our **main meal** in the evening. If Mum’s late home from work, she **doesn’t bother**<sup>3</sup> to cook; we just get a **takeaway**<sup>4</sup> instead. One of us has to **feed**<sup>5</sup> the cat as well. ”



cereal

<sup>1</sup> have a small meal

<sup>4</sup> a meal you buy in a restaurant but eat at home

<sup>2</sup> a small amount of food you eat between meals

<sup>5</sup> give food

<sup>3</sup> doesn’t do something because there is no reason or because it is too much work

## C

**Bathroom routines**

“ I usually **have a shower** when I get home from college because my sister, Rosie, and my brother, Marcus, spend so much time in the bathroom in the morning. I only have time to **have a wash** and **clean my teeth** (syn **brush my teeth**), before Rosie comes in to **put on** a bit of **make-up**. In the winter I sometimes **have a bath instead of**<sup>1</sup> a shower. I like to lie in the bath and listen to music. ”



Marcus **having a shave**



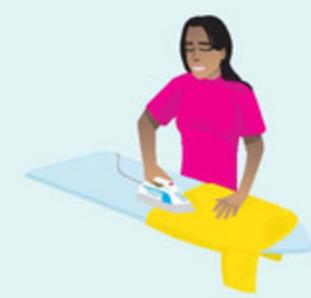
Rosie **putting on make-up**

<sup>1</sup> in place of (a shower)

## D

**Housework\***

“ Fortunately<sup>1</sup> we’ve got a **cleaner**<sup>2</sup> who **does** a lot of the **housework**, and that includes **doing my washing**<sup>3</sup>. But I still have to **make my bed** and **do** some of my **ironing**, and I sometimes **do the shopping** with Mum. ”



ironing

<sup>1</sup> the work of keeping a home clean and tidy

<sup>2</sup> a person who cleans

<sup>1</sup> happening because of good luck; syn **luckily**

<sup>3</sup> washing my clothes

**Language help**

When we **do the shopping**, we buy food at the supermarket; when we **go shopping**, it is a leisure activity and we perhaps buy clothes, DVDs, books, etc.

## E

**Spare time\***

“ On weekdays I usually **stay in**<sup>1</sup> and watch TV in the evening. At the weekend I **go out** quite a lot with my friends, either to the cinema or just to a café, and I **eat out**<sup>2</sup> once a week. Sometimes friends **come round**<sup>3</sup> and we **chat**<sup>4</sup> about clothes, music and college. ”

<sup>1</sup> time when you are not working

<sup>3</sup> visit me in my home

<sup>1</sup> stay at home

<sup>4</sup> have an informal conversation

<sup>2</sup> eat in a restaurant; opp **eat in**

# Exercises

## 16.1 Find seven more expressions with *have* + [noun] and *do* + [noun] from the opposite page.

have ..... a shower ..... have ..... do ..... have ..... do ..... have ..... do .....

## 16.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |          |                                       |            |
|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 get up | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9 | a the dog  |
| 2 fall   | <input type="checkbox"/>              | b my teeth |
| 3 make   | <input type="checkbox"/>              | c make-up  |
| 4 put on | <input type="checkbox"/>              | d a week   |
| 5 go     | <input type="checkbox"/>              | e the bed  |
| 6 clean  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | f to sleep |
| 7 feed   | <input type="checkbox"/>              | g early    |
| 8 once   | <input type="checkbox"/>              | h asleep   |



## 16.3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

- 1 Does it cost much to have a cleaner <sup>V</sup>to the housework? *do*
- 2 My mother usually me up around 7:30, then I get up about 7:45.
- 3 If I have a in the afternoon, I usually eat fruit instead of chocolate.
- 4 I always go on Friday and Saturday, often to the cinema or a club.
- 5 Sometimes friends round to the flat and we play computer games.
- 6 I eat at the weekend, usually in a local Italian or French restaurant.
- 7 I don't with a full meal at lunchtime; I usually just have a light lunch, like a salad.
- 8 I often have for breakfast – usually cornflakes or something like that.
- 9 I don't like doing housework; I have a husband who does most of it.
- 10 When I get emails, I try to reply to them straight.

## 16.4 Complete the dialogue with a word or phrasal verb from the opposite page in each gap.

- A: Don't <sup>1</sup> ..... bother ..... to cook dinner tonight.  
B: Why not?  
A: We could go out <sup>2</sup> ..... of eating here.  
B: Yeah. Where?  
A: Well, I'd like to try that new Korean restaurant.  
B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather <sup>3</sup> ..... and have an <sup>4</sup> ..... night.  
A: But it's Friday.  
B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Why don't we ask Ryan and Charlotte to <sup>5</sup> ..... ?  
You don't have to cook, we can order a <sup>6</sup> ..... . And we can have a nice  
<sup>7</sup> ..... round the dining table; much better than a noisy restaurant.

## 16.5 Over to you

Find three facts from the opposite page that are similar in your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table.

similar

different

1 .....

.....

2 .....

.....

3 .....

.....

## A

## Location\*

“We live **on the outskirts of town**<sup>1</sup>, and it’s a very nice **location**. We used to live in the centre, but we **moved**<sup>2</sup> to our present flat when we had children because there’s more **space**<sup>3</sup> for them to play and it has nice **views**<sup>4</sup>. ”

\* the place and position of something

<sup>1</sup> on the edge of town

<sup>2</sup> changed the place where we live

<sup>3</sup> an area that is empty or not used

<sup>4</sup> the things you can see from a place

## B

## Our flat

“This is where we live. We **rent**<sup>1</sup> a flat **on the second floor**. There’s a family in the flat **downstairs**<sup>2</sup>, and a young French couple **upstairs**, on the top floor. It’s a modern **block of flats**<sup>3</sup>, and it’s quite good, although the **lift**<sup>4</sup> is small, and there’s no **air conditioning**<sup>5</sup>. ”

<sup>1</sup> pay money every week/month to use it because it isn’t ours

<sup>2</sup> on a lower level of a building

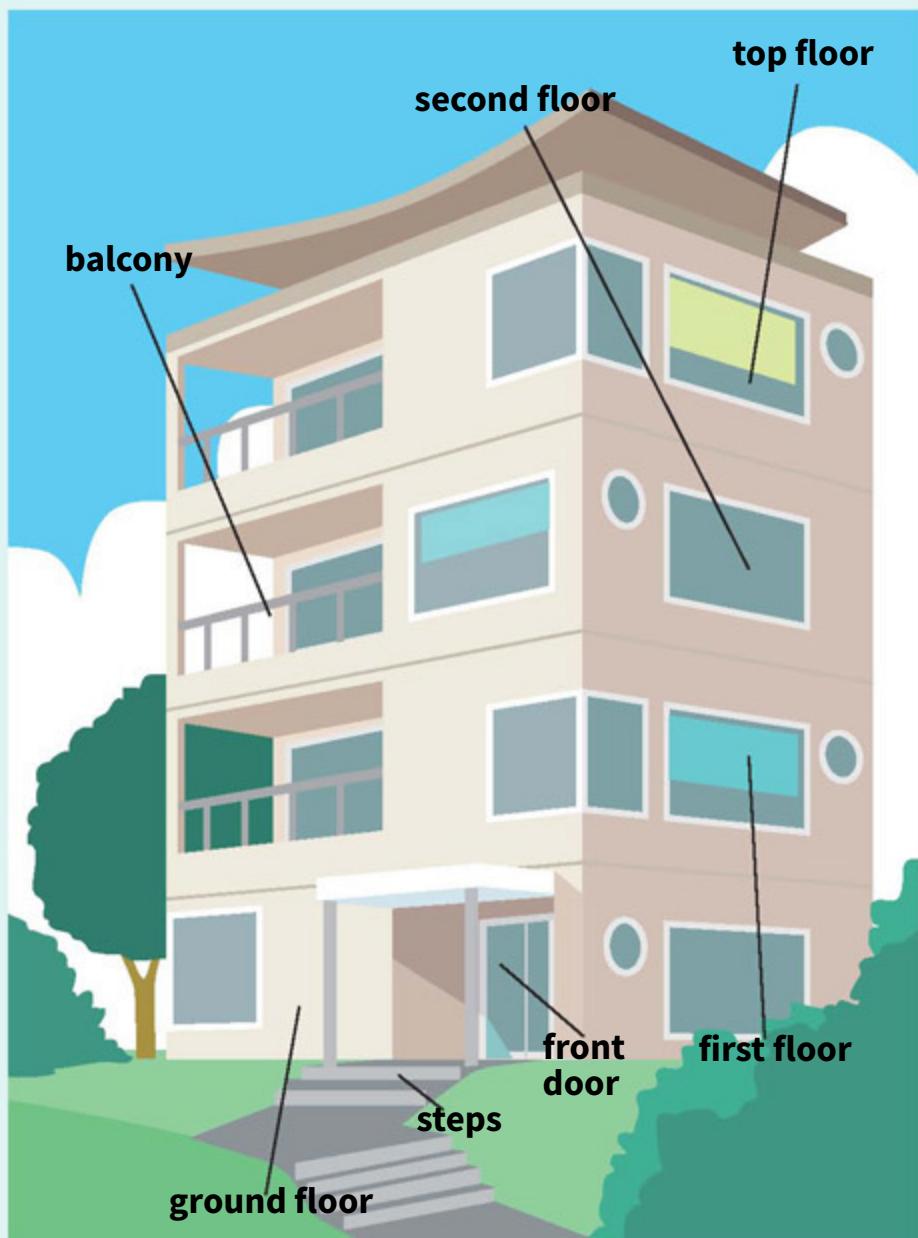
<sup>3</sup> a building with a number of flats in it

<sup>4</sup> the machine that takes people up or down a floor

<sup>5</sup> a system that keeps the air cool

## Language help

**Flat** is more common in British English; **apartment** is used in American English but is becoming more common in British English. Apartments are usually in large buildings; flats can be in a large building or part of a larger house.



## C

## A house in the country

“My parents **own**<sup>1</sup> a **cottage**<sup>2</sup>. It’s a **charming**<sup>3</sup> house and **has lots of character**<sup>4</sup>, but like many old buildings, it’s quite **dark** (opp **light**), quite difficult to **heat**<sup>5</sup>, and it doesn’t have **central heating**<sup>6</sup>. ”

<sup>1</sup> they bought it

<sup>2</sup> a small house, that is old and attractive, and usually found in the country

<sup>3</sup> pleasant and attractive

<sup>4</sup> it is interesting and unusual

<sup>5</sup> make warm or hot

<sup>6</sup> a system that heats a whole house



cottage

# Exercises

## 17.1 Are the sentences about the people on the opposite page true or false? If the sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 They live in a house. *False. They live in a flat.* .....
- 2 They used to live on the outskirts of town. .....
- 3 They own their flat. .....
- 4 They've got nice views from their flat. .....
- 5 They live on the first floor. .....
- 6 There's a lift in the building. .....
- 7 A French couple live downstairs. .....
- 8 They own a cottage. .....
- 9 The cottage has lots of character. .....
- 10 The cottage is quite cold. .....

## 17.2 Are these generally positive or negative features of a home?

views ..... *positive*      air conditioning .....      character .....  
dark ..... *charming* .....      no central heating .....

## 17.3 Label the pictures.



1 a block of flats .....



2 ..... .....



3 ..... .....



4 ..... .....



5 ..... .....

6 ..... .....

## 17.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Our flat doesn't have air ..... .
- 2 I live ..... the second floor, and my cousin lives ..... , on the first floor.
- 3 My old flat was very small, but this one has much more .....
- 4 The flat's in a great ..... : it's near the centre of town but opposite a park and very quiet.
- 5 We live on the ..... of town, but it's only a twenty-minute walk to the centre.
- 6 The flat is on the third floor, but we can sit outside on the .....
- 7 It's a very big house, so it costs a lot of money to ..... in the winter.
- 8 I'm on the second ..... . I usually use the stairs, but take the ..... if I'm feeling lazy.
- 9 I live in Paris. I used to live in Marseilles, but I ..... to Paris when I left university.
- 10 I love my apartment. It has big windows, so it's nice and ..... inside.

## 17.5 Over to you

Answer the questions about your home.

- 1 Do you live in a house or flat?
- 2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- 3 Do you own your home or rent it?
- 4 Are you in the centre, or on the outskirts of your town?

5 How long have you lived there?

6 Do you have these things:

air conditioning?    central heating?  
a balcony?

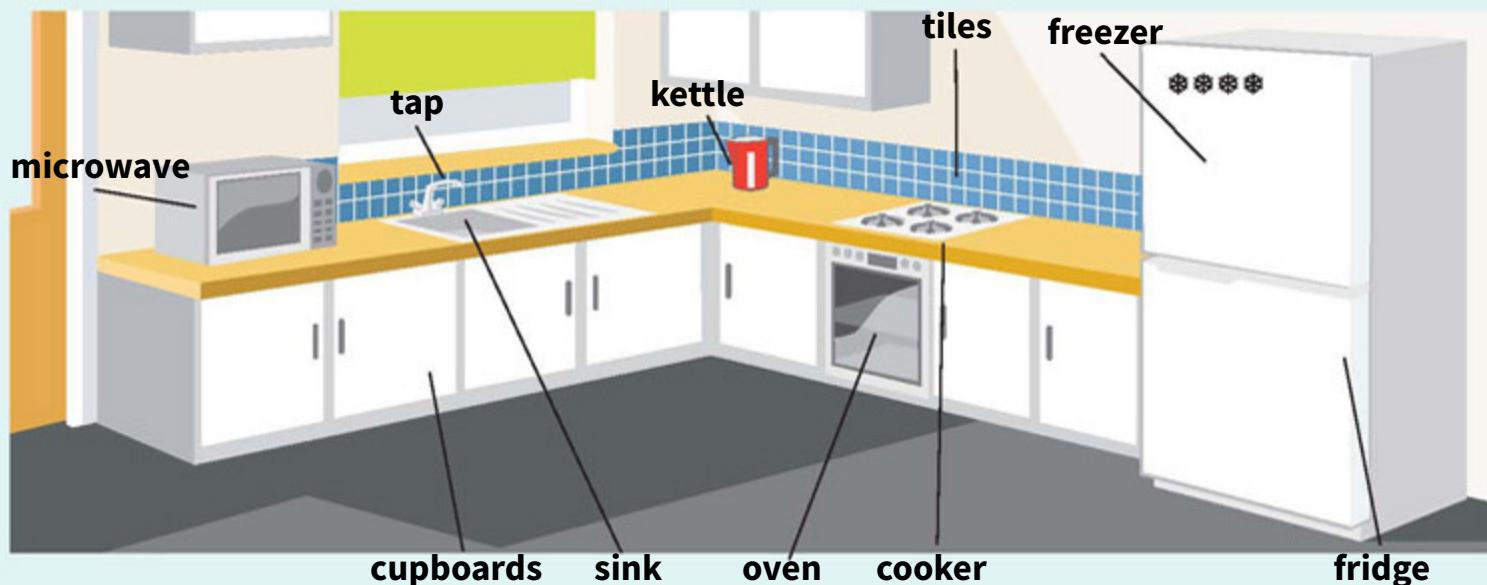
## A

## Different homes

“When we first got married, we lived in a one-bedroom flat with a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. When our first child was born, she had to **share** our bedroom. [use something at the same time as someone else] Now we live in a four-bedroom house. Our bedroom has an **en-suite bathroom** [a bathroom connected to the bedroom], our two teenage children have their **own** rooms [they do not have to share], we have a **spare room** for guests, and another bathroom. Downstairs, there’s a living room, a dining room and a **study** [a room where people can work]. We’ve also got a lovely big kitchen with a fridge-freezer, a cooker with two ovens and a **dishwasher** [a machine for washing dishes]. Next to it, there’s a small **utility room** where we keep the **washing machine**. ”

## Language help

We usually talk about a **sink** in the kitchen, but a (**wash**)**basin** in the bathroom.

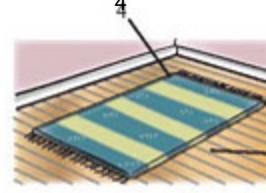
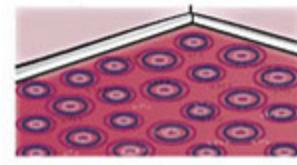
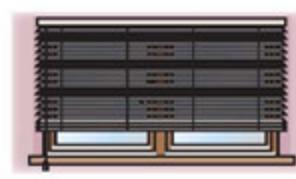
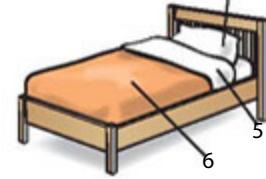


## B

## Choices\*

\* when you decide between two or more possibilities

**WHAT DO YOU PREFER?**

<u>FOR THE HOME</u>	LIGHTING	GIFTS	SALE
 Some people like big soft <b>sofas</b> <sup>1</sup> with lots of <b>cushions</b> <sup>2</sup> ,	 some people like <b>firm</b> (opp <b>soft</b> ) <b>armchairs</b> .	 Do you like a <b>wooden floor</b> <sup>3</sup> with a <b>rug</b> <sup>4</sup> ,	 or a <b>carpet</b> ?
 <b>Curtains</b> ,	 or <b>blinds</b> ?	 <b>A duvet</b> ,	 or a <b>sheet</b> <sup>5</sup> and a <b>blanket</b> <sup>6</sup> ? One <b>pillow</b> <sup>7</sup> , or two?

# Exercises

## 18.1 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?

- 1 milk? *in the fridge* .....
- 2 food that you want to heat very quickly? .....
- 3 meat that you are going to cook? .....
- 4 dirty clothes? .....
- 5 dirty saucepans? .....
- 6 clean cups and saucers .....
- 7 frozen food that you want to keep for several weeks? .....

## 18.2 What are these things, and which room(s) do you usually find them in?

- 1 girdef *fridge, in the kitchen* .....
- 2 snik .....
- 3 nacitusr .....
- 4 shiconus .....
- 5 ktelet .....
- 6 bashniswa .....
- 7 cparte .....
- 8 lipowl .....
- 9 shiwang chameni .....
- 10 kocero .....
- 11 chmariar .....
- 12 leits .....

## 18.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm happy with curtains or ..... *blinds* .....; I really don't mind.
- 2 We used to have a ..... floor, but it was a bit noisy so we put down a carpet.
- 3 When I got my new bedroom, my mum gave me a ..... of curtains or blinds.
- 4 My mum works at home, so she spends all day in the ..... on the computer.
- 5 As a child I had to ..... a room with my sister, but now I've got my ..... bedroom.
- 6 We often have guests to stay, but fortunately we've got a ..... room.
- 7 'Dad, there's no water coming out of the ..... in the kitchen sink.'
- 8 Some people like a sheet and ..... , but I prefer a .....
- 9 There's a family bathroom, but I've got my own ..... shower room next to the bedroom.
- 10 Our kitchen is small but we have a ..... room for the washing machine.

## 18.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What have you got on your kitchen floor? .....
- 2 What have you got on the bathroom floor? .....
- 3 What have you got on the floor in the living room? .....
- 4 Have you got curtains or blinds in your bedroom? .....
- 5 Have you got a duvet or sheets and blankets on your bed? .....

## 18.5 Over to you

Look at section B on the opposite page again. Which do you prefer, and why? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.



## A

**Notes and coins**

In the UK the **currency** [type of money used] is **sterling** [pounds]; in America it is **the dollar**; in much of Europe it's **the euro**.

**Notes**

e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros,  
**a ten-pound note, a twenty-euro note**

**Coins (in the UK)**

e.g. fifty pence (usually spoken as **fifty p**),  
a pound, **a fifty-pence piece**, but **a one-pound coin**

## B

**Managing your money**

“I've had a **bank account** for a few years now, and I make sure my account is always **in credit**<sup>1</sup>. I go to the **cashpoint** once a week, so I always have some **cash**<sup>2</sup> with me, and I **check**<sup>3</sup> my account online once a week to see how much money I've got.”



- <sup>1</sup> having money in the account
- <sup>2</sup> money in the form of notes and coins
- <sup>3</sup> look at the details of it

**cashpoint**

## C

**Money problems**

“When I went to university, I had to get a **student loan**<sup>1</sup> to pay my **fees**<sup>2</sup>. That meant I had to be careful and make sure I didn't **waste money**<sup>3</sup>, but by the time I finished my degree I **owed**<sup>4</sup> a lot. One good thing is that I don't have to pay it back until I get a job and I'm **earning**<sup>5</sup> a **reasonable amount**<sup>6</sup> of money. At the moment I'm **saving up**<sup>7</sup> for a new laptop; the one I have is very slow and keeps going wrong. I'd love to have a car as well, but I **can't afford**<sup>8</sup> it.”

<sup>1</sup> money you borrow to pay for your studies

<sup>5</sup> receiving money for the work I do

<sup>2</sup> money you pay to use something, or for a service, e.g. a lawyer's fee

<sup>6</sup> quite a lot; \$ 1 million is **a large amount**

<sup>3</sup> use it badly

<sup>7</sup> keeping money to buy something in the future

<sup>4</sup> had to **pay back** a lot of money to the bank

<sup>8</sup> don't have enough money to buy one

## D

**Accommodation\***

“This year I'm **renting** a flat with three friends of mine. We had to pay one month's **rent** as a **deposit**<sup>1</sup>, but it's a nice place, quite **good value for money**<sup>2</sup>, and the landlord isn't **charging**<sup>3</sup> us to use his garage.”

\* places where you live or stay

<sup>1</sup> money you pay for something you are going to use, which is then returned to you when you have finished using it

<sup>2</sup> good for the amount of money you pay

<sup>3</sup> asking someone to pay an amount of money

**Language help**

We use **rent** when we pay to use something for a long period of time, e.g. *rent a flat*.

The noun **rent** is the amount you pay, e.g. *The rent is £400 per month*. We use **hire** when we pay to use something for a short period of time, e.g. *I hired a bike for the day*. Both verbs are used with cars, e.g. *We rented/hired a car when we were on holiday*.

# Exercises

## 19.1 Answer the questions as quickly as possible.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1 Is sterling a currency?  | Yes ..... |
| 2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?        | .....     |
| 3 If you rent something, do you own it?                            | .....     |
| 4 If you waste money, do you use it well?                          | .....     |
| 5 Can you get money from a cashpoint?                              | .....     |
| 6 If you are in credit, do you have money in your account?         | .....     |
| 7 Do you pay back a bank loan?                                     | .....     |
| 8 Is the currency in the United States of America called the euro? | .....     |
| 9 Do you normally get back a deposit?                              | .....     |
| 10 If you 'can afford' something, do you have enough money for it? | .....     |

## 19.2 Which words are being defined?

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 A flat, usually round piece of metal used as money.                 | <i>coin</i> ..... |
| 2 Money you borrow from a bank.                                       | .....             |
| 3 Money you pay to someone for a professional service, e.g. a school. | .....             |
| 4 Money in the form of notes or coins.                                | .....             |
| 5 Money you pay to live in a building that you don't own.             | .....             |
| 6 A machine where you can get money.                                  | .....             |
| 7 The type of money used in a country.                                | .....             |

## 19.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep the same meaning.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 He's <u>getting</u> £300 a week in his job.   | He's <u>earning</u> £300 a week in his job..... |
| 2 She <u>used</u> the money <u>badly</u> .      | She .....                                       |
| 3 I <u>don't have enough money</u> to go.       | I .....   |
| 4 We could <u>rent</u> a car.                   | We could .....                                  |
| 5 He <u>asked us to pay</u> £25.                | He .....  |
| 6 I've <u>got to pay back</u> a lot of money.   | I .....   |
| 7 I always <u>look at</u> my account carefully. | I always .....                                  |

## 19.4 Complete the text.

“I'm nearly 20 now, and I've been <sup>1</sup> saving up ..... for a car for the last two years. I've been putting money into my bank <sup>2</sup> ..... , and I try to put in exactly the same <sup>3</sup> ..... every month: £75 from money that I <sup>4</sup> ..... doing a job two evenings a week, and £50 that my parents are lending me each month. That means I now <sup>5</sup> ..... them £1200, but they said I don't have to <sup>6</sup> ..... them ..... until I've got a full-time job. At the moment I'm still living at home, so I don't have to pay for my <sup>7</sup> ..... , although I will start paying my parents a bit of rent when I finish college and get a job.”

## 19.5 Over to you

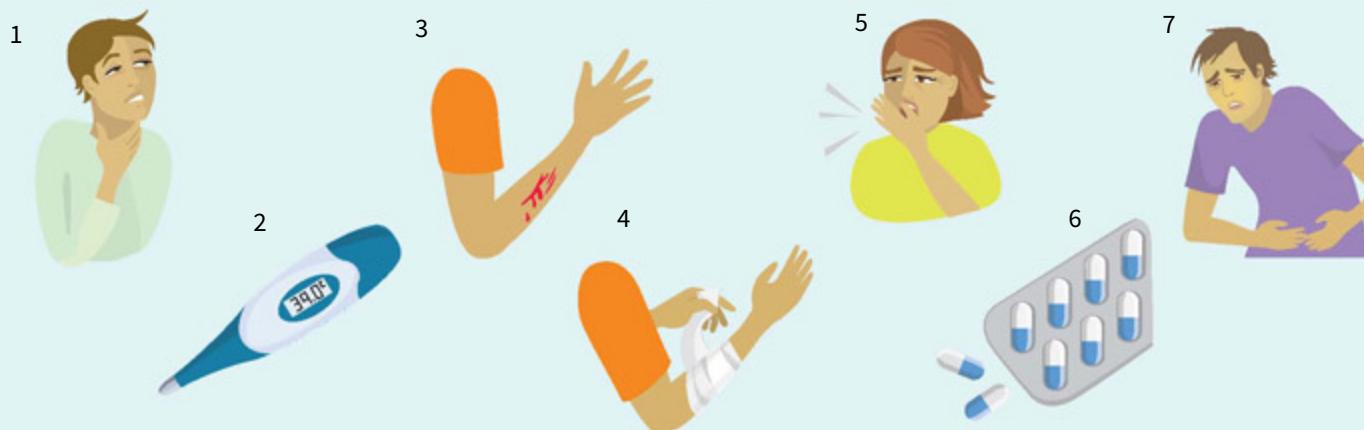
### Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got a bank account? If so, how long have you had it?
- 2 How often do you check your account?
- 3 How often do you use a cashpoint?
- 4 Have you ever had a bank loan? What did you have the loan for?
- 5 Are you saving up for anything at the moment?
- 6 Do you rent the place where you live? If so, did you have to pay a deposit?

## A

## Common problems

What's the matter?	What you should do
A: I've got a <b>sore throat</b> <sup>1</sup> and a <b>temperature</b> . <sup>2</sup>	B: That sounds like <b>flu</b> . You should see a doctor.
A: I've <b>cut</b> my arm; it's <b>bleeding</b> . <sup>3</sup>	B: Put a <b>bandage</b> <sup>4</sup> round it.
A: I've got a terrible <b>cough</b> . <sup>5</sup>	B: Go to the chemist and get some cough <b>medicine</b> [something you take to treat an illness].
A: I've got a <b>headache</b> .	B: Take some <b>tablets</b> <sup>6</sup> for the pain. (also <b>pills</b> )
A: I <b>feel sick</b> . <sup>7</sup>	B: Go to the bathroom quickly!



## B

## Describing pain

We can use different words to describe **pain**. An **ache** describes pain that is not always strong, but often continues. It is used with certain parts of the body.

I've got a **headache**.      Aria's got **stomach ache**.

My dad **suffers from** [often has the pain of] **backache**.

For other parts of the body we often use **pain**.

I've got a **pain** in my shoulder/foot.

**Ache** can also be a verb to describe pain that continues for some time.

By the end of the day my feet were **aching**.

For stronger or more sudden pain, we usually use the verb **hurt**.

My throat **hurts** when I speak.

I hit my leg on the table and it really **hurts** / it's very **painful**.

## C

## Serious illnesses

For **serious** [bad] illnesses, you will probably go into hospital. A person who stays in hospital is called a **patient**. Many patients need an **operation** [when special doctors, called **surgeons**, cut into the body for medical reasons; also called **surgery**].

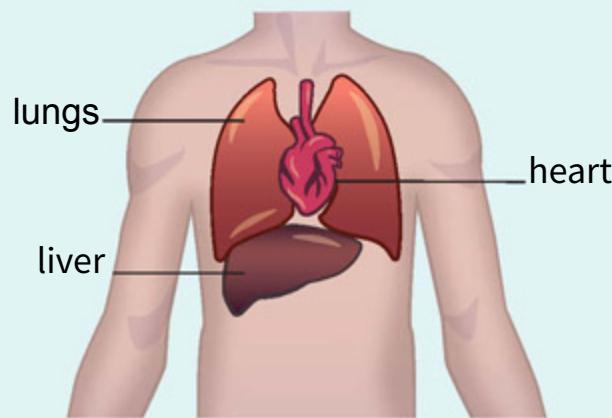
**Lung cancer** can be caused by smoking.

**Heart attacks** can happen very suddenly.

Hepatitis is a **disease** affecting the **liver**.

## Language help

**Disease** is used to talk about more serious medical problems, often affecting certain parts of the body, e.g. heart disease. **Illness** is used to talk about serious and minor medical problems and those affecting the mind, e.g. mental illness. Disease is not used about a period of illness, e.g. He died after a long illness. (NOT He died after a long disease.)



# Exercises

**20.1** Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- 1 ache pain same  
2 cold stomach different  
3 cough through .....  
4 flu cut .....

- 5 liver disease .....  
6 stomach operation .....  
7 chemist ache .....  
8 patient bandage .....

**20.2** Complete the sentences with *a* or nothing (-).

- 1 She's got ..... hepatitis.  
2 I've got ..... cough.  
3 I'm getting ..... sore throat.  
4 Ben's got ..... headache.  
5 Luis's got ..... temperature.  
6 I've got ..... backache.  
7 Zarita's got ..... flu.  
8 My uncle had ..... heart attack.  
9 She's got ..... cancer.  
10 I've got ..... pain in my foot.

**20.3** Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Does your finger hurt?  
B: Yes, it's very painful.....  
2 A: What's wrong with Dimitrios?  
B: He feels ..... I think it's something he ate.  
3 A: Did you hit your foot?  
B: Yes, and it really .....  
4 A: My hand's bleeding quite badly.  
B: Well, put a ..... round it.  
5 A: Your finger's .....  
B: I know. I cut it using that knife.  
6 A: Does Tanya still ..... from bad headaches?  
B: Yes, she gets them all the time.  
7 A: What's the matter?  
B: My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.  
8 A: I understand Lena has had quite a ..... illness.  
B: Yeah. She was in hospital for over a week.

**20.4** Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

lung heart surgeon tablets/pills attack liver  
operation cancer hepatitis sore medicine throat

lung and cancer - because you can get lung cancer.

**20.5** Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What do you usually do if you get a headache?
- 2 How often do you get a cough or a sore throat?
- 3 Have you ever been a patient in hospital? If so, what was it like?
- 4 Have you ever had surgery?
- 5 Are there some medicines you always keep in your home? What are they?

# 21

# Clothes

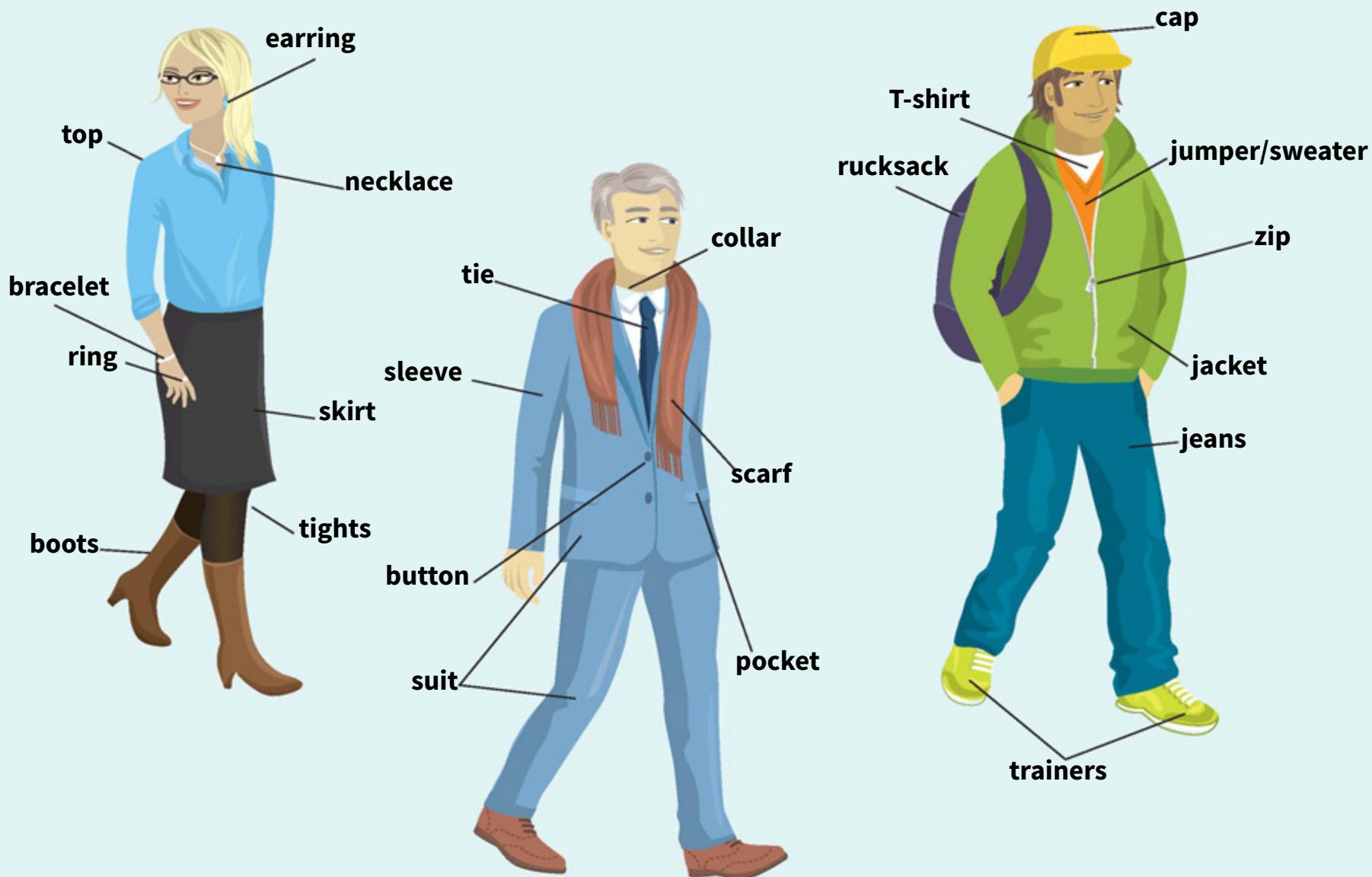
A

## Smart, stylish and casual

I think the woman looks **stylish** [wearing nice clothes and looking attractive; also **well-dressed**].

The man is **smartly dressed** [clean and tidy and suitable for formal situations].

The boy's clothes are more **casual** [comfortable and suitable for informal situations].



B

## Verbs and phrases used with clothes



As soon as I get up, I have a shower and **get dressed** [put on my clothes]. I don't eat breakfast.



I have to **wear** a suit and tie to work, but I usually **take off** my tie before lunchtime. [remove it; opp **put something on**]



I prefer jackets with a zip; it's easier to **undo** a zip [open a zip, buttons, etc.] and it's also much quicker to **do it up**.



I think I look good **in black** because dark colours **suit** me. [I look good in dark colours; opp **bright** colours]



When I get home from work, I usually **change into** a pair of jeans.

### Common mistakes

I like **clothes**. (NOT I like cloth or cloths.)

I like your new **trousers**. (NOT I like your new trouser.)

# Exercises

## 21.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

boots earrings button top ring jumper bracelet scarf  
necklace zip pocket cap sleeve tights collar

items of clothing	jewellery	parts of clothing
boots		

## 21.2 Find five more things that are different in the pictures.

- 1 The first woman is wearing a ring; the second isn't.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....



## 21.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Why don't you take ..... off ..... your coat?
- 2 Madison looks really nice ..... purple.
- 3 He was very smartly- ..... this morning. He had his best suit on.
- 4 It took me ages to put ..... these boots.
- 5 You should wear bright colours more often; they ..... you.
- 6 Julia couldn't do ..... the zip on her jacket.
- 7 I changed ..... a pair of jeans as soon as I got home.
- 8 I took my tie off and ..... the top button of my shirt.
- 9 My brother takes his books to school in a ..... . He says it's easier to carry them on his back.
- 10 I had a quick shower, got ..... , then joined the others for breakfast.

## 21.4 Over to you

### Women, answer these questions.

- 1 What jewellery do you usually wear?
- 2 Which colours suit you best?
- 3 Do you prefer smart or casual clothes?
- 4 Do you generally look quite stylish?
- 5 Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- 6 Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

### Men, answer these questions.

- How often do you wear a suit?
- How often do you wear a tie?
- Do you usually do up the top button of your shirt?
- Do you often change into jeans after school or work?
- Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

## A

## Fashion

**FASHION: WHICH ARE YOU?**

- I usually **shop**<sup>1</sup> with a friend.
- I always **try on clothes**<sup>2</sup> before I buy them.
- I sometimes buy clothes that don't **suit me**<sup>3</sup>, just because they're **fashionable**<sup>4</sup>.
- If I buy trousers or a skirt, I buy a shirt or top to **go with**<sup>5</sup> it at the same time.
- My **wardrobe**<sup>6</sup> is full of clothes that I buy and hardly ever wear.
- I like to buy **designer labels**<sup>7</sup>, even though they're more expensive.
- I like wearing fashionable clothes, but the price has to be **reasonable**<sup>8</sup>.
- I never buy clothes just because they're **in fashion**<sup>9</sup>.
- I like to **dress in**<sup>10</sup> clothes that are casual but still look quite fashionable.
- I'm always happy with what **I've got on**<sup>11</sup>.

21
42

- <sup>1</sup> buy things in shops
- <sup>2</sup> put clothes on in a shop to see what they are like
- <sup>3</sup> look good on me
- <sup>4</sup> popular at that particular time
- <sup>5</sup> look good together
- <sup>6</sup> a large cupboard for keeping clothes in
- <sup>7</sup> clothes made by famous designers, e.g. Versace, Dolce & Gabbana
- <sup>8</sup> not expensive
- <sup>9</sup> fashionable
- <sup>10</sup> wear a particular type, style or colour of clothes
- <sup>11</sup> am wearing

## Language help

If two things **match**, they are a similar colour or type. If two things **go with** each other, they look good together.

*Catherine's bag matches her coat. Catherine's bag goes with her coat.*

If something **suits** you, it looks good on you. If something **fits** you, it is the right size.

## B

## In a clothes shop

A **shop assistant** [a person who works in a shop] is **serving** different customers [helping them to buy things].

**Shop assistant** Can I help you?

**Customer 1** No, I'm being served, thanks.  
[another shop assistant is already helping me]

**Shop assistant** Do you need any help?

**Customer 2** Yes, I've just tried on this jacket in a **size** 12, and it didn't really **fit** me; it's a bit **tight** [too small around the body; opp **loose/big**]. Have you got it in a bigger size?

**Shop assistant** We have got a size 14, but not in pink, I'm afraid.

**Customer 2** Oh, that's a shame [that is disappointing; syn **that's a pity**]. OK. I'll leave it, thanks.  
[I have decided not to buy it; opp **I'll take it/them**]

**Shop assistant** OK. I'm sorry about that. ... Can I help you?

**Customer 3** Yes, I'm looking for a skirt and this looks nice. [I want to find a skirt] Can I try it on?

**Shop assistant** Yes, of course. The **changing rooms** are down there. [the place where you can try on clothes]

# Exercises

## 22.1 Are these pairs similar in meaning or different in meaning?

- 1 *in fashion* and *fashionable* ..... *similar* .....
- 2 *wardrobe* and *changing room* .....
- 3 *I'll take it* and *I'll leave it* .....
- 4 *match something* and *go with something* .....
- 5 *tight* and *loose* .....
- 6 *fit someone* and *suit someone* .....
- 7 *that's a shame* and *that's a pity* .....



## 22.2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 I often shop with my mother.   | I often go <i>shopping with my mother</i> ..... |
| 2 These watches are fashionable. | These watches are in .....                      |
| 3 Your top matches your skirt.   | Your top goes .....                             |
| 4 I like what I'm wearing.       | I like what I've .....                          |
| 5 Those trousers suit you.       | Those trousers look .....                       |
| 6 Are they the right size?       | Do they .....                                   |
| 7 I'd like it to be quite loose. | I don't want it to be too .....                 |
| 8 She always wears black.        | She always ..... in black.                      |

## 22.3 Which words are being defined?

- 1 be the right size *fit* .....
- 2 not cheap, but not expensive .....
- 3 a large cupboard for keeping clothes in .....
- 4 popular with people at a particular time .....
- 5 the place where you try on clothes in a shop .....
- 6 Armani and Calvin Klein are examples of this .....
- 7 a person who works in a shop .....
- 8 look after customers and help them to buy things .....

## 22.4 Complete the dialogues.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?

CUSTOMER 1: I'm <sup>1</sup> *looking for* ..... a top. This one's quite nice. I think I'll <sup>2</sup> ..... it on.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Of course. The <sup>3</sup> ..... room is just over there.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?

CUSTOMER 2: No, I'm being <sup>4</sup> ..... , thanks.

SHOP ASSISTANT: How was the top?

CUSTOMER 1: I'm afraid it didn't <sup>5</sup> ..... very well. It was a bit <sup>6</sup> ..... under the arms.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Oh, that's a <sup>7</sup> ..... . Would you like a bigger size?

CUSTOMER 1: No, I don't think so. In actual fact, it wasn't just the <sup>8</sup> ..... . I don't think it <sup>9</sup> ..... me, actually. I think it's really for a younger person. I'll <sup>10</sup> ..... it, thanks.

## 22.5 Over to you

Look at the text at the top of the opposite page again. Which statements are true for you? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

## A

## In a supermarket



## SHOPPING &amp; MONEY



## How do supermarkets make us<sup>1</sup> spend more money?

They put **fresh**<sup>2</sup> bread, as it smells lovely, near the **entrance**<sup>3</sup> to make us feel hungry – and hungry shoppers spend more. They also rearrange things and put them in different places; this makes us spend more time in the store and that means spending more money. They put sweets and chocolate near the checkout, so it is easy to add bars of chocolate to our basket or trolley while we are waiting in the **queue**<sup>4</sup>. And they put the most expensive **items**<sup>5</sup> on the middle shelves where you are more **likely**<sup>6</sup> to see them. And be careful of **special offers**<sup>7</sup>, e.g. three for the price of two. People often buy more than they need and **throw away** half of it.



<sup>1</sup> cause us to do or be something, e.g. *I don't like rain; it makes me* depressed.

<sup>2</sup> just made/cooked

<sup>3</sup> the place where you go into a building

<sup>4</sup> a line of people who are waiting for something

<sup>5</sup> an *item* is a single thing

<sup>6</sup> If you are likely to do something, you will probably do it.

<sup>7</sup> cheaper prices than normal

## B

## Shopping centres and street markets

Some people like modern **shopping centres**<sup>1</sup> because everything is **under one roof**<sup>2</sup> and it is **convenient**<sup>3</sup>. There's a **wide range**<sup>4</sup> of shops, and if there is anything wrong with something you buy, the shop will **replace**<sup>5</sup> it, or give you a **refund**<sup>6</sup>.

Other people prefer going to **street markets** because they like the **atmosphere**<sup>7</sup> you get from the different **stalls**. Food and clothes are also usually cheaper in street markets. Sometimes you can try to agree a lower price for something you buy in a street market; we call this **haggling**. Of course, if you don't like what you buy in a street market, you can't normally take it back and get a refund.



stall

<sup>1</sup> large covered shopping areas

<sup>5</sup> exchange it for another one

<sup>2</sup> in one place

<sup>6</sup> money that is paid back to you when you return something

<sup>3</sup> practical and easy to use

<sup>7</sup> the feeling in a place or situation

<sup>4</sup> different things of the same type

# Exercises

## 23.1 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a basket.  
*False. If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a trolley.*
- 2 Supermarkets arrange things to make us spend more money.
- 3 The checkout is where you pay for things.
- 4 Expensive items are on the top shelves.
- 5 If something is fresh, it has just been made.
- 6 There are often lovely smells near the entrance.
- 7 Sweets are often near the checkout.
- 8 It's always a good idea to buy things on special offer.

## 23.2 Mark the main stress on these words. Use the index to help you.

'atmosphere      convenient      checkout      entrance      a refund      replace      item

## 23.3 Are these statements true of shopping centres, street markets, or both?

- 1 They are usually quite modern. *shopping centres*
- 2 Everything is under one roof.
- 3 You buy things from stalls.
- 4 You can haggle.
- 5 You can normally get refunds.
- 6 They can be very convenient.



## 23.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I took the shoes back to the shop, but they wouldn't give me a *refund*.
- 2 It ..... me angry when shops refuse to give you a refund or ..... things.
- 3 I often buy bananas but forget to eat them, and then I have to ..... them away.
- 4 When I got to the checkout, there was a long ..... of people waiting.
- 5 There's a special ..... on melons – buy one, get one free!
- 6 The vegetables are near the ..... , where we came in.
- 7 I like that supermarket because they have a wide ..... of meat and cheese.
- 8 In my local street market, there's just a really nice ..... : it's very busy, but everyone is friendly and there's lots of colour.
- 9 I am more ..... to buy something if it's a special offer, because it seems cheaper.

## 23.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 How often do you shop in supermarkets? What do you think of them?
- 2 How often do you go to shopping centres? Do you like them?
- 3 How often do you go to street markets? Do you like them?
- 4 Do you haggle for things when you're shopping?
- 5 Have you ever asked for a refund?

## A

## Fruit

pineapple



peach



strawberry



bunch of grapes



olives



pear



melon



lemon



coconut



## B

## Vegetables

beans



peas



onion



garlic



carrot



mushrooms



aubergine



courgette



pepper



cabbage



broccoli



spinach



## C

## Salad

A **salad** is usually a mixture of uncooked ingredients. In Britain it mainly has **lettuce**, as well as **tomato**, **cucumber**, onion, and other things. We often put **salad dressing** (usually **oil** and **vinegar**, or perhaps oil and lemon) on salad.

lettuce



tomato



cucumber



oil



vinegar



## D

## Meat, fish and seafood

Animal:

cow

calf [young cow]

Meat:

beef

veal

lamb [young sheep]

lamb

pig

pork

chicken/hen

chicken

A person who does not eat meat is a **vegetarian**.

salmon



prawns



mussels



crab



# Exercises

## 24.1 Write down one vegetable and fruit beginning with these letters.

	vegetable	fruit
1 the letter <i>p</i>	<i>peas</i> .....	.....
2 the letter <i>g</i>	.....	.....
3 the letter <i>m</i>	.....	.....
4 the letter <i>s</i>	.....	.....
5 the letter <i>o</i>	.....	.....

## 24.2 Find a word from each box where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

carrot 1	onion	tomato	melon 1
lettuce	prawn	pork	chicken
aubergine	salmon	lamb	mushroom

## 24.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork	veal	<b>salmon</b>	beef	<i>salmon is a fish, the others are meat</i>
2 lettuce	cabbage	tomato	cucumber	.....
3 pork	lamb	beef	crab	.....
4 peach	onion	pepper	courgette	.....
5 crab	broccoli	mussels	prawn	.....
6 carrots	chicken	beans	aubergine	.....

## 24.4 Do you usually eat the skin (the outside) of these fruits? (Answer Yes, Sometimes or No.)

pineapple	No .....	peaches	.....
melon	.....	pears	.....
grapes	.....	lemon	.....

## 24.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 What do we call the meat from a cow, lamb, calf, and a pig? *beef* ....., ....., ....., .....
- 2 What's the main ingredient in a green salad? .....
- 3 What are the two most common things we put in salad dressing? ..... and .....
- 4 What do we usually call someone who doesn't eat meat? .....
- 5 What do we call a number of grapes that grow together? A ..... of grapes.

## 24.6 Over to you

Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 ..... is/are more common than .....
- 2 ..... is/are more expensive than .....
- 3 A mixed salad usually has ....., ....., ....., .....
- 4 We don't often grow .....
- 5 We don't often eat .....
- 6 ..... is/are my favourite .....

## A

**Ways of cooking food**

You **boil** potatoes or rice in a **saucepan**.

You can **fry** sausages in a **frying pan**.

You **grill** toast or meat under a **grill**.

You **roast** meat [using oil] in the **oven**.

You also **bake** cakes [without oil] in the oven.

You **barbecue** meat and fish on a **barbecue**.

Food which is not cooked is **raw**.

barbecue



saucepan



frying pan



grill



oven



## B

**Preparing and cooking food**

**Peel** the potatoes [remove the skin] and boil them.

While they're boiling, **chop** an onion. [cut it into small pieces]

Fry the onion before **adding** some chopped tomatoes. [putting them together with the onions]

Then **stir** it all for a few minutes. [move it around in a saucepan using a spoon]

## C

**What does it taste like?**

**Chefs** [people who cook food in a restaurant as a job] always **taste** the food [put a small amount in their mouth to see what it is like] while they are cooking.

I don't like the **taste** of too much garlic.

I tried the soup and it **tasted** a bit strange.

Michel's food is very **tasty** [has a good taste].

Indian food is a bit too **spicy** for me [with a strong hot flavour].

You get ice cream in different **flavours** [the type of taste that food or drink has, e.g. vanilla, coffee, strawberry, etc.]

Lena said her pasta was **horrible** [terrible, unpleasant], but I thought it was **delicious** [fantastic, with a wonderful taste].

## Language help

We use the word **sour** to describe the taste of lemons (opp **sweet**), but usually **bitter** to describe coffee that is strong and has a sharp unpleasant taste (opp **smooth**).

Strong, dark chocolate can also be described as bitter, but this is not always negative.

## D

**Are you a good cook?**

“I'm a bit nervous when I cook, so I always follow a **recipe** [the cooking instructions for a particular dish, e.g. lasagne], and make sure I have all the right **ingredients** [the different food you need to make a particular meal] before I start. However, I am quite good at making **pies**, especially apple **pie**.<sup>33</sup> (Pie is pronounced /paɪ/ like 'my').



apple pie

## Common mistakes

A person who cooks well is a good **cook** (NOT a good **cooker**). The **cooker** is the large piece of equipment you use for cooking. You could also say that you are **good/bad** at cooking (NOT good/bad **in** cooking), e.g. *I'm quite good at cooking fish*.

Also we 'cook' a type of food, e.g. *I'm cooking some beef*, but we 'make' a dish, e.g. *I'm making dessert*. (NOT I'm **cooking** dessert.)

# Exercises

## 25.1 Write down five more ways of cooking food.

*boil*

....., ....., ....., ....., .....

## 25.2 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

chef Is it like shoe or chief? *shoe*

raw Is it like now or door?

sour Is it like more or hour?

oven

Is it like love or lonely?

pie

Is it like pea or lie?

saucepan

Is it like four or flower?

## 25.3 Cross out the wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1 The paella was very tasteful. *tasty*.....

2 My brother is a very good cooker. ....

3 Don't forget to heat up the fry pan before you add the aubergine. ....

4 This chocolate is very sour. ....

5 I'm afraid my mother has never been very good in cooking. ....

6 You can buy this ice cream in five different tastes. ....

## 25.4 Which words are being defined?

1 The flavour that something has in your mouth when you eat it. *taste*.....

2 A person who cooks food as their job. ....

3 Having a good taste. ....

4 The large piece of equipment in the kitchen for cooking food. ....

5 The word to describe the taste of lemons. ....

6 Not cooked. ....

7 Having a fantastic taste. .... . The opposite is .....

## 25.5 Explain what the person did, using the correct word.

1 I got the list of food and cooking instructions.

You got the *recipe* .....

2 I bought all the food I needed for the dish.

You bought all the .....

3 First I removed the skin of the potatoes.

You ..... the potatoes.

4 I cooked the potatoes in water.

You ..... the potatoes.

5 Then I cut the onions into small pieces.

You ..... the onions.

6 I cooked the onions in a frying pan.

You ..... the onions.

7 I put the potatoes together with the onion.

You ..... the potatoes

to the onion.

8 I put in some milk and moved it round in the pan.

You put in milk and ..... it.

9 Then I put a little in my mouth to see what it was like.

You ..... it.

## 25.6 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you eat these things in your country?

- a) raw fish b) roast beef c) fried rice d) baked potato e) barbecued chicken

2 Do you like these things?

- a) bitter chocolate b) spicy food c) chocolate-flavoured ice cream d) the taste of garlic

3 How often do you cook food on a barbecue?

4 Are you a good cook? If so, what are you good at?

## A

**The rush hour\***

“For me, the rush hour is the worst time of day. Everywhere is busy, and everyone seems to be **in a hurry**<sup>1</sup>. I usually drive to work, but sometimes I **get stuck**<sup>2</sup> in **traffic jams**<sup>3</sup>, and when I get to work I find there’s **nowhere to park**<sup>4</sup> because the **car park**<sup>5</sup> is already full. But if I get the bus, it takes me longer, and that makes the journey very **stressful**<sup>6</sup>. When I get home in the evenings I often feel **exhausted**<sup>7</sup> – more from the travelling than from my work. ”

\* the time when people travel to and from work

<sup>1</sup> want to go somewhere / do something quickly

<sup>2</sup> become unable to move or go anywhere

<sup>3</sup> long lines of cars that are not moving

<sup>4</sup> no place to leave the car

<sup>5</sup> place to leave a car

<sup>6</sup> causing a lot of worry

<sup>7</sup> very tired

**Common mistakes**

The situation was **stressful**, and I was very **stressed** (NOT I was stressing, or it was stressing).

I couldn’t find a **car park**. OR I couldn’t find a **parking space**. (NOT I couldn’t find a parking.)

## B

**The nightlife\***

“One of the **advantages of**<sup>1</sup> living in the city is the **nightlife**. The **town centre** is always **lively**<sup>2</sup> in the evening, and there is a wide **variety of**<sup>3</sup> bars, clubs and restaurants to go to. If you are more interested in **culture** and **cultural activities**, you can go to the cinema, the theatre, concerts, art galleries, etc. ”

\* places to visit in the evening for social reasons

<sup>1</sup> the positive things about a situation; opp **disadvantages**

<sup>2</sup> full of activity

<sup>3</sup> many different things

## C

**Advantages and disadvantages**

“Cities always seem **crowded**<sup>1</sup>, and they can be **dirty** (opp **clean**) and **dangerous** (opp **safe**) places to live. **Pollution**<sup>2</sup> is worse in big cities, and so is the **crime rate**<sup>3</sup>. I only walk home **at night**<sup>4</sup> if I’m with a friend. When I’m on my own, I get a taxi.

Life in cities is also more expensive. Flats cost a lot, and I think you get better **value for money**<sup>5</sup> in a smaller town or village.

On the positive side, **you get**<sup>6</sup> a real **mix**<sup>7</sup> of people and nationalities in a big city; that makes life more interesting. I also enjoy the fact that there’s always something **going on**<sup>8</sup> in a big city, so life is never **dull**<sup>9</sup>. ”

<sup>1</sup> full of people; opp **quiet**

<sup>2</sup> dirty air and water

<sup>3</sup> the number of crimes that happen

<sup>4</sup> in the period when it is dark

<sup>5</sup> If something is **good value for money**, you are happy with what you receive for the amount of money you pay.

<sup>6</sup> you find / there exists

<sup>7</sup> different types

<sup>8</sup> happening

<sup>9</sup> boring; opp exciting

# Exercises

## 26.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |           |                            |             |
|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1 town    | <input type="checkbox"/> d | a for money |
| 2 traffic | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b hour      |
| 3 night   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c rate      |
| 4 value   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d centre    |
| 5 crime   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e space     |
| 6 rush    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f jam       |
| 7 car     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g life      |
| 8 parking | <input type="checkbox"/>   | h park      |



## 26.2 Write the opposite.

- 1 It's safe. It's dangerous. .....
- 2 It was crowded. .....  
3 It's very clean. .....
- 4 It was very exciting. .....
- 5 There are advantages. .....  
6 There's a place to park. .....

## 26.3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap.

- 1 A: Is there plenty to do in the evening?  
B: Yes, the nightlife ..... is great.
- 2 A: And are there lots of ..... activities in the town?  
B: Yes. There's a cinema, theatre, concerts, and so on.
- 3 A: Is it good for shopping?  
B: Yes, there's a ..... of shops.
- 4 A: Are you worried about walking home late in the evening?  
B: Yes, it can be dangerous at .....
- 5 A: Is the traffic bad?  
B: Yes, I often get ..... in traffic jams.
- 6 A: Is your flat expensive?  
B: Well, it's not cheap but I think it's quite good ..... for money.

## 26.4 Rewrite the sentences without the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- 1 There were different types of people there. There was a good mix ..... of people there.
- 2 I was very tired.  
I was ..... .
- 3 I was very nervous and worried.  
I was very ..... .
- 4 The place is always full of activity.  
The place is always very ..... .
- 5 The air is dirty.  
There's a lot of ..... .
- 6 They want to do everything very quickly.  
They want to do everything in a ..... .
- 7 There was nowhere to leave the car.  
There was nowhere to ..... .
- 8 There isn't much happening here.  
There isn't much ..... here.
- 9 Poverty doesn't exist here.  
You don't ..... here.

## 26.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What's the rush hour like where you live?
- 2 What's the nightlife like in your town?
- 3 Is it good for cultural activities?
- 4 Is there much pollution?
- 5 Is the crime rate bad?
- 6 What are the advantages/disadvantages of where you live?

## A

## Surrounded by nature

“I grew up in the **countryside** where I was **surrounded by**<sup>1</sup> nature. As children, we used to play on the **banks**<sup>2</sup> of the river and in the **woods**<sup>3</sup>. In the summer we **picked**<sup>4</sup> apples and blackberries; in the autumn we often picked mushrooms. The **seasons**<sup>5</sup> were all different, and I loved the **scenery**<sup>6</sup>, the **open spaces**<sup>7</sup>, and the **fresh air**<sup>8</sup>. I still do.”

<sup>1</sup> nature was everywhere around me

<sup>2</sup> the side of the river

<sup>3</sup> groups of trees

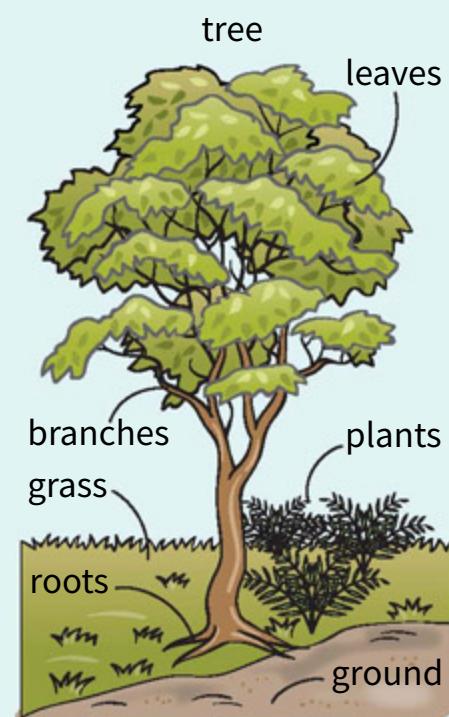
<sup>4</sup> took them from the tree/plant

<sup>5</sup> spring, summer, autumn, winter

<sup>6</sup> the natural beauty you see around you

<sup>7</sup> empty areas of land

<sup>8</sup> naturally clean air



## Common mistakes

I like being **in the countryside**. OR I like being **surrounded by nature**. (NOT I like being ~~in the nature~~.)

## B

## Working in the country

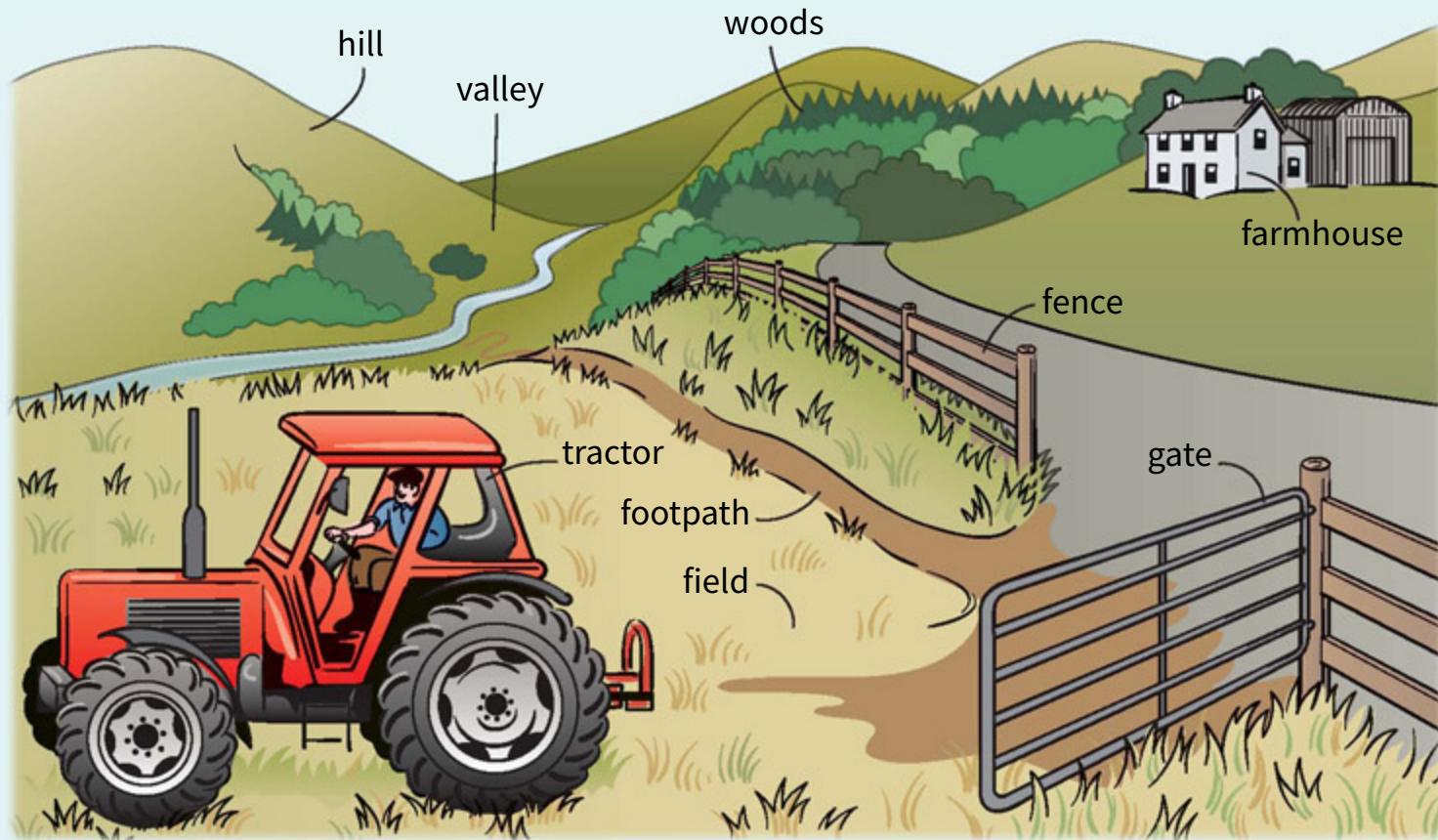
“My uncle **owns**<sup>1</sup> a farm. He **keeps**<sup>2</sup> a few animals, but mostly he grows **crops** like barley, wheat and potatoes. **Farming** is a hard life: my uncle is usually **up**<sup>3</sup> at five in the morning, and sometimes his work isn’t finished until **sunset**<sup>4</sup>. ”

<sup>1</sup> has (something that legally belongs to him)

<sup>2</sup> owns and looks after them

<sup>3</sup> not in bed

<sup>4</sup> when the sun goes down in the evening



## C

## The disadvantages of country life

“The worst thing about living in a **village**<sup>1</sup> is that there isn’t much to do in the evening, apart from going to the village pub. The nearest town is eight miles **away**<sup>2</sup>, and **public transport**<sup>3</sup> is **hopeless**<sup>4</sup>. And, of course, **you don’t get**<sup>5</sup> many shops in a village. ”

<sup>1</sup> a place smaller than a town

<sup>4</sup> terrible

<sup>2</sup> a distance from a place

<sup>5</sup> there aren’t / you don’t find

<sup>3</sup> buses and trains for people to use

# Exercises

## 27.1 These things all grow, but what are they? Put the letters in the right order.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 seret ..... <i>trees</i>   | 5 tnpdal ..... <i>plants</i>  |
| 2 sargs ..... <i>grass</i>   | 6 toros ..... <i>roses</i>    |
| 3 velase ..... <i>leaves</i> | 7 chesranb ..... <i>beans</i> |
| 4 odows ..... <i>rows</i>    | 8 roscp ..... <i>roses</i>    |

## 27.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: It must be beautiful when the sun goes down over the valley.  
B: It is. The *sundsets* ..... are lovely here.
- 2 A: Have you ever lived in a town?  
B: No, I've always lived in the ..... .
- 3 A: Is Dad ..... yet?  
B: He must be. He's not in bed.
- 4 A: Is it your dad's farm?  
B: No, he doesn't ..... it. He's just the farm manager.
- 5 A: Do you enjoy the summer?  
B: Yes, but spring is my favourite ..... .
- 6 A: Did it rain a lot last night?  
B: Yes. When I went outside this morning, the ..... was very wet.
- 7 A: Do they ..... many animals?  
B: Yes, they've got sheep, cows and goats.

## 27.3 Look at the picture in section B again, then cover it and complete the text.

We walked alongside the <sup>1</sup>*fence* ..... , opened the <sup>2</sup> ..... , and said 'hello' to the man on the <sup>3</sup> ..... . We then followed the <sup>4</sup> ..... across the <sup>5</sup> ..... and down into the <sup>6</sup> ..... . We stopped and had a picnic by the river. After that, we walked up through the <sup>7</sup> ..... and then finally back to the <sup>8</sup> ..... , where we stopped and bought some eggs.

## 27.4 Cover the left-hand page. Complete the advantages and disadvantages of living in the country.

Some of the best things about living in the country are:

- the beautiful <sup>1</sup>*scenery* .....
- the open <sup>2</sup> .....
- the fresh <sup>3</sup> .....
- being able to go out and <sup>4</sup> ..... fruit
- the fact you are <sup>5</sup> ..... by nature.

Some of the <sup>6</sup> ..... things about living in the country are that:

- you don't <sup>7</sup> ..... many shops
- <sup>8</sup> ..... transport is <sup>9</sup> .....
- there isn't <sup>10</sup> ..... to do in the evening, and the nearest town might be a long way <sup>11</sup> .....

### Over to you

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of living in the countryside?  
Do you agree with the ideas above? Can you think of any other advantages and disadvantages? If possible, discuss your ideas with someone else.

## A

## Vehicles

**Vehicle** is the general word for all types of road transport.



bus



lorry (also called truck)



coach

## bicycle



van



motorbike

## B

## Travelling around

bus/coach	train	plane	taxi	bicycle
bus/coach driver	train driver	pilot	taxi driver	cyclist
(£) bus fare	train fare	airfare	fare	
get / catch / go by	get / catch / go by	fly	get/take	go by bike / cycle / ride a bike
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in / out (of)	get on/off
bus stop / bus station	platform / train station	airport	taxi rank	
journey	journey	flight		

I **go** to work **by bus**. It's only three **stops**.

We **got the train** to Cardiff, but the **journey** was terrible.

When the **bus fares** went up last month, my dad started **cycling** to work.

I **got out of** the taxi and almost walked away without paying the **fare**.

If there are more **flights**, **airfares** should be cheaper.

We were going to **get the train** to Paris, but in the end we decided to **fly**.

## Common mistakes

It was a good **journey**.  
(NOT It was a good **travel**.)

## C

## Are you happy with public transport?\*



Where I live buses are not very **convenient**<sup>1</sup>; the nearest bus stop is half a mile **away**<sup>2</sup>. And when I do get the bus, I often have to **wait in a queue**<sup>3</sup> for about twenty minutes, and then three come along at the same time!



People are always **complaining about**<sup>4</sup> the bus service, but where I live it's good. I've got a bus stop **round the corner**<sup>5</sup> and buses **run** every ten minutes for most of the day, and they're usually **reliable**<sup>6</sup>.



I get the train to work. Trains are expensive – a **return**<sup>7</sup> to London is forty pounds – but I've got a **season ticket**<sup>8</sup>, and that makes it cheaper. My only real **complaint** is that if I **miss**<sup>9</sup> my train, I have to wait half an hour for the next one.

\* buses and trains for people to use

<sup>1</sup> near or easy to use

<sup>2</sup> the distance from a place

<sup>3</sup> stand in a line

<sup>4</sup> saying they are unhappy / not satisfied with

<sup>5</sup> very near

<sup>6</sup> you can trust them

<sup>7</sup> a ticket for a journey to a place and back

<sup>8</sup> a ticket you can use many times within a period of time without paying each time

<sup>9</sup> don't catch (a train or bus)

# Exercises

## 28.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 We were late, so we had to get / catch a taxi.
- 2 You mustn't ride / drive a motorbike without a helmet in the UK.
- 3 She told him to get in / get on the car and fasten his seat belt.
- 4 The journey / travel to the airport takes half an hour.
- 5 Trains to the airport travel / run every half hour.
- 6 The pilot didn't want to drive / fly the plane in such bad weather.
- 7 They left a bit late and lost / missed the bus.
- 8 I see that train fares / tickets are going up again.
- 9 You mustn't speak to the bus pilot / driver when he is driving.
- 10 We must get off / out the bus at the next station / stop.

## 28.2 Test your knowledge. Can you label the vehicles without looking at the opposite page?



1 bus .....

3 .....

5 .....



2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

## 28.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I wasn't happy with the service, so I made a ..... *complaint* .....
- 2 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
- 3 Where I live, the public transport is not very ..... because the nearest bus stop is two kilometres ..... , and there are no trains at all.
- 4 The train station is just round the ..... from where I live.
- 5 Buses are not very ..... . Sometimes they come every five minutes, but other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
- 6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
- 7 Train fares are crazy: a ..... to Glasgow costs more than two singles.
- 8 People are always ..... about the buses, but I don't think they're that bad.
- 9 I use the trains every day for work, so I've got a ..... ticket.
- 10 Your train is going to depart from ..... six at 10:25.

## 28.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions about transport in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

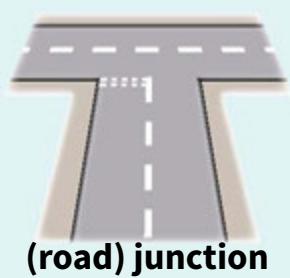
- 1 Are trains more reliable than buses?
- 2 Are return tickets usually twice the price of a single?
- 3 Is where you live convenient for public transport? Why? / Why not?
- 4 How often do you take a taxi? Why, and where do you go to?
- 5 How often do you ride a bike?

## A

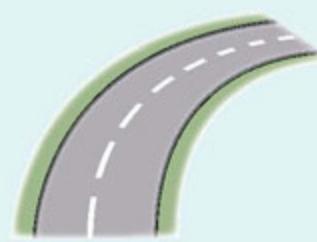
## Roads



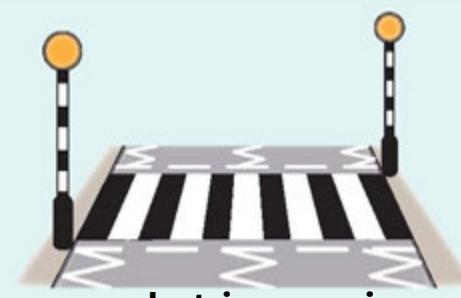
traffic lights



(road) junction



a **bend** in the road  
(this road **bends**  
to the right)



pedestrian crossing

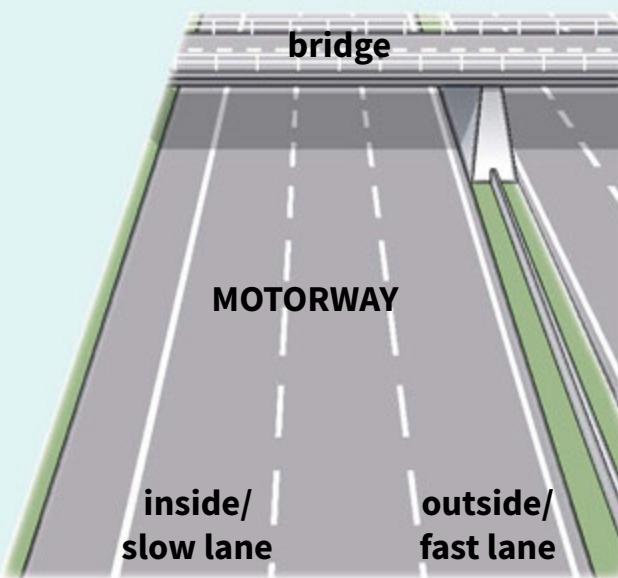
## road signs



**no overtaking**  
[you can't pass  
another car]



speed limit



## B

## Finding your way

“Yesterday, I **got lost**<sup>1</sup> **on my way to**<sup>2</sup> the airport. I decided to use side roads and go **via**<sup>3</sup> the village of Pensford, but I took the wrong **turning**<sup>4</sup> just before I got there, and I **ended up**<sup>5</sup> in a supermarket car park. Fortunately I was able to **ask** someone **the way**<sup>6</sup>, and a very kind woman **directed**<sup>7</sup> me to the A38, where I could then follow **signs** for the airport.”

<sup>1</sup> didn't know where I was

<sup>2</sup> while I was going to (the airport)

<sup>3</sup> go through somewhere to get to a destination

<sup>4</sup> corner where one road meets another

<sup>5</sup> found myself in a place I didn't expect to be in

<sup>6</sup> ask how to get to a place

<sup>7</sup> told me how to get to a place

## C

## An accident

“I saw an **accident** this morning on the **main road**<sup>1</sup> into town. A **pedestrian**<sup>2</sup> – a young boy – stepped off the **pavement**<sup>3</sup> and into the road just as a car was **approaching**<sup>4</sup>. The driver **braked**<sup>5</sup>, but the car **swerved**<sup>6</sup> and **crashed into a parked car**<sup>7</sup> on the opposite side of the road. Fortunately the driver wasn't **injured** but both cars were quite badly **damaged**.”

<sup>1</sup> important road

<sup>2</sup> a person walking

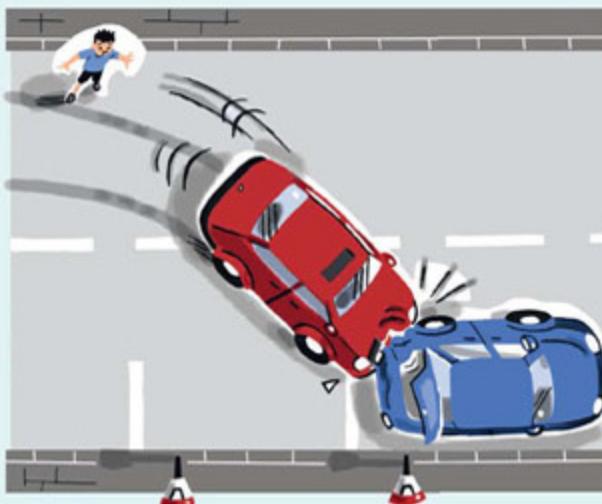
<sup>3</sup> the place where pedestrians walk

<sup>4</sup> coming closer

<sup>5</sup> put his foot on the **brake** to stop the car

<sup>6</sup> changed direction suddenly and without control

<sup>7</sup> a car next to the pavement, not moving



## Language help

You **damage** a thing [harm or break it] but **injure** a person [hurt them]. The related nouns are **damage** and **injury**, e.g. *There was a lot of damage to the bike, but the cyclist only had minor injuries.*

# Exercises

## 29.1 Which words are being defined?

- 1 part of a road that is separated from other parts by a line ..... *lane*
- 2 people who are walking ..... *pedestrians*
- 3 the place where people usually walk ..... *pavement*
- 4 the place where people can cross the road ..... *crossing*
- 5 the place where two roads meet ..... *junction*
- 6 the thing you put your foot on to stop a car ..... *pedal*
- 7 a message or symbol beside the road that gives information ..... *sign*

## 29.2 Complete the information for these road signs.



1 50 mph ..... *speed* limit



3 ..... *.....*



5 end of ..... *.....*



7 a ..... *.....* in the road



2 there is only one ..... *.....*



4 no ..... *.....*



6 low ..... *.....*



8 ..... *.....*

## 29.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 I asked him how to get to the bank.
- 2 I didn't know where I was in the town centre.
- 3 You can ask someone to tell you how to get here.
- 4 I went through Ledbury to get to Malvern.
- 5 I was going to the station.
- 6 We arrived unexpectedly by the river.
- 7 I turned left instead of right.

I asked him the ..... *way* to the bank.  
I got ..... *.....* in the town centre.  
You can ask someone to ..... *.....* you.  
I went to Malvern ..... *.....* Ledbury.  
I was on my ..... *.....* to the station.  
We ..... *.....* up by the river.  
I took the wrong ..... *.....*.

## 29.4 Complete the text.

I was on the <sup>1</sup> ..... *main* ..... road into town today and I saw an <sup>2</sup> ..... *.....*.  
I was <sup>3</sup> ..... *.....* a roundabout when the guy behind tried to <sup>4</sup> ..... *.....*  
me and the driver in front of me. He was driving too fast – over the <sup>5</sup> ..... *.....*  
limit – and he lost control of the car. He had to <sup>6</sup> ..... *.....* to avoid a car on the  
other side of the road, and in the end he <sup>7</sup> ..... *.....* into a tree. The car was badly  
<sup>8</sup> ..... *.....*, but to my surprise, the man got out of the car with no <sup>9</sup> ..... *.....* at all.

## 29.5 Over to you

Answer the questions about your own country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
- 2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
- 3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings? If not, why not?
- 4 Do many people park their cars on the pavements? Why? / Why not?

## A

## Notices



on a machine that is not working, e.g. vending machine (above)



in the window of a hotel; the hotel is full



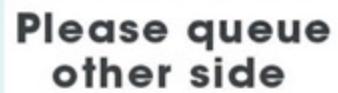
outside a theatre; all the tickets have been sold



outside a museum; you can go in free

## B

## Do this!



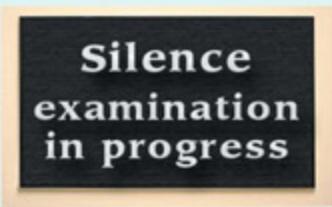
wait in a line on the other side of this notice, e.g. in a bank or post office



stay on the right side, e.g. on the underground



do not walk on the grass



be quiet, an exam is happening now

## C

## Don't do this!



you cannot leave your car here



you cannot go in here



you cannot go out here



on a hotel door; leave me to sleep



don't put a bag down and walk away



Do not lean out of the window



Please do not feed the animals  
do not give food to the animals

## D

## Warnings\*



Take care you don't hit your head on a low door.



Be careful. There's a step.



be careful, this **parcel** will break easily

\*something that tells you that something bad may happen

# Exercises

## 30.1 Complete these notices and warnings. More than one answer may be possible.

- |                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 NO PARKING ..... | 7 PLEASE QUEUE .....         |
| 2 MIND THE .....   | 8 MIND YOUR .....            |
| 3 ADMISSION .....  | 9 PLEASE DO NOT .....        |
| 4 OUT OF .....     | 10 KEEP OFF .....            |
| 5 NO .....         | 11 KEEP .....                |
| 6 DO NOT .....     | 12 SILENCE EXAMINATION ..... |

## 30.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?



No Vacancies

Please queue  
other side

1 On a door in a public building.

2 .....

3 .....



SOLD OUT



4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

Please do not  
feed the animals

7 .....

## 30.3 What notice could you see in each of these places?

- 1 on the underground
- 2 in a waiting area in a busy airport
- 3 on the door of a hotel room at 9 am
- 4 in front of garage doors
- 5 above the window of a train
- 6 on a door going into a low room
- 7 outside a museum or art gallery
- 8 outside a room where students are doing an exam

Keep right .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 30.4 Write down five more notices from the opposite page that you could see in a school or college.

Mind your head

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 30.5 Over to you

Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language? Try to find four more notices in the next week.

# 31

# Classroom language

A

## Equipment and uses



You use a rubber to **rub something out**, e.g. writing.  
You use a ruler to **measure** something.

You use a pencil sharpener to **sharpen** pencils.  
You use a highlighter pen to **highlight** a word.

B

## Classroom activities

Teachers or students do these things in the classroom.

- look up** a word in a dictionary [find the meaning of a word]
- borrow** someone's dictionary or rubber [use it and then return it]
- plug in** the DVD player [put the **plug** in the electric **socket**]
- turn up** the volume on the DVD player [increase the volume; make it louder; opp **turn (it) down**]
- correct** students' English [give the correct English if students make mistakes]

### Language help

If you **lend someone something**, you give it to them for a period of time; if you **borrow something from someone**, you get it from them.

Could you **lend me** your pen? means the same as Could I **borrow** your pen?

Teachers may ask students to do these things in the classroom.

- I'd like you to work with a **partner** [someone else, i. e. another student].
- Henrique, could you **swap places** with Lorena? [change seats / sit in each other's seats]
- Kim, could you **share** your book with Petra? [use it together at the same time]
- Repeat** this sentence after me. [say it again]

C

## Questions about vocabulary

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Q: What does <b>tiny</b> mean?                                    | A: It means 'very small'.  |
| Q: How do you <b>pronounce</b> weight?                            | A: It's pronounced /weɪt/, like wait.  |
| Q: How do you <b>spell</b> bicycle?                               | A: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.  |
| Q: How do you <b>use</b> the word <b>wow</b> ?                    | A: We use it to show that we think something is fantastic or surprising, e.g. <b>Wow</b> , look at that car.     |
| Q: Could you <b>explain the difference between</b> lend and give? | A: If you lend something to someone, they have to give it back. If you give something to them, they can keep it. |

### Language help

verb	noun
mean	<b>meaning</b>
pronounce	<b>pronunciation</b>
repeat	<b>repetition</b>

verb	noun
spell	<b>spelling</b>
explain	<b>explanation</b>
use	<b>use</b>

# Exercises

## 31.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |           |                                       |                  |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 explain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> g | a places         |
| 2 look up | <input type="checkbox"/>              | b a mistake      |
| 3 sharpen | <input type="checkbox"/>              | c a word         |
| 4 swap    | <input type="checkbox"/>              | d with a partner |
| 5 plug in | <input type="checkbox"/>              | e a dictionary   |
| 6 work    | <input type="checkbox"/>              | f the DVD player |
| 7 borrow  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | g the meaning    |
| 8 correct | <input type="checkbox"/>              | h a pencil       |

## 31.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What do you put in a DVD player?
- 2 What do you use a dictionary for?
- 3 What do you put in a socket?
- 4 What do you use a rubber for?
- 5 Why do you share a book?
- 6 What do you use a highlighter pen for?
- 7 What do you use a pencil sharpener for?
- 8 What do you use a ruler for?

a DVD

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 31.3 Here are some answers about *swap*. Write the questions.

- 1 A: *What does 'swap' mean?*  
B: It means to change something for something else.
- 2 A: .....  
B: Like shop or stop.
- 3 A: .....  
B: S-W-A-P.
- 4 A: .....  
B: You could say: *I can't see the board from here. Could you **swap** places with me?*

## 31.4 Read the sentences on the left, then write a suitable request on the right.

- 1 You want to look up a word.
- 2 You can't hear the DVD player.
- 3 You need to borrow a dictionary.
- 4 You didn't hear what the teacher said.
- 5 You want to know the difference between *lend* and *borrow*.
- 6 You need to use someone's ruler.
- 7 You want to sit in someone else's seat.

- Could I *borrow your dictionary*?  
Could you .....  
Could you .....  
Could you .....  
Could you .....  
Could I .....  
Could we .....

## 31.5 Over to you

Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things:

- |                          |                           |                        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| use a highlighter pen?   | share a book with anyone? | use a rubber?          |
| look up any words?       | borrow anything?          | lend someone a pencil? |
| swap places with anyone? | use a ruler?              |                        |

## A

**The school system**

This is the **system** for **state education** in most parts of England and Wales. State schools are free and operated by the country. Parents pay to send their children to **private** schools.

age	education
3	Almost all children <b>attend</b> [go to; <i>fml</i> ] <b>nursery school</b> for up to 15 hours a week.
5	Everyone starts <b>primary school</b> .
11	<b>Pupils</b> [students at school] go to <b>secondary school</b> .
16	Pupils <b>take/do</b> GCSE exams, in up to ten subjects. Then they can go to a college for <b>vocational</b> [job] <b>training</b> , e.g. hotel management or travel and tourism courses, or they can <b>stay at school</b> for two more years.
18	Pupils take 'A' level exams in three or four subjects, and then they can <b>leave school</b> and <b>get a job</b> or <b>go on to</b> university [continue their education at university], or go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching or business studies.

## B

**The school timetable**

The school day is **divided into** about 5–7 lessons, and over the course of a week, most pupils **do/study** about ten **subjects**, including English, maths, history, science, etc. There's usually a one-hour lunch **break** [period of rest between work], and a break in the morning and afternoon as well.

## Language help

In American English the subject is **math**, but in British English it is **maths**.

The school year is usually divided into three **terms** [periods of study], with each term being about 13 weeks, although some schools are now having shorter terms and more frequent holidays. At the end of the school year, pupils usually **take/do** exams before they **break up** [end classes for the term]. After the summer holidays, they **go back** [return] for the new school year.

## C

**School rules\***

“In the past schools generally had more rules, and if you **broke the rules**<sup>1</sup>, you were **punished**. At my school, for example, pupils sometimes had to **stay behind**<sup>2</sup> and write an essay. I used to **get into trouble**<sup>3</sup> for wearing **lipstick**.

I remember we had to **call** the **male** teachers 'sir' and **female** teachers 'miss', and we had to **wear** a horrible **uniform**<sup>4</sup>. Nowadays, the **atmosphere**<sup>5</sup> is more **relaxed**<sup>6</sup>: older pupils can often **dress**<sup>7</sup> the way they want – as long as they're reasonably **smart**<sup>8</sup> – and the teachers are not as **strict**<sup>9</sup>.”

\* instructions telling you what you must or must not do

<sup>1</sup> did something wrong

<sup>6</sup> comfortable and informal

<sup>2</sup> stay in a place when others leave

<sup>7</sup> wear clothes

<sup>3</sup> do something wrong and be punished

<sup>8</sup> well dressed and not too casual

<sup>4</sup> special clothes

<sup>9</sup> A strict teacher punishes pupils

<sup>5</sup> the feeling in a place or situation

who do something wrong.



lipstick

# Exercises

## 32.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |         |                            |                |
|---------|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1 go    | <input type="checkbox"/> e | a the rules    |
| 2 leave | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b a uniform    |
| 3 take  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c into trouble |
| 4 wear  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d at school    |
| 5 study | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e to school    |
| 6 stay  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f school       |
| 7 get   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g an exam      |
| 8 break | <input type="checkbox"/>   | h a subject    |

## 32.2 Complete the sentences about state schools in England.

- 1 When they're three, children can go to ..... school.
- 2 At the age of five they go to ..... school.
- 3 At the age of eleven they go to ..... school.
- 4 When they're sixteen they ..... exams, and afterwards they can go to a college for ..... if they want.
- 5 Many pupils ..... at school for another two years and do 'A' levels.
- 6 Nowadays, a lot of pupils ..... to university after they leave school.

## 32.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 We *take* / *do* exams in the summer. *Both are correct.*
- 2 The school *timetable* / *schedule* is more or less the same every day.
- 3 The day is divided *into* / *out of* seven lessons.
- 4 The pupils *do* / *study* about ten subjects.
- 5 There is usually a *rest* / *break* three times a day.
- 6 Schools often *break out* / *break up* after they finish exams.
- 7 After pupils leave school, many of them *take* / *get* a job.
- 8 Pupils can *wear* / *dress* the way they want.

## 32.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 There were three ..... in the school year.
- 2 I had to ..... a uniform.
- 3 I had to call the ..... teachers 'sir' and ..... teachers 'miss'.
- 4 I occasionally got into ..... at school for doing things I shouldn't do.
- 5 The teachers at my school were strict, and they ..... pupils who broke the rules.
- 6 My school had a really nice, relaxed .....

## 32.5 Over to you

Answer the questions about the education system in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you have state schools and private schools?
- 2 Do all children have nursery education?
- 3 When do children go to primary school and secondary school?
- 4 Do all schools have the same terms?
- 5 When can children leave school?
- 6 Do pupils normally have to wear a uniform, or can they wear what they want?
- 7 Are teachers usually quite strict?
- 8 Is the atmosphere quite relaxed in most schools?

## A

**How are they getting on?\***

This is what Nastya, an English teacher, thinks about some of her students.

“ Jade has a **wide vocabulary** [knows a lot of words] and speaks very **accurately** [without mistakes], but she needs to practise her speaking more in order to become more **fluent** [able to speak naturally without stopping]. ”

“ Angel is quite fluent, but his **accent** [the way he pronounces words] is not very good. In particular, he has problems with certain **consonants** [letters of the **alphabet** (a–z), which are not the **vowels** a, e, i, o, u]. ”

“ Jose has no problem **making himself understood** [saying things in a way people understand], but he needs to **increase** his vocabulary [make it bigger], because at the moment it’s quite **basic** [elementary; *syn simple*]. ”

“ Olga is always **willing to** [happy and ready to] **experiment** with language [try something new to see what it is like]. For that reason she sometimes **gets things wrong** [makes mistakes], but she learns from her mistakes and she’s making a lot of progress. ”

“ Andreas is a fantastic language learner. He **picks** things **up** [learns things without trying] very quickly, and he **has a good ear for language** [is good at hearing, repeating and understanding sounds and words]. ”

\*What progress are they making?



Nastya

## Common mistakes

We use adjectives with nouns, and adverbs with verbs.

He’s a **fluent** speaker. (NOT He’s a **fluently** speaker.) She speaks **accurately**. (NOT She speaks **accurate**.)

I need to speak English **well**. (NOT I need to speak English **good**.)

## B

**Examinations**

## Language help

You can **take** or **do** an exam (NOT **make** an exam). If you are successful and do well, you **pass**; if you are not successful and do badly, you **fail**. Before taking an exam, you **revise for** the exam. [study / prepare for the exam] Sometimes you can also **retake** an exam. [do it again]

“ My students are **taking** the Cambridge English: First **exam** in June, and for some of them it will be **hard work**<sup>1</sup>. I think Angel might fail, but he’s **doing his best**<sup>2</sup>, so with a bit of luck he might pass. I expect most of the others to pass. Andreas is a strong **candidate**<sup>3</sup>, and I’m sure he’ll get a good **grade** (*syn mark*). I think Jade and Olga will also **do well**.

At the moment I’m trying to **get through**<sup>4</sup> the coursebook so that we can do some **revision**<sup>5</sup>. I think the most important thing is to do some **exam preparation**<sup>6</sup>. Today I want the students to **do/write an essay**<sup>7</sup>. Most of them still find it difficult to write accurately, so I need to **work on** that with them. ”

<sup>1</sup> work that requires a lot of effort

<sup>5</sup> revise for the exam

<sup>2</sup> making as much effort as he can; *syn trying his best*

<sup>6</sup> getting ready for the exam

<sup>3</sup> someone who is taking an exam

<sup>7</sup> a short piece of writing about a particular subject

<sup>4</sup> finish

# Exercises

## 33.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 We *made / got* something wrong in the first question.
- 2 I had to *do / write* an essay.
- 3 My sister picks *up / out* languages very quickly.
- 4 I will have to *revise for / revise* my exam next week.
- 5 The students always *do / make* their best.
- 6 Tomas wants to *do / take* the exam in June.
- 7 Karin *failed / lost* the exam, but she can retake it next year.

## 33.2 Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

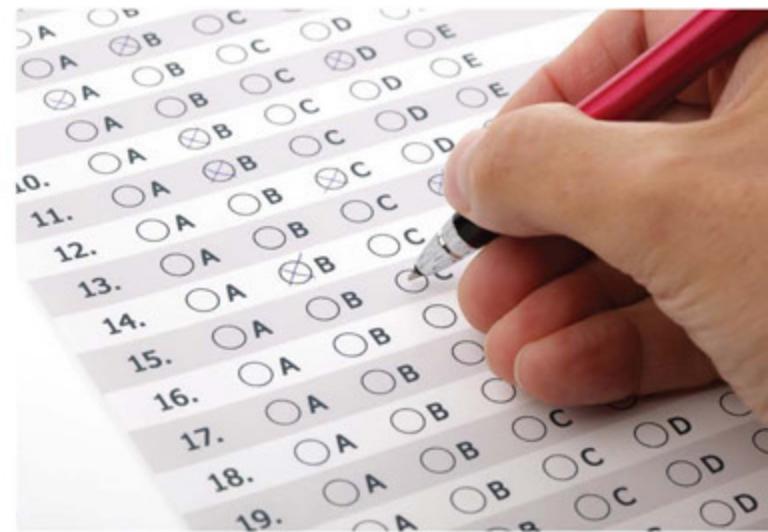
- 1 There are twenty-six letters in the a *phabet*.
- 2 A+ is the highest g ..... you can get.
- 3 There are over 100 c ..... taking the exam.
- 4 We had to write an e ..... for homework in not more than 200 words.
- 5 I need to w ..... on my grammar; it's not very good.
- 6 I need to i ..... my vocabulary; it's still very b .....
- 7 A and E are v ..... ; B, C and D are c .....
- 8 Studying for my exam is h ..... w ..... , but it will be worth the effort.
- 9 Our teacher was always w ..... to help us with our exam preparation.

## 33.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 Can you retake the exam?                   | Can you do <i>the exam again</i> ? |
| 2 They will need to revise for the exam.     | They will need to do some .....    |
| 3 I will work as hard as I can.              | I will do .....                    |
| 4 We need to prepare for the exam.           | We need to do some .....           |
| 5 I make mistakes.                           | I get .....                        |
| 6 I can listen and repeat things accurately. | I have a good .....                |

## 33.4 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Do you think Natasha will do well?  
B: Yes, I'm sure she'll *pass* the exam.
- 2 A: Is her pronunciation good?  
B: No, she has quite a strong .....
- 3 A: Can Elke speak naturally without stopping?  
B: Yes, she's quite .....
- 4 A: And does she make many mistakes?  
B: No, she's quite ..... when she speaks.
- 5 A: Does Victor know a lot of English?  
B: No, but he can make himself .....
- 6 A: Will you finish the book?  
B: Yeah, we should get ..... it.
- 7 A: Did Amy do ..... in her exam?  
B: Yes, she got 80%.



## 33.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

Do you think you ...

... can make yourself understood?

... have a strong accent?

... are quite accurate?

... are quite fluent?

... have a wide vocabulary?

... have a good ear for language?

... pick things up quickly?

... often experiment with new language?

## A

**Subjects**

You can **do/study** these subjects at university but not always at school.

**medicine** (to become a doctor)  
**engineering** (to become an engineer)  
**economics** (to become an **economist**)  
**business studies** (to become a **businessman/woman** and **go into business**)

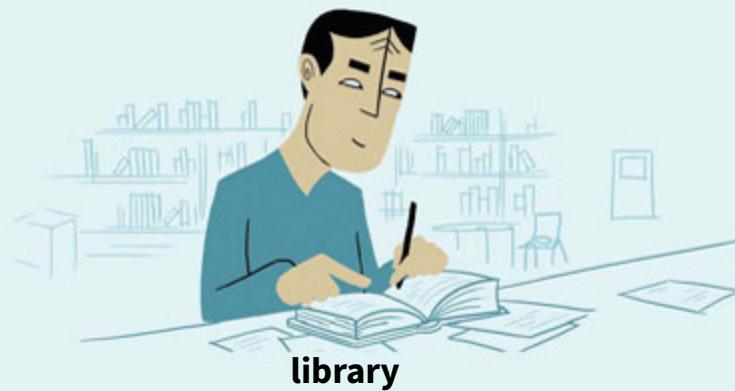
**law** (to become a lawyer)  
**architecture** (to become an **architect**)  
**psychology** (to become a **psychologist**)

## B

**Studying at university**

Some students go to university because they enjoy studying, others just want a **qualification**<sup>1</sup>. First, however, you have to get good **grades** in your final school exams to **get a place** at many universities. You can then **study for / do a degree**<sup>2</sup>. If you complete the course **successfully**, you get your **degree**<sup>3</sup> and receive a **certificate**<sup>4</sup>. In the UK, most degree courses **last**<sup>5</sup> three years, although some take longer, e.g. medicine or law.

Teachers at university are usually called **lecturers**, and most of the **teaching** is done through **lectures**<sup>6</sup>. The most senior lecturers have the title **Professor**. Students doing **arts** subjects, e.g. English or history, will spend time working in the **library** and writing **essays**<sup>7</sup>. Students doing **science** degrees, e.g. physics or chemistry, will probably spend a lot of their time working in a **laboratory (infml lab)**.



library



laboratory (lab)

<sup>1</sup> something that you get when you are successful in an exam

<sup>2</sup> do a course at university

<sup>3</sup> (also the word for) a university qualification

<sup>4</sup> a document that shows you have completed a course successfully

<sup>5</sup> continue for

<sup>6</sup> the lecturer talks and the students listen

<sup>7</sup> short pieces of writing on a particular subject

## Language help

noun	verb	adjective
qualification	qualify	qualified
success	succeed (in sth / in doing sth)	(un)successful

## C

**Postgraduate degrees**

When students are doing their first degree, they are called **undergraduates**. When they complete their degree, they are **graduates**. Some graduates **go on to do** [do something in the future] a Master's, e.g. in the UK an MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science). These are called **postgraduate degrees**. The longest one is a PhD (Doctor of Philosophy) where students **do research** [make a detailed study of one particular subject] for at least three years.

# Exercises

## **34.1 Complete the sentences.**

- 1 To become a psychologist you need to study *psychology* .....
  - 2 To become an engineer you need to study .....
  - 3 To become a doctor you need to study .....
  - 4 To become an economist you need to study .....
  - 5 To become a lawyer you need to study .....
  - 6 To become an architect you need to study .....

## **34.2 Put the sentences in the correct order.**

- I did a degree course.
  - I passed with good grades.
  - I got a Master's.
  - I did a postgraduate course.
  - I did my final exams at school.
  - I became an undergraduate.
  - I got a place at university.
  - I got a degree in business studies.



### **34.3 Are the sentences about English universities true or false? If a sentence is false, correct it.**

- 1 The teachers are all called professors. *False. Most teachers are called lecturers.*

2 Anyone can go to university if they want to.

3 Some students go to university just to get a qualification.

4 Most university degree courses in the UK last two years.

5 Students go to lectures at university.

6 If you are unsuccessful, you get a degree.

7 Students studying for their first degree are called graduates.

8 Science students have to write a lot of essays.

9 A PhD is a postgraduate degree.

10 If you study arts subjects, you work in a laboratory.

## 34.4 Complete the text.

Stephen got very good <sup>1</sup> ..... in his final school exams, and he went to university and got a <sup>2</sup> ..... in economics. He then <sup>3</sup> ..... to do an MSc. The course <sup>4</sup> ..... a year, and at the end of it, he had an offer to go <sup>5</sup> ..... business with a friend. After two years though, he decided to go back to university to do <sup>6</sup> ..... for a PhD. He knows it will be three years' work without much money, but he loves studying, and never went to university just for a <sup>7</sup> ..... that would get him a good job earning a lot of money.

### **34.5 Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

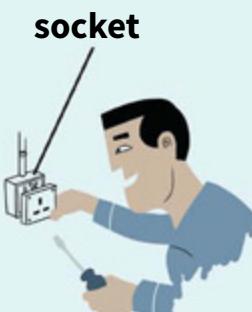
- 1 Do you need to pass exams before you can go to university in your country?
  - 2 How long do most degree courses last?
  - 3 In England the first degree is called a BA or BSc. What are they called in your country?
  - 4 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
  - 5 Do you get a certificate when you finish your degree?

## A

## Working with your hands

**builder**

[builds or repairs homes]

**carpenter**[makes things using **wood**]**plumber**[installs and **repairs** water pipes, etc.]**electrician**[installs and **repairs** electrical things, e.g. lights]**mechanic**[**repairs** cars when there is a problem]

## Language help

When something is damaged or broken, we often use **repair** or **fix**.

*Dad repaired/fixed the window for me.*      *I need someone to fix/repair the computer.*

With small pieces of equipment we can also use **mend**; with clothes we often use mend.

*Could you fix/repair/mend my watch?*      *I've mended your trousers for you.*

## B

## Professions\*

job	what he/she does
<b>architect</b>	<b>designs</b> buildings
<b>lawyer</b>	<b>represents</b> people with legal problems
<b>engineer</b>	<b>plans</b> the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
<b>accountant</b>	controls the financial situation of people and companies
<b>university lecturer</b>	teaches in a university, e.g. gives <b>lectures</b>

\* jobs that need a lot of training and/or education

## C

## The medical profession

These people **treat** people or animals. [give medicine or medical help]

**GPs** [general practitioners: doctors who don't work in a hospital], **dentists** [people who look after your teeth] and **vets** [animal doctors] all work in a place called a **surgery**. In hospital there are **nurses** who look after people, and **surgeons** who **operate on** people. [open the body to remove or repair a part that is damaged]

## D

## The armed forces and the emergency services

My son **joined** the army when he was 18. [became a member of]

**gun****soldier**  
(in the **army**)**sailor**  
(in the **navy**)**pilot**  
(in the **air force**)**police officer**  
(in the **police force**)**fireman/**  
**firefighter** (in the **fire brigade**)

# Exercises

## 35.1 Match the job on the left with something the person uses on the right.

- |              |                            |           |
|--------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| 1 lecturer   | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a a gun   |
| 2 plumber    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b wood    |
| 3 accountant | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c books   |
| 4 builder    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d pipes   |
| 5 soldier    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e bricks  |
| 6 carpenter  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f numbers |

## 35.2 Write down one job from the opposite page that would be difficult for the person in 2–6, and three jobs that would be difficult for the person in 7–9.

- 1 Someone who didn't go to university.
- 2 Someone who is always sick on a boat.
- 3 Someone who is not interested in cars.
- 4 Someone who is afraid of dogs.
- 5 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
- 6 Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths.
- 7 Someone who isn't good at working with their hands.
- 8 Someone who cannot see very well.
- 9 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.

*dentist* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

..... .....

..... .....

..... .....

## 35.3 Test your knowledge. Can you write down what these people do without looking at the opposite page?

- 1 A university lecturer *teaches university students*.
- 2 A vet .....
- 3 An architect .....
- 4 An electrician .....
- 5 A lawyer .....
- 6 A surgeon .....
- 7 A mechanic .....
- 8 A dentist .....
- 9 An engineer .....

## 35.4 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: She's a police officer.  
B: *Really? When did she join the police force?* .....
- 2 A: He's a sailor.  
B: .....
- 3 A: He's a fighter pilot.  
B: .....
- 4 A: She's a soldier.  
B: .....
- 5 A: He's a firefighter.  
B: .....

## 35.5

### Over to you

Write a list of friends, relatives or neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

## A

**What do you do?**

People can ask what job you do in different ways; you can answer in different ways.



## B

**What does that involve?\***

James and Emma are business **consultants** [people who help others in a particular area]. They **advise** people who want to **set up** [start] a business, especially in health and fitness. James **deals with** the marketing [does the work in marketing; *syn handle*], while Emma is **responsible for** [in control of; *syn in charge of*] **products** [things that people make/produce] such as towels, equipment, beauty products, etc.

**Common mistakes**

I have a lot of work to do. (NOT I have a lot of **works** to do.)

She **advises** me. (NOT She **advice**s me.) BUT She gives me **advice**. (NOT She gives me **advise**.)

My job involves a lot of travel. OR My job involves travelling. (NOT My job involves **to travel**.)

Amy is a manager in a veterinary surgery. She **runs** [organises or controls] the **day-to-day** [happening every day] business of the surgery and is in charge of a small team: three receptionists, an accounts manager and a secretary. Her work involves a lot of **admin** [short for administration] such as buying food, medicine and equipment; she also handles any **complaints** that customers make. [when customers **complain** / say that something is wrong or is not satisfactory]

\* What do you have to do exactly?

## C

**Pay**

Most workers **are paid** [receive money] every month; this is called a **salary**. Your **income** is the total amount of money you receive in a year. This might be money from one job; it might be money from two jobs. We can express this in different ways:

My **income** is about £25,000. OR I **earn/make** about £25,000 **a year** [every year].

Some of that income you can keep, but some goes to the government; in the UK this is called **income tax**, e.g. *I lose 20% of my income in income tax*.

**Language help**

A **salary** is money paid to professional people, e.g. doctors or teachers, and to office workers for the work they do, and is usually paid into a person's bank account every month. **Wages** are usually paid for each hour/day/week of work to people who do more physical jobs, e.g. building or cleaning.

## D

**Conditions\***

Most people work **fixed** hours [always the same], e.g. 9 am to 5.30 pm. We often call this a **nine-to-five** job. Other people have to **do/work overtime** [work extra hours]. Some people get paid for overtime; others don't. Some people have good working conditions, e.g. nice offices, paid holidays, extra time **off** [not at work] for a new mother and father when a baby is born, etc. There is also a **minimum wage** [an amount of money workers receive, and employers cannot pay less than this].

\* the situation in which people work or live

# Exercises

## 36.1 Tick (✓) the words which are directly connected with **money**.

pay ✓ earn handle wages  
salary income consult product

## 36.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |             |                            |                         |
|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 set up    | <input type="checkbox"/> b | a clients               |
| 2 in charge | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b a company             |
| 3 deal      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c overtime              |
| 4 earn      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d with complaints       |
| 5 do        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e of a small department |
| 6 advise    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f money                 |

## 36.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 What do you do?
- 2 I'm a marketing assistant.
- 3 I'm employed by the government.
- 4 I earn £34,000 a year from my two jobs.
- 5 What do you have to do exactly?
- 6 I'm responsible for the reception area.
- 7 What's your job?
- 8 I have to read government reports.
- 9 I advise clients.
- 10 I complained about the service.

- What's *your job*? .....  
I work .....  
I work .....  
My .....  
What does your job .....  
I'm in .....  
What do you do for .....  
My job involves .....  
I give .....  
I made .....

## 36.4 Complete the texts. Put one word in each gap.

Alexander Carpenter works <sup>1</sup> *in* ..... sales, and he's a regional manager. He <sup>2</sup> ..... the north-west region and he's <sup>3</sup> ..... for a small team of five other sales people. His job <sup>4</sup> ..... a lot of travelling within the region, and he's in contact with his team on a day-to- <sup>5</sup> ..... basis. It's not a nine-to- <sup>6</sup> ..... job: Alexander has to do a lot of <sup>7</sup> ..... . Fortunately he can <sup>8</sup> ..... a lot more money by doing this, and his working <sup>9</sup> ..... are quite good. After income <sup>10</sup> ..... he makes £60,000 <sup>11</sup> ..... year. Recently his wife had a baby, but the company gave him extra time <sup>12</sup> ..... to be with her after the birth.

Kelly Bradbury is a financial adviser for a bank. She specialises in mortgages, which means that she <sup>13</sup> ..... people who want to buy a flat or a house. At the moment Kelly spends a lot of her time <sup>14</sup> ..... with young people who are trying to buy a property for the first time, which is not easy. She works <sup>15</sup> ..... hours – 9 am to 5 pm – and she doesn't have to <sup>16</sup> ..... overtime.

## 36.5 Over to you

Answer the questions about working conditions in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
- 2 How much income tax do most people pay? (e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn)
- 3 Do male and female workers normally get time off if they have a baby? If so, how much?
- 4 Is there a minimum wage? If so, do you know what it is?

## A

**Getting a job\***

“When I left school, I **applied for**<sup>1</sup> jobs in different companies, and finally, after sending out lots of **CVs**<sup>2</sup> and having some **interviews**<sup>3</sup>, a small company **employed** me<sup>4</sup>. I didn’t earn a lot, but the company gave me some **training**<sup>5</sup>, which was good.”

\* finding a job

<sup>1</sup> wrote a letter of **application** for

<sup>2</sup> a document which describes your education and the jobs you have done

<sup>3</sup> a meeting where someone asks you questions to see if you are suitable for a job

<sup>4</sup> gave me a job

<sup>5</sup> help and advice to learn how to do a job or activity

**Common mistakes**

I had **some training**. (NOT I had a **training**.) You can also **go on / do a training course** [a period of organised help and advice, often in a different place] (NOT **formation** or **stage**).

## B

**Promotion**

“I worked hard and soon I was **promoted** [given a better job with more responsibility]. They also gave me a good **pay rise** [more money]. It was really good **experience** [knowledge you get from doing something such as a job], and when my boss left the company a few years later, they gave me an important **promotion** [a move to a higher job in the company].”

## C

**Resignation\***

“By my mid-twenties, I was getting a bit bored, and decided I wanted to work **abroad** [in another country]. So, I **quit my job** [told the company I was leaving; syn **resign**] and started looking for jobs in the UK. After a couple of months I got a job in London. At first I liked it, but ...”

\* when you say officially you are leaving a job

## D

**Unemployment\***

“After six months, I got fed up with the job – and I think I was enjoying myself too much to work very hard. Finally, the company **sacked** me [told me to leave the company; syn **gave me the sack**], and after that I was **unemployed** [without a job; syn **out of work**] for two months. Finally I got a **part-time** job [working only part of the day or week; opp **full-time** job] in the kitchen of a restaurant.”

\* when people do not have a job

**Common mistakes**

Claudio didn’t **have a job**. (NOT He didn’t have a **work**.)

## E

**Success and retirement\***

Claudio

“I loved the restaurant. I learned how to cook, and two years later I became manager. Three years after that I opened my **own** restaurant. [belonging to me / it was my restaurant] It was very **successful** [it did well and made money], and twenty years later, I **owned** five restaurants, and I was the **owner** of two hotels. I believe anyone can **succeed** [be successful] if they work hard enough – and have a little bit of luck. Last year, aged sixty, I **retired** and went back to Italy.”

\* the time when people stop work, often at 60 or 65

# Exercises

## 37.1 Match the answers on the right with the questions on the left.

- |                                 |                            |   |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1 Why did they sack him?        | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a Because he was 65.                                |
| 2 Why did they promote him?     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b Because he needed more training.                  |
| 3 Why did he apply for the job? | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c Because he was late for work every day.           |
| 4 Why did he retire?            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d Because he was out of work.                       |
| 5 Why did he quit his job?      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e Because he was the best person in the department. |
| 6 Why did he go on the course?  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f Because he didn't like his boss.                  |

## 37.2 Complete the table.

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	
promote		
retire		
resign		
	success	
own		

## 37.3 Complete the sentences.

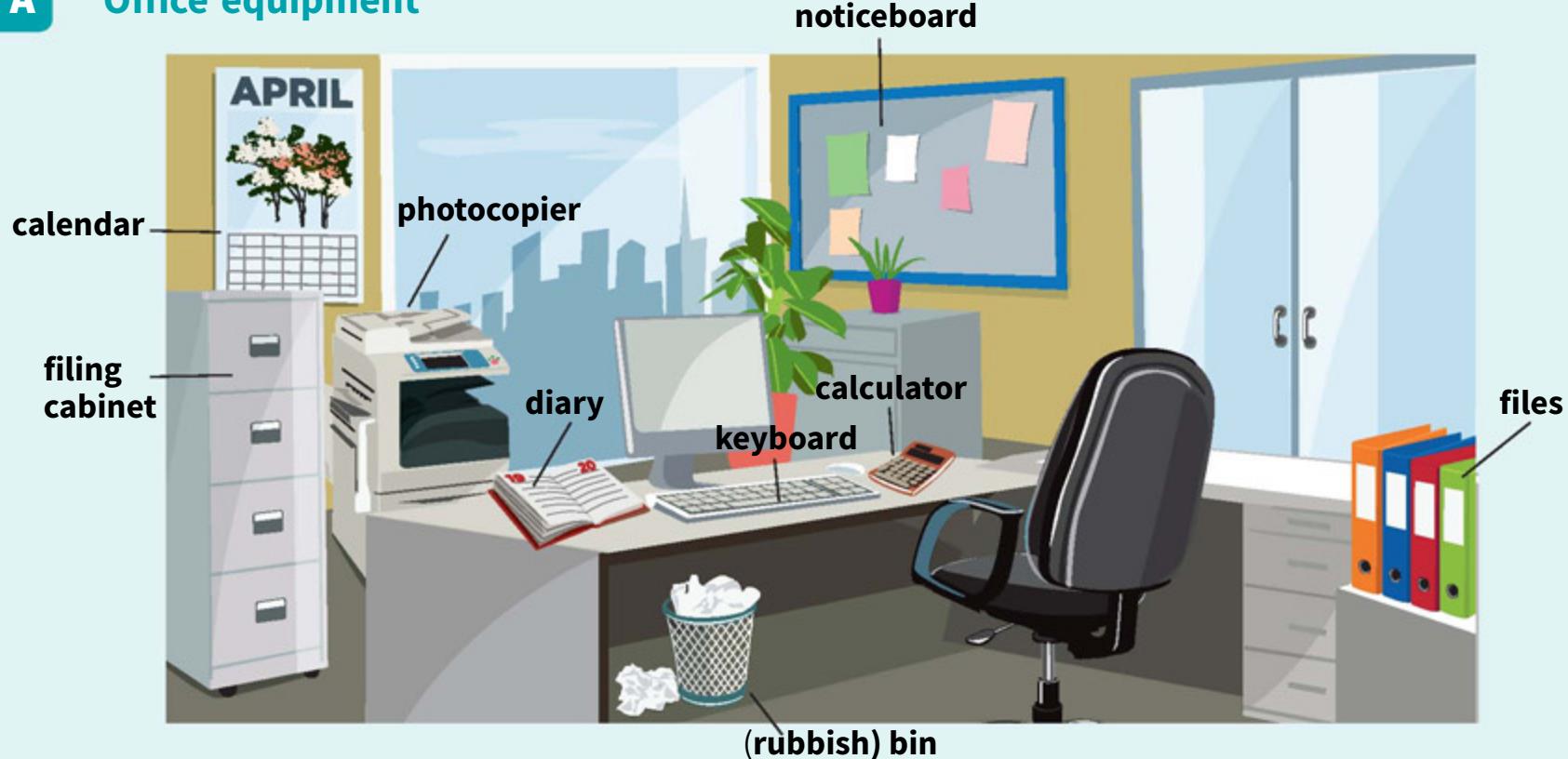
- 1 Lucy is hoping to get ..... a job in a travel agency when she leaves school.
- 2 I decided to work ..... to see what life was like in another country.
- 3 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work .....
- 4 She ..... her job when her boss refused to give her a pay .....
- 5 I didn't earn much money in the job, but it was still good ..... because the company sent me on several training .....
- 6 After they sacked me, I was out of ..... for six months.
- 7 It's not easy to ..... in business; you need ability and luck.
- 8 I think you should definitely ..... for that job.
- 9 Ivan was terrible as a tour guide; that's why they gave him the .....
- 10 I've worked for other people most of my life, but I'd really like to run my ..... company.
- 11 I used to ..... a company but it wasn't a ..... ; I lost a lot of money.
- 12 If she's interested in that job, she'll have to write a letter of .....

## 37.4

### Over to you

If you have a job, answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Have you been promoted since you started working at your present company?
- 2 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
- 3 Have you been on many training courses since you started work?
- 4 Would you like to go on more training courses in the future?
- 5 Have you ever resigned from a job, or been given the sack?

**A** Office equipment**B** Office work

Josh works for a company which **produces**<sup>1</sup> furniture. He doesn't work in the factory where the furniture is produced, but in the offices across the road.

His job **involves**<sup>2</sup> quite a lot of **paperwork**<sup>3</sup>. He **types**<sup>4</sup> letters to different companies, sends out **invoices**<sup>5</sup> to customers and sends emails.

He also has to **arrange**<sup>6</sup> visits to other companies, **make appointments**<sup>7</sup> for his boss, and sometimes he **shows** visitors **round** the factory. Occasionally he has to **attend**<sup>8</sup> meetings with his boss, but one of Josh's most important tasks is to **organise**<sup>9</sup> the office party every year.

<sup>1</sup> makes

<sup>6</sup> plan and prepare

<sup>2</sup> includes doing

<sup>7</sup> arrange a time when you meet someone

<sup>3</sup> work that uses paper, e.g. reports, forms

<sup>8</sup> go to; *fml*

<sup>4</sup> writes using a keyboard

<sup>9</sup> plan and arrange

<sup>5</sup> documents showing how much the customer has to pay

## Language help

verb	noun
arrange	<b>arrangement</b>
organise	<b>organisation</b>

verb	noun
attend	<b>attendance</b>
produce	<b>production</b>

**C**

## Office problems

Josh is having a bad day today. The photocopier has **broken down**<sup>1</sup>, the computer **isn't working** and the printer has **run out of**<sup>2</sup> paper. On top of that, two of his **colleagues**<sup>3</sup> are **absent**<sup>4</sup>, just when there is **loads of**<sup>5</sup> work to do.

<sup>1</sup> stopped working

<sup>4</sup> not in the office; *syn off*

<sup>2</sup> has no more

<sup>5</sup> lots of; *infml*

<sup>3</sup> people you work with

# Exercises

## 38.1 Finish the noun in each sentence.

- 1 I've just got myself a new *key* ..... *board* .....
- 2 I threw all that stuff in the *rubbish* .....
- 3 He put most of the stuff in the *filing* .....
- 4 It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general *paper* .....
- 5 I told him to put the details on the *notice* .....

## 38.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 The place where you throw away paper you don't want. *bin* .....
- 2 People you work with. .....
- 3 Something you put on a wall which tells you the date. .....
- 4 A book where you write down appointments and things you have to do. .....
- 5 A piece of paper which shows a customer what they have bought and what they must pay.  
.....
- 6 An electronic device that helps you to add up numbers and do maths. .....
- 7 An informal word meaning 'lots'. .....

## 38.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: What does the company do?  
B: It *produces* ..... electronic equipment.
- 2 A: I've ..... to see the bank manager on Friday, but I think I'm going to be away.  
B: OK. Do you want me to make another ..... for you?  
A: Yes, please. That would be great. Next Thursday or Friday, if possible.
- 3 A: Why can't we use the printer?  
B: It's ..... of ink.
- 4 A: Do you have to ..... meetings?  
B: Yes, sometimes, if my boss is away and he can't go.
- 5 A: We've got some visitors coming tomorrow.  
B: Right. Would you like me to ..... them ..... the factory?
- 6 A: What does your work ..... ?  
B: Basically, I have to ..... people's travel arrangements and hotel accommodation.

## 38.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 My boss isn't here today. OFF          | My boss <i>is off today</i> . ....  |
| 2 The photocopier is broken. WORK        | The photocopier .....<br>We .....<br>I have to .....<br>We .....<br>Why ..... |
| 3 We're very busy today. LOADS           |   |
| 4 I have to go to a meeting. ATTEND      |   |
| 5 We don't have any more paper. RUN OUT  |   |
| 6 Why isn't he here this morning? ABSENT |   |

## 38.5 Over to you

Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you? If you haven't got a job, answer for someone you know.

- |                         |                    |                                  |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| I do lots of paperwork. | I attend meetings. | I send loads of emails.          |
| I organise events.      | I type letters.    | I show people round.             |
| I use a photocopier.    | I send invoices.   | I repair things that break down. |

## A

**A successful business**

This is the story of a company that has **achieved a great deal** [a lot] in a short period of time.

**Language help**

If you **achieve** something, you have been successful in something that needed a lot of work and effort. The noun is **achievement**, e.g. *Writing a book has been my greatest achievement.*



LOCAL BUSINESS SPOTLIGHT &gt;

**DENHAM FARM BAKERY**

**DENHAM FARM BAKERY**<sup>1</sup> is a family business, with three different **generations** (father, son and granddaughter) of the family **currently**<sup>2</sup> working with a team of 90 **employees**. The company **was set up**<sup>3</sup> in 1991 with the **aim**<sup>4</sup> of producing a **variety**<sup>5</sup> of bread of the highest **quality**<sup>6</sup>. The Denham family saw there was a **growing demand**<sup>7</sup> for organic products in the 1990s, and they soon became **experts**<sup>8</sup> in the field of organic bread-making.

The company is **run**<sup>9</sup> from a factory in Ilminster, where the bread is baked **daily**<sup>10</sup> and then **delivered**<sup>11</sup> to shops across the south-west of England. The **firm**<sup>12</sup> has **expanded**<sup>13</sup> a great deal in the last 20 years, but it still remains a family business.

<sup>1</sup> place where bread and cakes are made or sold

<sup>8</sup> people with skill/knowledge in something

<sup>2</sup> now, at the moment (NOT actually)

<sup>9</sup> organised and controlled

<sup>3</sup> started (used about a company or organisation)

<sup>10</sup> every day

<sup>4</sup> a plan of what you hope to achieve

<sup>11</sup> taken (to shops)

<sup>5</sup> different types

<sup>12</sup> company or business

<sup>6</sup> how good or bad something is

<sup>13</sup> become bigger

<sup>7</sup> when more people want to buy something

## B

**A view of a company**

Morgan & Stenson are a firm of **accountants**<sup>1</sup>. They were **formerly**<sup>2</sup> Stenson & Son, but were **taken over**<sup>3</sup> by JS Morgan five years ago. James Morgan **took up the position**<sup>4</sup> of senior partner, and the company changed its name to Morgan & Stenson. The **headquarters**<sup>5</sup> of the firm are in Newcastle, but they have five other **branches**<sup>6</sup> in different parts of the north-east of England.

James Morgan is a **former** owner of a football club, with many **contacts**<sup>7</sup> in the football world, so many of his **clients**<sup>8</sup> are footballers.

Last year the company **attracted** a lot of **attention**<sup>9</sup> when it became the first firm of accountants to advertise on local TV and radio. At the time, James Morgan said it was his **ambition**<sup>10</sup> to change the **image**<sup>11</sup> that people have of accountants.

<sup>1</sup> people who control a person or company's money

<sup>7</sup> people you know

<sup>2</sup> in the past but not now

<sup>8</sup> people who pay someone for a service

<sup>3</sup> JS Morgan got control of Stenson & Son

<sup>9</sup> caused people to notice it

<sup>4</sup> started in the job

<sup>10</sup> something someone wants to achieve

<sup>5</sup> the place where the main office is

<sup>11</sup> the way that people think of them

<sup>6</sup> offices that are part of the company

**Language help**

We usually talk about an **ex-wife/boyfriend**, etc., but a **former** president/career/banker, etc. Shops and organisations have **customers**; lawyers, accountants, etc. have **clients**. We **take up** a job or activity, but we **set up** a company.

# Exercises

## 39.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to people.

headquarters      employee ✓      branches      expert      bakery  
accountant      quality      client      contacts      variety

## 39.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- 1 The food is delivered every day. daily.....
- 2 There is a real need for food of this quality. ....
- 3 Our plan is to open another branch. ....
- 4 The company is doing well. ....
- 5 We have 25 workers. ....
- 6 I started the business ten years ago. ....
- 7 Their main offices are in Sheffield. ....
- 8 He's hoping for a position in the company. ....
- 9 The firm is getting bigger. ....
- 10 The company made a lot of money last year. ....

## 39.3 Choose the best word to complete the sentences.

- 1 They're experts in / on farming.
- 2 When did you set up / take up tennis?
- 3 Her law firm has many famous clients / customers.
- 4 She's actually my ex- / former wife; we got divorced last year.
- 5 When did they set up / take up the company?
- 6 The shop assistant was serving a client / customer.
- 7 Marcel used to work here, but he's currently / actually working abroad.
- 8 Are they planning to take up / take over the company?
- 9 George Bush is a former / an ex- president of America.

## 39.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 He makes different cakes. VARIETY
- 2 They were very successful. ACHIEVE
- 3 I know a lot of people in banking. CONTACTS
- 4 They used to be called BMG. FORMERLY
- 5 I've always wanted to fly a plane. AMBITION
- 6 She has a great knowledge of finance. EXPERT
- 7 People noticed the adverts. ATTRACT

He makes a variety of cakes.  
They .....  
I .....  
They .....  
It's .....  
She .....  
The adverts .....

## 39.5 Complete the text.

Danielle Spinks set up her motorbike courier service (DCS) in 1979. If you wanted to send documents across London, Danielle promised to <sup>1</sup> deliver them in less than one hour. It was only a small <sup>2</sup>  , but DCS <sup>3</sup>   immediate success, so Danielle set up another <sup>4</sup>   of the company in Manchester, which was <sup>5</sup>   by her brother, Darren. The business soon <sup>6</sup>   rapidly, and it is now Danielle's <sup>7</sup>   to have a branch of her courier service in every major city in England.

## A

**Rise and fall**

These verbs describe **trends** [movements] in **sales** [how much you sell], prices, etc.

When sales or prices **rise / go up / increase**, they can do it in different ways:

They can rise **slightly** [a bit]. →

They can rise **gradually** [slowly over a long period]. →

They can rise **sharply** [quickly and by a large amount]. ↑

The opposite can also happen. Prices or sales can **fall / go down / decrease** slightly, gradually or sharply. If prices don't rise or fall, they **stay the same**. →

We use certain prepositions to say by how much something rises or falls.

The price has risen **by** 10 pence. Sales fell **from** 8,000 units **to** 6,500 units.

**Rise/increase** and **fall/decrease** can also be used as nouns, with certain prepositions.

There's been a **gradual rise in** prices. We've seen a **sharp fall in** sales.

Profits were £5 million, which is a **decrease of** 10%.

**Language help**

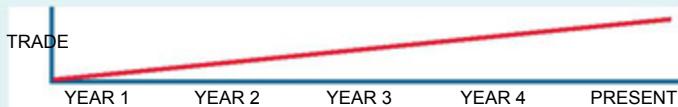
**Profit** is the money you receive from your business after you have paid all your costs (*opp loss*).

*Last year the company made a profit of €2 million but this year they could make a loss.*

## B

**Financial language**

With the **economy**<sup>1</sup> now improving, banks are reporting positive **signs**<sup>2</sup> that the number of **loans**<sup>3</sup> is increasing.



Figures<sup>8</sup> published yesterday show that **trade**<sup>9</sup> between the two countries has now risen for the fifth year **in a row**<sup>10</sup>.

With **inflation**<sup>4</sup> expected to rise, there are growing fears<sup>5</sup> that **interest rates**<sup>6</sup> could go up by as much as **2%**<sup>7</sup> next year.

EUROPE

**CURRENCY**

Although the **value**<sup>11</sup> of the pound fell slightly against the dollar yesterday, the news that sales rose in the last **quarter**<sup>12</sup> has raised<sup>13</sup> hopes that we may be coming out of **recession**<sup>14</sup>.

→ [Read full story](#)

<sup>1</sup>the system by which a country's trade, industry and money are organised

<sup>2</sup>something which shows something is happening

<sup>3</sup>money that you borrow

<sup>4</sup>the rate at which prices increase

<sup>5</sup>increasing worries

<sup>6</sup>(see language help below)

<sup>7</sup>this is spoken as *two per cent*

<sup>8</sup>an amount shown in numbers, e.g. 500

<sup>9</sup>buying and selling between countries

<sup>10</sup>one after another with no break

<sup>11</sup>the money that something can be sold for

<sup>12</sup>(in business) a period of three months

<sup>13</sup>increased; you can also **raise prices**

<sup>14</sup>a time when the economy is not successful

**Language help**

**Interest** is what the bank **charges** you [asks you to pay] when you borrow money from them, and the **interest rate** is how much you must pay as a **percentage**, e.g. **5%, 8%**, etc. So, if you borrow £100 for a year and the interest rate is 15% a year, you'll have to **pay back** £115.

# Exercises

## 40.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 We made a profit *of / for* six million euros.
- 2 Sales rose *to / by* 10% last year.
- 3 The value of the shares fell *from / for* 240 pence to 225 pence.
- 4 There was a fall *of / from* 5% in the value of the shares.
- 5 There has been a gradual rise *with / in* profits.
- 6 The company made a loss two years *on / in* a row.
- 7 What's the current value *of / in* the euro?

## 40.2 Which words or phrases are being defined?

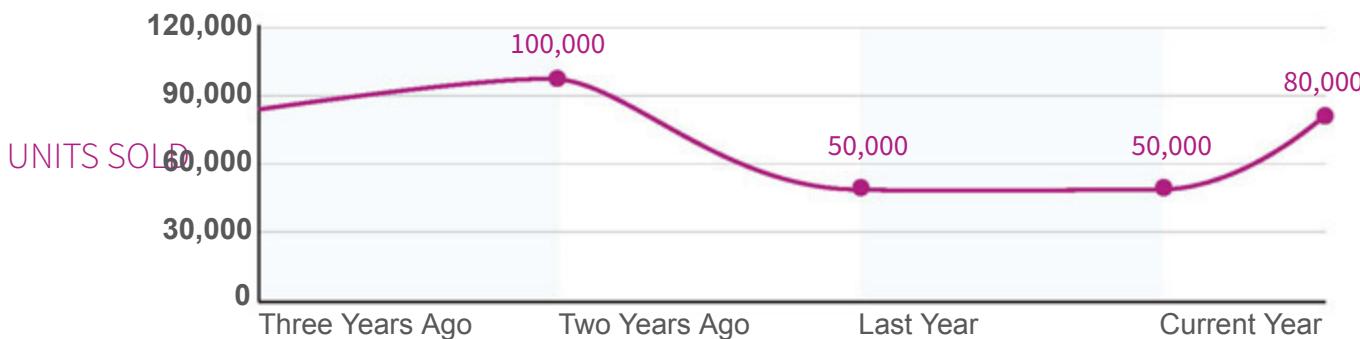
- 1 The amount of money that something can be sold for. ..... *value* .....
- 2 Money you borrow from a bank for your business. .....
- 3 What the bank charges you when you borrow money. .....
- 4 The rate at which prices increase. .....
- 5 The money that a company receives for its goods after paying all the costs. .....
- 6 Buying and selling goods and services between countries. .....
- 7 A movement in sales, prices, etc. over a period of time. .....

## 40.3 Complete the two short texts, then answer each of the two questions.

- 1 If you get a bank ..... of €500 for one year and the bank ..... you 20% ..... , how much will you have to ..... to the bank at the end of the year? .....
- 2 If you take out a similar amount from another bank, and the interest ..... is 15 ..... , how much will you ..... at the end of the year? .....

## 40.4 Look at the graph and complete the text.

The <sup>1</sup> *graph* ..... shows sales <sup>2</sup> ..... for the last three and a half years. Three years ago sales <sup>3</sup> ..... slightly and reached 100,000 units by the end of the year. The company <sup>4</sup> ..... a profit of almost £500,000 and decided to <sup>5</sup> ..... the price from £8.95 to £10.25. It had an immediate effect: there was a <sup>6</sup> ..... <sup>7</sup> ..... in sales over the year. It was bad news, and the company made a <sup>8</sup> ..... . And in the next year sales <sup>9</sup> ..... the same. However, in the first two <sup>10</sup> ..... of this year, they have <sup>11</sup> ..... <sup>12</sup> ..... for the first time in many years.



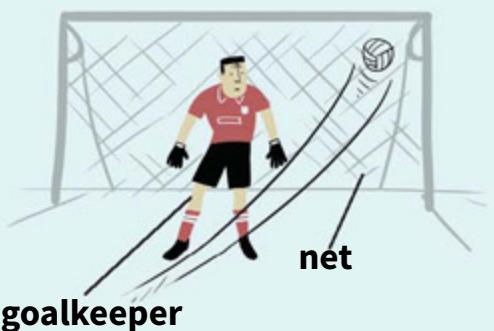
## 40.5 Over to you

Can you answer these questions about your own country?

- 1 What is the inflation rate at the moment?
- 2 If you borrow money from the bank, what is the approximate interest rate you will be charged?
- 3 Do you think the economy is doing well or badly?
- 4 When was the last time your country was in recession?
- 5 What is the value of your currency against the dollar?

## A

## Sports



swimming costume  
stick

sport	person	verb(s)	place
athletics	athlete	run, jump, throw, etc.	track (in a stadium)
motor racing	racing driver	drive/race	track
swimming	swimmer	swim/race	pool
boxing	boxer	box/fight	boxing ring
skiing	skier	ski	ski slopes
football	footballer	play	pitch (in a stadium)
ice hockey	ice hockey player	play	ice hockey rink
golf	golfer	play	golf course
basketball	basketball player	play	basketball court
sailing	sailor	sail	on the sea or a lake

## Language help

We **play** sports such as football, ice hockey, tennis, golf and basketball.

I **play football** in the winter. I **play basketball** twice a week.

We use **go** with other sports and activities, especially those ending in **-ing**.

I **go swimming** in the lake during summer. We often **go rock climbing** in the mountains.

We use **do** with **a lot of / a bit of + -ing**.

I **did a bit of sailing** in the holidays. I don't **do a lot of running** these days.

## B

## Leisure activities\*

tent



camping



rock climbing



jogging



yoga



going to the gym

We often **go camping** in the summer, and we usually **do a bit of rock climbing** as well.

My best friend **does a lot of yoga**. She **works out** in the gym two or three times a week as well.

My brother enjoys jogging, and it **keeps him fit** [helps his body to stay in good condition].

My mum does a bit of jogging as well – just **for fun** [because she enjoys it; syn **for pleasure**].

I'm afraid I don't **do** any **exercise** at all.

\* activities in your free time

# Exercises

## 41.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

swimming golfer court track jump pitch net  
motor racing stick basketball athlete box skis race  
goalkeeper racing driver sail rink skiing swimming costume

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
<i>swimming</i>				

## 41.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- 1 We play football in the winter at my school.
- 2 Do you ..... much exercise?
- 3 I ..... basketball in the summer and winter.
- 4 We always ..... in the winter, as long as there is enough snow.
- 5 I ..... a bit of yoga when I was younger.
- 6 We used to ..... camping in the mountains.
- 7 I ..... a lot of swimming in the summer.
- 8 If you want to ..... fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.
- 9 I used to ..... in the gym, but I'm getting a bit old for that now.

## 41.3 What is the sport and who is the person?



- 1 skiing .....  
skier .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

## 41.4 Complete the last word in each sentence.

- 1 Do you know the size of a boxing .....?
- 2 I used to play ice ..... .
- 3 We played golf in Scotland, where they have some fantastic golf ..... .
- 4 My dad plays golf. He's not a serious golfer; he just plays for ..... .
- 5 If the girls go swimming, they must remember to take their swimming ..... .
- 6 We watch a lot of motor ..... .
- 7 I love swimming, and it helps to keep me ..... .
- 8 My sister enjoys rock ..... .
- 9 You can't go camping unless you have a ..... .
- 10 Running is good exercise, so four or five times a week I go ..... .

## 41.5

Over to you

Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What sport or leisure activities do you do? Why do you do it/them?
- 2 What sport do you watch, and where?

## A

**Winning and losing**

In football, you can talk about the **score** [the number of goals a team has] like this:

Spain played Poland and they **won** the game.

= Poland **lost** the game.

Spain **won** 2–0 (spoken as *two nil*).

= Poland **lost** 2–0.

Spain **beat** Poland (2–0). (NOT Spain **won** Poland.)

= Poland **lost** (2–0) **to** Spain.

Spain **defeated** Poland (2–0).

= Poland **were defeated** (2–0) **by** Spain.

Spain and Italy **drew** 1–1 (spoken as *one all*) OR It was a 1–1 **draw between** Spain and Italy.

## Language help

The **score** at the end of a game is also the **result**.

*The final score/result was 2–0. The score at half-time was 1–0. (NOT The result at half-time was 1–0.)*

## B

**Competitions**

A **competition** is an organised event in which people try to win something by being the best, the fastest, etc. **Individuals**, such as tennis players Serena Williams or Rafael Nadal, and **teams** such as Manchester United, **take part in** [join with others in] different types of competition. Tennis players and golfers enter **tournaments** such as the French Open; football and ice hockey teams play in **league** competitions, where they **play against** different teams. Many teams also play in **cup** competitions (similar to tournaments), e.g. the FA Cup or the World Cup, which ends with two teams playing against each other in a **final**. The **winners** (opp the **losers**) are the **champions**, e.g. Germany became World Cup champions in 2014, and Philipp Lahm received the cup as **captain** of the winning team.

## C

**Reporting sports events**

## Language help

**Superb, incredible** and **outstanding** can describe something or someone that is very good and of a very high quality, e.g. Pelé was a **superb** footballer.

# Exercises

## 42.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 win / ..... / .....<br>2 lose / ..... / .....<br>3 beat / ..... / ..... | 4 draw / ..... / .....<br>5 break / ..... / .....<br>6 give up / ..... / ..... |
|---|--|

## 42.2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

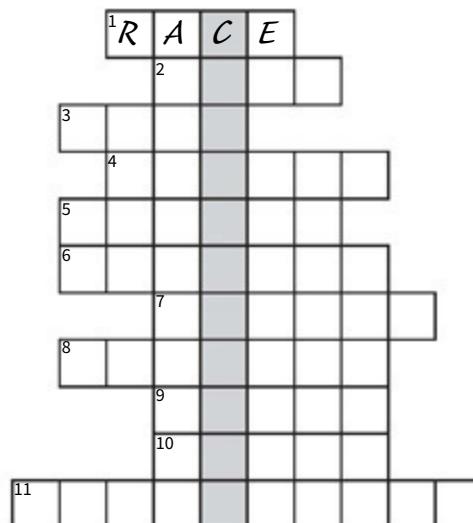
- 1 It was a fantastic *victory* / *defeat* for the team.
- 2 Lionel Messi was *outstanding* / *incredible* for Barcelona.
- 3 At half-time in the game, the *score* / *result* is 1–0 to Arsenal.
- 4 The French Open is a famous tennis *cup* / *tournament*.
- 5 Croatia *beat* / *defeated* Germany 3–2.
- 6 We *won* / *beat* the other team 4–1.
- 7 The UEFA Cup is a great *competition* / *league*.

## 42.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 It was a good game but unfortunately we ..... 3–2.
- 2 The ..... at half-time was 2–1, but the final ..... was a draw.
- 3 Holland ..... England 2–1, so they are in the semi-final.
- 4 Brazil ..... 1–1 with Argentina last night.
- 5 Serena Williams has won the Wimbledon ..... at least six times.
- 6 Carolina Kluft broke the heptathlon world ..... again last night.
- 7 There are 20 teams in the ..... , and each team plays the other teams twice.
- 8 Bradley Wiggins ..... part in the *Tour de France* in 2009 and finished fourth.
- 9 I think Novak Djokovic is going to win. He's ..... 5–2 in the final set.
- 10 Argentina are playing ..... Brazil next week.

## 42.4 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- 1 competition in which people run, drive, etc.
- 2 the opposite of *win*
- 3 a group of people who play together
- 4 a synonym for *outstanding*
- 5 stop doing a regular activity
- 6 the leader of a team
- 7 someone who wins something
- 8 when you win a competition
- 9 the last part of a competition
- 10 the opposite of *winner*
- 11 a type of sports competition



## 42.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Have you ever taken part in a sports competition?
- 2 Have you ever won anything?
- 3 Have you ever been captain of a team?
- 4 Have you ever come first, second or third in a race?
- 5 Have you ever watched an individual or team in a final, at the game or on television?

## A

## Books

“I used to hate **literature**<sup>1</sup> at school, but now I read a lot. I started off with **fiction**<sup>2</sup>. I read hundreds of **novels**<sup>3</sup>, mostly **thrillers**<sup>4</sup> and **science fiction**<sup>5</sup>. My favourite **author**<sup>6</sup> is John le Carré.

Recently, I’ve started reading quite a lot of **biographies**<sup>7</sup>, and even some **poetry**<sup>8</sup>. Two of my favourite **poets** are Antonio Machado and Federico García Lorca. They both wrote **poems** in the early 20<sup>th</sup> **century**.”

<sup>1</sup> serious and important writing

<sup>5</sup> stories about the future

<sup>2</sup> stories about imaginary people and events

<sup>6</sup> someone who writes books

<sup>3</sup> fiction books

<sup>7</sup> stories of a person’s life, written by another person

<sup>4</sup> exciting stories, often about crime

<sup>8</sup> pieces of creative writing in short lines

## B

## Films

How do you decide which films you are going to see?



If it’s a **horror film** [a film that makes people frightened, e.g. *Dracula*], I usually go and see it. I love horror films.



If a film gets good **reviews** [opinions in a newspaper or magazine], then I often go and see it.



If there’s a big **star** [a famous actor] in it, then I am more likely to see it. I don’t normally go and see films if I don’t recognise the names of the **actors** [the people who are in films].



I’m not interested in films that are serious or **complicated** [difficult to understand]; I only go to the cinema for **entertainment** [things you see or do to enjoy yourself].



I like **comedies** [films that are funny] and especially **romantic comedies** [comedies that have a love story]. I’ll go and see anything that Ashton Kutcher is in!



I look to see **what’s on** [what films are being shown at the *cinema*], and go to anything that I **fancy** seeing [want to see; *inflm!*].



For me, the **film director** [the person who tells the actors what to do, e.g. Spielberg] is the most important thing. I always go and see the **latest** film [the newest, most recent] by directors I really like such as Ben Affleck.

## Language help

noun	person	verb
entertainment	<b>entertainer</b>	<b>entertain</b>
review	<b>reviewer</b>	<b>review</b>
<b>acting</b>	actor	<b>act</b>
<b>directing</b>	director	<b>direct</b>

# Exercises

## 43.1 Find twelve more words, across or down, connected with books and films.

act

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

L	I	T	E	R	A	T	U	R	E
P	E	S	A	U	T	H	O	R	T
A	C	T	O	R	N	R	G	D	R
C	H	F	I	C	T	I	O	N	E
T	A	P	U	R	F	L	S	F	V
E	N	O	V	E	L	L	T	I	I
P	O	E	T	R	Y	E	A	L	E
C	O	M	E	D	Y	R	R	M	W

## 43.2 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- Many poems are around 300 pages. *novels* .....
- Cinema grew in popularity in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> year. .....
- I enjoy science fiction because I like stories about the past. .....
- What's happening at the cinema? .....
- We went to see the film because there was a good article in the newspaper. .....
- I've been reading a new autobiography of Alfred Hitchcock by Donald Spoto. .....
- Comedies should make people frightened. .....

## 43.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word on the right.

- William Wordsworth is a very famous poet .....
  - I thought the film was good ..... .
  - Johnny Depp is one of my favourite ..... .
  - My daughter wrote a lovely ..... for her school magazine.
  - I thought the ..... in the film was a bit unnatural.
  - I like him very much; he's a great ..... .
  - I didn't agree with what the ..... said.
  - Who's your favourite ..... ?
- POETRY  
ENTERTAIN  
ACT  
POETRY  
ACT  
ENTERTAIN  
REVIEW  
DIRECT

## 43.4 Complete the dialogue.

- A: What's <sup>1</sup> on ..... at the cinema?  
B: Er, there's the <sup>2</sup> ..... film by Pedro Almodóvar. It only came out yesterday.  
A: Oh, the guy who <sup>3</sup> ..... Julieta. He's a very good <sup>4</sup> ..... , but I don't understand some of his films – they're a bit <sup>5</sup> ..... for me. Anything else <sup>6</sup> ..... ?  
B: Well, a couple of romantic <sup>7</sup> ..... , which may be fun. And they're showing The Kite Runner again.  
A: Oh, what's that?  
B: It's a film based on the <sup>8</sup> ..... by Khaled Hosseini. It's a very good book. Do you <sup>9</sup> ..... seeing that?  
A: Yeah, why not.

## 43.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Do you read novels or poetry? If so, what do you like? Who are your favourite authors?
- Do you go to the cinema? If so, how do you decide which films to go and see?
- Do you often read film reviews?
- What are your favourite films? Who are your favourite actors?

## A

**Musical taste\***

People's **taste** in music is different. I like **pop music**, my brother likes **folk music** [music written and played in a traditional style], and my dad prefers **classical music**.

**Common mistakes**

**Classical music** (NOT classic music)

My brother and I like going to concerts to see groups **perform** [play] live [in front of a large group of people, called an **audience**; pronounced to rhyme with *five*].

My dad just listens to music at home; he isn't interested in **live performances**.

When I listen to music I am mostly interested in the **tune** [the musical notes], but my brother is more interested in the **lyrics** [the words of a song].

\*the type of music that you like

## B

**Musical instruments and musicians**

## C

**People in music**

A **composer** is someone who writes music, usually classical music.

A **songwriter** is someone who writes songs, e.g. Paul McCartney, Adele, Ed Sheeran, Chris Martin.

A **conductor** is someone who stands in front of an **orchestra** [a large group of musicians who play different instruments] and **conducts** [leads] them.

An **opera singer** is someone who sings **opera** [a play in which the words are sung].

A **ballet dancer** is someone who dances in a **ballet**.

A **solo artist** is someone who sings or plays music but is not part of a group, e.g. Beyoncé, Jay-Z, etc.

Famous **groups/bands** are The Arctic Monkeys, U2, etc.

## D

**Making an album**

When groups **record** an **album** [put eight or ten songs into one collection] or a **single** [one song], they do it in a **recording studio**. Then, when the album **comes out** [is available for people to buy], it is usually **advertised** in the media [there are **adverts** on TV, online etc.]. Many people **download** their favourite **tracks** [individual songs from an album] or albums from the Internet.

# Exercises

## 44.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |             |                            |              |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| 1 classical | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a studio     |
| 2 solo      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b singer     |
| 3 recording | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c music      |
| 4 musical   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d dancer     |
| 5 opera     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e artist     |
| 6 ballet    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f instrument |



## 44.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 There was a very big ..... for their last concert – nearly 10,000 people.
- 2 I think their new ..... is a great song.
- 3 The new ..... has songs written by other people. It ..... out next week.
- 4 I've listened to a lot of their music but I've never seen them perform .....
- 5 Their new album was ..... in a studio near my home.
- 6 The band has a new album out and it's being ..... on TV.

## 44.3 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

flute    ballet    audience    album    dancing    orchestra    concert  
conductor    flautist    composer    classical music    recording studio

A flautist is a person who plays a flute.

## 44.4 Can you complete this music quiz with words from the opposite page?

- 1 Florence Welch is the main singer and ..... for her group Florence + the Machine.
- 2 The Berlin Philharmonic is an ..... . Herbert von Karajan was the ..... from 1955 to 1989.
- 3 Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti were both great .....
- 4 Waterloo was Abba's first Number 1 hit .....
- 5 Sergeant Pepper is the most famous ..... by The Beatles.
- 6 Eric Clapton is a great rock .....
- 7 Yo Yo Ma is a great classical .....
- 8 Rachmaninoff is a famous .....
- 9 Puccini composed ..... such as *La Bohème*.
- 10 Who was the very famous ..... artist who sang *Thriller*? .....

## 44.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 What music do you like? Is your taste in music different from your parents'?
- 2 Who's your favourite solo artist, group or composer?
- 3 What was the last single or album you bought or downloaded?
- 4 When was the last time you heard or saw a group or orchestra perform live?
- 5 Are you usually more interested in the tune or the lyrics of a song?
- 6 Do you play a musical instrument? What do you play?

A

### A fireworks display

The Sydney **fireworks<sup>1</sup>** **display<sup>2</sup>** is **held<sup>3</sup>** every year, and more than one million people **gather<sup>4</sup>** at Sydney **harbour<sup>5</sup>** on New Year's Eve to **celebrate<sup>6</sup>** the new year. All age groups are **involved<sup>7</sup>** in the event. At 9 pm there is 'Family fireworks' for families with younger children. After that a large number of boats **parade<sup>8</sup>** around the harbour. Finally, at midnight, there is a **spectacular<sup>9</sup>** fireworks display for almost fifteen minutes in which more than 4,000 kilograms of fireworks light up the night sky.

<sup>1</sup>(see picture)

<sup>2</sup>a show for people to watch

<sup>3</sup>organised

<sup>4</sup>come together

<sup>5</sup>area of water where ships are kept and are safe from the sea

<sup>6</sup>do something enjoyable on a special day

<sup>7</sup>included (in an event or activity)

<sup>8</sup>move around as part of a group, often to celebrate something (*parade* is also a noun)

<sup>9</sup>looking extremely good or exciting



B

### An arts festival

The Edinburgh **Festival<sup>1</sup>** is an **annual<sup>2</sup>** event, and is the largest arts festival in the world. It **consists of<sup>3</sup>** at least six different festivals which **take place<sup>4</sup>** in the city and **last<sup>5</sup>** for almost six weeks during August and early September. The most **popular<sup>6</sup>** festival is The Fringe, which has **up to<sup>7</sup>** 500 daily performances in dance, music, drama and comedy in 180 places across the city.

<sup>1</sup>a number of special events often continuing for several days

<sup>5</sup>continue

<sup>2</sup>happening once a year

<sup>6</sup>liked by many people

<sup>3</sup>is made of

<sup>7</sup>the maximum (is 500)

<sup>4</sup>happen

C

### The Chinese Spring Festival



The Spring Festival (or Chinese New Year) is the biggest **traditional** festival in China. It has been celebrated for about 4,000 years, and takes place every year at some point between 21 January and 20 February. On the day before the festival starts, people from **all over<sup>1</sup>** China return to their family homes and gather for a big meal. The next day, many people **dress up<sup>2</sup>**, and children receive money from their parents in red envelopes to **bring them luck**. Another popular **custom** is to put two-line poems on the gates outside each home.

<sup>1</sup>everywhere (in China)

<sup>2</sup>wear special clothes

### Language help

A **custom** is something that people usually do. A **tradition** is a very old custom that has continued for a long time. The adjectives are **traditional** and **customary**.

*It is traditional to give each other presents.*

*It is customary to take your shoes off before you enter a mosque.*

*We went to a traditional Greek wedding (NOT a Greek traditional wedding).*

# Exercises

## 45.1 Complete the definitions.

- 1 A display is a show for people to *watch* .....
- 2 If you are involved in an activity, you are ..... in it.
- 3 If you can have up to 25 people, 25 people is the .....
- 4 If an event is spectacular, it looks very good or .....
- 5 A harbour is a place where ..... are kept.
- 6 If people parade round the streets, they ..... round the streets in a group.

## 45.2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 The festival happens in the summer. TAKE
- 2 The children wear special clothes. DRESS
- 3 People come from everywhere in Japan. ALL
- 4 They hold the event every year. HELD
- 5 Do you do anything special for your birthday? CELEBRATE
- 6 The festival happens every year. ANNUAL

*The festival takes place in the summer.*

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 45.3 Complete the text.



FESTIVALS ATTRACTIONS TRANSPORT

### THE FALLAS

The Fallas is a <sup>1</sup> *traditional* <sup>2</sup> ..... in Valencia, Spain, which <sup>3</sup> ..... for five days and finishes on March 19th. The Fallas <sup>4</sup> ..... place right across the city, and it <sup>5</sup> ..... St Joseph, as well as the end of winter and the birth of spring. The festival <sup>6</sup> ..... of music, dancing, cooking (the famous paella) and parades, and each area in the city produces a falla, which is a figure made of paper, cardboard, wood, etc. that is burnt on the final day. The fallas are very important, and artists spend months making them.

But the festival is also famous for <sup>7</sup> ..... fireworks displays. Every day crowds <sup>8</sup> ..... in different parts of the city at 2 pm, when loud firecrackers are set off.

<sup>9</sup> ..... displays continue every night, and on the final night, there is a huge display when all the fallas are burned. This is called the Crema.

## 45.4 Over to you

Think about a festival you know and answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else.

- 1 What kind of festival is it? Is it an arts festival or a traditional festival?
- 2 How often is it held?
- 3 When and where does it take place?
- 4 How long does it last?
- 5 What does it consist of?
- 6 Are there any special traditions or customs as part of the festival?

## A

## Types of holidays



adventure holiday



skiing holiday



family holiday



beach holiday

## B

## Online booking

Many people book their holiday **accommodation**<sup>1</sup> on the Internet. To **book online**<sup>2</sup>, you need to search for your **destination**<sup>3</sup> and the dates when you plan to travel. You can look for hotels or **B&Bs**<sup>4</sup>. Often websites have low prices, especially in winter. It is helpful to read the online **reviews**<sup>5</sup> before you book the accommodation. A popular option for a **weekend break**<sup>6</sup> is to rent an apartment in an interesting city. But if you want to make life easy, you might like a **package holiday**, which includes the flight, hotel room and sometimes meals.



go on a cruise



city break

<sup>1</sup> a place where you stay<sup>2</sup> to make a reservation using the Internet<sup>3</sup> a place where you plan to travel<sup>4</sup> bed and breakfast: a small hotel where breakfast is included in the price<sup>5</sup> a description of a hotel, restaurant, etc, written by people who've been there<sup>6</sup> a short holiday during a weekend

## C

## Renting a private apartment

To Irene Sanders

From Oliver Weiss

Subject Re: Apartment with mountain view

Reply Forward CC BCC 11:02 AM (2 hours ago)

Dear Irene,

We have arrived at your apartment. We **picked up**<sup>1</sup> the keys from the neighbours without any problems. We like the apartment a lot, but we have a few questions. We can't find the **wi-fi password**<sup>2</sup>. Could you send it to us? Also, the **listing**<sup>3</sup> said that there was an **iron**<sup>4</sup> in the kitchen, but we can't see it. Can you let us know where it is? Finally, it's very cold and we can't find the instructions for the **central heating**<sup>5</sup>. Where do we **switch it on**<sup>6</sup>?

Where's the **nearest** supermarket? And can you **recommend**<sup>7</sup> a **nearby**<sup>8</sup> restaurant for dinner? Somewhere cheap would be great!

All the best,  
Oliver and Jo

<sup>1</sup> collect<sup>5</sup> a system that keeps a building warm<sup>2</sup> a secret group of letters and numbers, for connecting to wireless Internet<sup>6</sup> make it start working<sup>3</sup> written description of something to buy or rent<sup>7</sup> say something is good<sup>4</sup> a small machine that makes clothes smooth and flat<sup>8</sup> not far

# Exercises

## 46.1 Match the holiday types on the left with their descriptions on the right.

- |                     |                            |  |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1 a cruise          | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a holiday where there are activities for children as well as adults                                    |
| 2 beach holiday     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b a winter holiday in the mountains  |
| 3 skiing holiday    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c a holiday where you sleep on a boat and travel from one place to another                             |
| 4 adventure holiday | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d a short holiday where you visit a city   |
| 5 family holiday    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e a holiday where you stay near the sea  |
| 6 city break        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f an unusual, exciting holiday, possibly with some danger, e.g. rock climbing or walking in the jungle |

## 46.2 Complete the dialogues with words from B.

RUTH: Shall we book somewhere for our <sup>1</sup>*weekend* break?

HARRY: What about this hotel? It has great <sup>2</sup>..... online. Five stars!

RUTH: I'd prefer somewhere a bit smaller, with breakfast included.

HARRY: OK, here's a nice <sup>3</sup>..... in the countryside.

HANS: Have you found any <sup>4</sup>..... yet?

PAULA: Yes, I've booked a four-star hotel in the city centre.

HANS: Was it very expensive?

PAULA: No, it was part of a <sup>5</sup>....., so the hotel was included in the price.

## 46.3 Circle the words from B and C to complete each sentence.

- 1 Many travellers prefer to *book* / *take* their holiday online, rather than on the phone.
- 2 Spain is a popular holiday *accommodation* / *destination* among British holiday-makers.
- 3 If you book a package *holiday* / *weekend break*, you don't have to book flights separately.
- 4 The apartment *listing* / *password* doesn't say if it has wi-fi or not. We'll have to email them.
- 5 The *central heating* / *iron* is broken and Sara's clothes are all creased.
- 6 The house has *listing* / *central heating*, so it is warm all through the winter months.

## 46.4 Look at C opposite. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 When you arrive, you can pick *out* the keys from the reception desk. *up*.....
- 2 I recommence renting a car, as public transport is not very good. .....
- 3 The nearer train station is a five minute walk away. .....
- 4 The wi-fi passport is written on a piece of paper next to the computer. .....
- 5 I like staying in this area. There are quite a few nice cafés nearly. .....
- 6 To switch *out* the air conditioning, press this button. .....

## 46.5

### Over to you

Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What type of holiday from A do you prefer?
- 2 Do you read hotel reviews before you book online?
- 3 Where do you like to stay when you travel: in a hotel, in a B&B or in a private apartment?

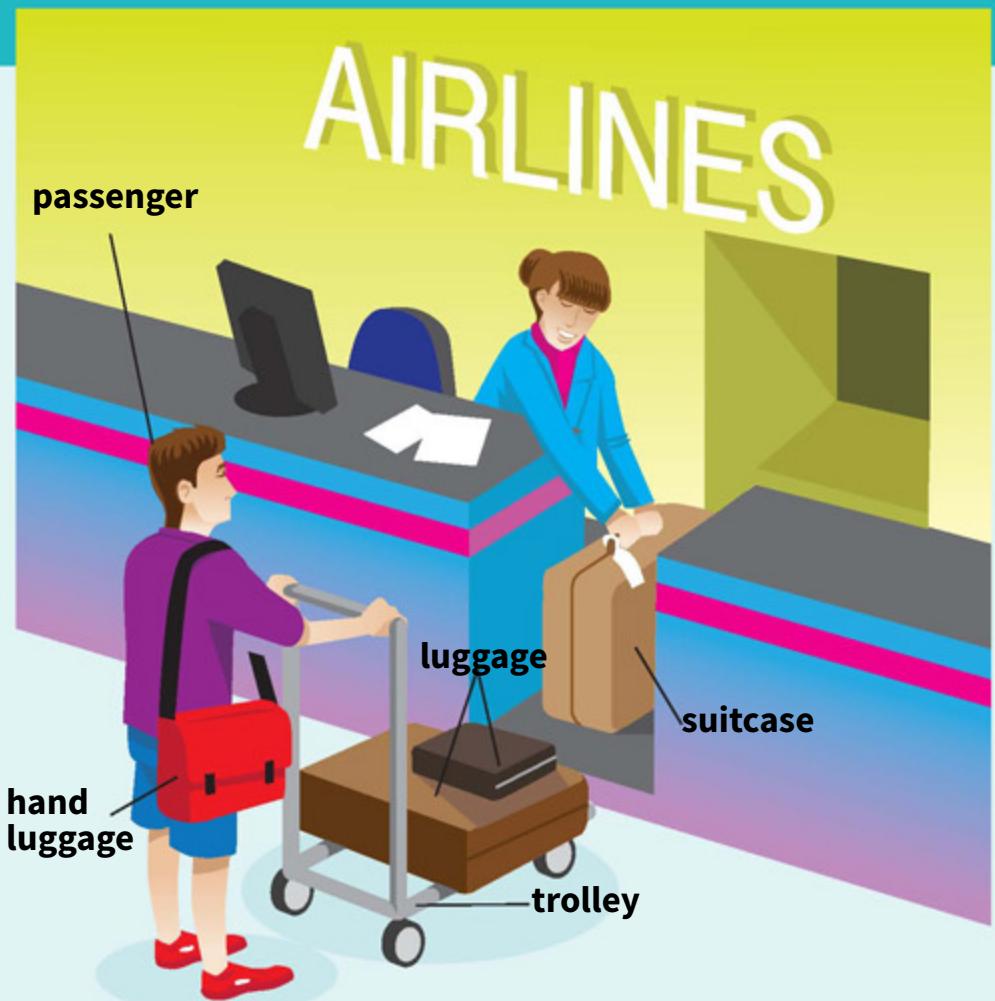
A

**Departure\***

When you arrive at an airport, the **departures board** will show you the **flight numbers** (e.g. BA735), departure times (e.g. 08.40), and **destinations**<sup>1</sup>.

At **check-in / the check-in desk**, someone will check your ticket and **weigh**<sup>2</sup> your luggage. If it is more than, for example, 20 kilograms, you will have to **pay excess baggage**<sup>3</sup>. You can take your hand luggage with you on the **aircraft**<sup>4</sup>. You also get your **boarding card**<sup>5</sup> and then you can go through **passport control**, where someone **checks your passport**<sup>6</sup>, and into the departure lounge, where you can buy things in the **duty-free** shop, e.g. cigarettes and perfume.

Shortly before **take-off**<sup>7</sup>, you go to the place where you get on the plane, e.g. **Gate 3** or **Gate 5**. When you **board the plane**<sup>8</sup>, you can put your hand luggage in a small cupboard above your seat called an **overhead locker**. You then have to **fasten your seat belt**. If there are no **delays**<sup>9</sup>, the plane moves slowly to the **runway**<sup>10</sup>, then it takes off.



\* when you leave a place, at the start of a journey

<sup>1</sup> where the flights are going to

<sup>2</sup> see how heavy something is

<sup>3</sup> pay extra for your luggage

<sup>4</sup> plane

<sup>5</sup> a piece of paper you must show to get on the plane

<sup>6</sup> looks at your passport carefully

<sup>7</sup> when the plane takes off / leaves the ground

<sup>8</sup> get on the plane

<sup>9</sup> when you have to wait longer than expected

<sup>10</sup> the large road that planes use for take-offs and **landings**

**Common mistakes**

My **flight** number is BA640. (NOT My **fly** number is BA640.) I slept the whole **flight**. (NOT I slept the whole **fly**.)

B

**Arrival\***

When the plane **lands**<sup>1</sup>, there is always an **announcement**<sup>2</sup> from a member of the **cabin crew**<sup>3</sup> telling passengers to wait until the plane completely stops before they stand up. Then you get off the plane and walk through the **terminal building**<sup>4</sup> to passport control. When you've got your luggage from **baggage reclaim**<sup>5</sup>, you **go through customs**<sup>6</sup> and leave the airport.

\* when someone or something arrives

<sup>1</sup> arrives on the ground

<sup>2</sup> spoken information to a group of people

<sup>3</sup> the people on the aircraft who look after the passengers

<sup>4</sup> the airport building

<sup>5</sup> the place where you collect your luggage

<sup>6</sup> go through the area where your luggage may be checked to make sure you don't have anything illegal.

# Exercises

## 47.1 Complete the words or phrases using words from the box.

board	number	crew	card	control	luggage
reclaim	free	baggage	building	desk	locker

- |                                 |                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 departures ..... <i>board</i> | 7 flight .....    |
| 2 excess .....                  | 8 overhead .....  |
| 3 check-in .....                | 9 boarding .....  |
| 4 hand .....                    | 10 cabin .....    |
| 5 terminal .....                | 11 baggage .....  |
| 6 duty .....                    | 12 passport ..... |

## 47.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the place where the airline staff check your ticket? *the check-in desk*
- 2 Who are the people that travel on a plane? .....
- 3 What do airline staff weigh at the check-in desk? .....
- 4 What's the piece of paper they give you at the check-in desk? .....
- 5 What do we call the place you're travelling to? .....
- 6 What do airport staff do at passport control? .....
- 7 What do we call the place where you get on the plane? .....
- 8 What do you call the bags that you can take on the plane with you? .....
- 9 What's the part of the airport where the plane takes off and lands? .....

## 47.3 Complete the email.

To   CC   
From   11:52 AM (10 hours ago)

Hi Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible <sup>1</sup>*flight* ..... When we were in the airport in Manchester there was an <sup>2</sup>..... telling us that there would be a one-hour <sup>3</sup>..... because of bad weather, but when we finally <sup>4</sup>..... the plane, there was a further delay before we could <sup>5</sup>..... There was more bad weather over France, and we all had to <sup>6</sup>..... our seat belts, which worried me a bit. In fact, I was almost sick, but the cabin <sup>7</sup>..... were really nice.

It was still raining and very windy when we <sup>8</sup>..... in Rome and I was really glad to get off the plane and get into the <sup>9</sup>..... building. I really hope the return <sup>10</sup>..... is a lot better.

See you soon.  
Ellie

## 47.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If you don't fly very much, ask someone else.

- 1 What is the best part and the worst part of the flight?
- 2 When do you often have delays, and why?
- 3 What do you usually do on the aircraft during the flight?
- 4 What's the first thing you do on arrival?
- 5 Do you ever have anything to declare when you go through customs?

## A

## Hotel facilities and rooms

**HOTEL LE ROUGE**

The hotel is located near The Louvre, Notre Dame and top department stores right in the **heart<sup>1</sup>** of Paris. Hotel **facilities** include: **room service<sup>2</sup>**, **Internet access<sup>3</sup>**, **air conditioning<sup>4</sup>** and **parking**. Our choice of **single<sup>5</sup>**, **double<sup>6</sup>** or **twin<sup>7</sup>** rooms are all equipped with **satellite TV<sup>8</sup>**, air conditioning, direct-dial telephone, **mini-bar<sup>9</sup>**, and personal **safe<sup>10</sup>**. Bathrooms come with a bath or shower and hair dryer.

<sup>1</sup>centre<sup>2</sup>staff will bring food and drink to the room<sup>3</sup>use of the Internet<sup>4</sup>a system that keeps the air cool<sup>5</sup>a room for one person<sup>6</sup>a room for two people with one big bed<sup>7</sup>a room for two people with two beds<sup>8</sup>TV with many channels from different countries<sup>9</sup>a small fridge<sup>10</sup>a box to keep money and valuable items in

## B

## Staying in a hotel

Rooms are often **available<sup>1</sup>** during the week, but many hotels are **fully booked<sup>2</sup>** at weekends or during the holidays, so you may need to **book a room<sup>3</sup> in advance<sup>4</sup>**. When you arrive, you **check in at reception<sup>5</sup>**; at the end of your **stay<sup>6</sup>**, you **check out<sup>7</sup>**.

<sup>1</sup>you can find one<sup>2</sup>all the rooms are taken<sup>3</sup>arrange/plan to have a room; syn **reserve**<sup>4</sup>before you go<sup>5</sup>say you have arrived and get your room key<sup>6</sup>the period of time you spend in a place<sup>7</sup>pay your bill and leave the hotel

## C

## Going to a restaurant

It's often a good idea to **book a table / make a reservation** if you go to a restaurant at the weekend. Many restaurants offer **three-course** meals which **include** [have as part of the meal] a **starter** (e.g. soup), **main course** (e.g. meat or fish) and  (e.g. fruit with ice cream). Prices sometimes include 10% **service** as well [amount of money you pay for being served by the waiter]. If service isn't **included**, it's normal to leave a **tip** [extra money you give to the waiter/waitress].

## D

## Ordering a meal

WAITER: **Are you ready to order?** [Have you decided what to eat?]

CUSTOMER: Yes, I think so. I'd like to start with the spicy prawns, and then **I'll have** the fillet steak, with French fries and a **mixed salad** [lettuce with other vegetables].

WAITER: How would you like your steak? (**Rare, medium or well-done?**)

CUSTOMER: **Medium**, please. And I'd like some mineral water as well.

WAITER: **Still or sparkling?**

CUSTOMER: Er, sparkling.

## Common mistakes

**I'll have** the steak. (NOT **I take** the steak.)

# Exercises

### **48.1 Put the words into the correct columns. Write titles for the other two groups.**

rare    starter    mini-bar    sparkling    main course  
room service    medium    dessert    still    well-done    safe

steak			water
<i>rare</i>			

#### **48.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

- |                |                                     |                |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 service      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a room         |
| 2 room         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b access       |
| 3 double       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c meal         |
| 4 three-course | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d conditioning |
| 5 main         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e service      |
| 6 internet     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f TV           |
| 7 air          | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g included     |
| 8 satellite    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h course       |



## **48.3 Complete the sentences.**

- 

1 Have you booked a ..... *room* ..... ?  
2 Could you first check in at ..... ?  
3 Do you want a single or a ..... ?  
4 Does the price include ..... ?  
5 I ..... the soup, and then the fish for my main course.  
6 The hotel ..... included internet access, 24-hour reception and a restaurant.  
7 Service wasn't included, so I left a 10% ..... .  
8 The hotel is in the ..... of the town, close to all the main attractions.  
9 Would you like a ..... salad with your main ..... ?  
10 At the end of your ..... at a hotel, you normally have to ..... out by midday.

**48.4** Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1 I was able to use the Internet.        | I had internet ..... .     |
| 2 Did you book a table?                  | Did you make a ..... ?     |
| 3 The hotel was fully booked.            | There were no rooms .....  |
| 4 You don't pay extra for service.       | Service is ..... .         |
| 5 Did you book it before you went?       | Did you book it in ..... ? |
| 6 Is there somewhere to leave the car?   | Do you have ..... ?        |
| 7 Have you decided what you want to eat? | Are you ready ..... ?      |

**48.5** Over to you

**You are staying in a hotel in your own country. Are these facilities important to you? Why? / Why not?**

mini-bar      24-hour room service      air conditioning      satellite TV  
internet access      parking      restaurant      a personal safe



# Exercises

## 49.1 Put the words from A and B in the correct category.

bagel	hot chocolate	cupcake	herbal tea	latte	wrap	baguette
milkshake	muffin	smoothie	panini	toastie	waffle	

1 Drinks	2 Sandwiches	3 Cakes
<i>herbal tea</i>	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	

## 49.2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

cappuccino	croissants	vegetarian	toastie	milkshake	decaf	smoothie
------------	------------	------------	---------	-----------	-------	----------

- I had a cheese and tomato ..... for lunch.
- Here's your coffee, Danny. A ..... with two sugars.
- For breakfast, we had some ..... from the French baker's across the road.
- Do they have ..... coffee here? Caffeine keeps me awake at night.
- We've got three kinds of ..... : strawberry, vanilla and chocolate.
- I like that new fruit ..... with oranges and mangoes.
- Kate can't have the chicken panini. She only eats ..... food.

## 49.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the best endings on the right.

- |                     |                            |                     |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 What size:        | <input type="checkbox"/> b | a heated up?        |
| 2 Is it to have in  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b regular or large? |
| 3 Would you like it | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c that baguette?    |
| 4 What's in         | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d the napkins?      |
| 5 Where are         | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e or to take away?  |

## 49.4 Choose the correct word to complete the dialogue.

- A: Would you like a hot drink?  
B: Yes, two <sup>1</sup>milkshakes / *cappuccinos*, please.  
A: What size?  
B: <sup>2</sup>Large / *Herbal*, please.  
A: Anything to eat?  
B: Yes. What's in that <sup>3</sup>panini / *cupcake*?  
A: Italian cheese and mushrooms. I can heat it up for you.  
B: OK, yes. I'll have that. And a chocolate <sup>4</sup>muffin / *bagel*.  
A: To eat in?  
B: No, to <sup>5</sup>heat it up / take away.

## 49.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Where do you usually have lunch during the week? What about at the weekend?
- What kind of food and drink do you usually order in a café?
- What type of food and drink from A and B do you like?

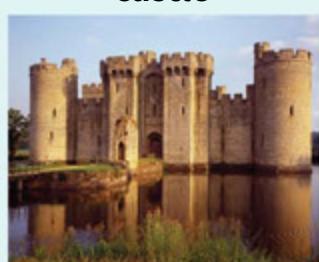
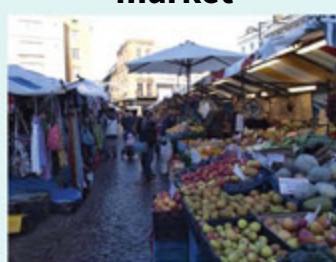
## A

## Things to see

fountain



mosque



cathedral



temple

statue

## B

## Tourist activities

activity	example
• <b>go sightseeing</b> [visit famous places; also <b>see the sights</b> ]	We <b>went sightseeing</b> almost every day. I like to <b>see the sights</b> when I visit a place.
• <b>do</b> a bit of / a lot of <b>sightseeing</b>	I didn't <b>do</b> a lot of <b>sightseeing</b> in Warsaw.
• <b>have a look round</b> [visit a place casually, often on foot]	We <b>had a look round</b> the shops. I want to <b>have a look round</b> the museum.
• <b>explore</b> [go round a new place to see what is there]	We <b>explored</b> the flower market.
• <b>go out</b> [leave home / your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or theatre]	On holiday we <b>went out</b> every night.
• <b>get lost</b> [lose one's way]	I <b>got lost</b> three times in London.
• <b>have</b> a great/nice/terrible <b>time</b>	They <b>had a lovely time</b> in Venice.
• buy <b>souvenirs</b> [something you buy or keep to remember a place or holiday]	We bought some dolls as <b>souvenirs</b> .

## C

## Describing places

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country, e.g. Bruges is a lovely **place** [town] and we found a really nice **place** [hotel] to stay.

“The **guidebooks** [books with information about places] say the Alhambra in Granada is **magnificent** [very good or very beautiful], but it's always **packed** [very crowded] with tourists in the summer.”

“São Paulo is a **lively** place [full of life and activity], and there's **plenty** [a lot] to do in the evening.”

“St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments** [important places built a long time ago] but the Hermitage Museum was the main **attraction** for me. [something that makes people come to a place or want to do a particular thing]”

“If you go to Poland, it's definitely **worth** visiting Kraków.”

## Language help

We use **worth** + noun/-ing to say that it is a good idea to do something or go somewhere.  
It's **worth** hiring a car if you go to Scotland. Glasgow is **worth a visit** as well.

# Exercises

## 50.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to religious places.

castle                    church ✓                    temple  
statue                    market                    cathedral  
fountain                 mosque                    palace

## 50.2 Complete the email.

The screenshot shows an email window with the following details:

- From: John H.
- Date: 7:03 AM (3 hours ago)
- Subject: (implied by the body text)
- Body:

Hi everyone,  
I've been in Paris for over a week now and I'm having a great <sup>1</sup> time. I did quite a lot of <sup>2</sup> in the first few days – the Eiffel Tower, Notre-Dame, and all the usual tourist <sup>3</sup>. Most places are absolutely <sup>4</sup> with tourists at the moment, so yesterday I decided to <sup>5</sup> one or two shopping areas. I got <sup>6</sup> on my way back to the hotel, but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating street <sup>7</sup> selling just about everything from apples to antiques.  
I ate in the hotel the first night but I usually <sup>8</sup> for dinner – the restaurants are great and I can get a set meal for €20.  
I hope you're all well. I'll write again in a few days.  
All the best,  
John

## 50.3 Complete the dialogues, but without using a word from the question.

- 1 A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?  
B: Yes, it's a wonderful ..... .
- 2 A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?  
B: Yes, it was absolutely ..... .
- 3 A: It's lively in the evening, isn't it?  
B: Yes, there's ..... .
- 4 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?  
B: Yes, we had a ..... .
- 5 A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?  
B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely ..... .
- 6 A: You know a lot about this castle, don't you?  
B: Yes, I bought a ..... .
- 7 A: St Petersburg has got many famous old places to see, hasn't it?  
B: Yes, lots of historic ..... .
- 8 A: The Taj Mahal was impressive and so beautiful.  
B: Yes, it was ..... .
- 9 A: Did you explore the town centre?  
B: Yes, we had a ..... .

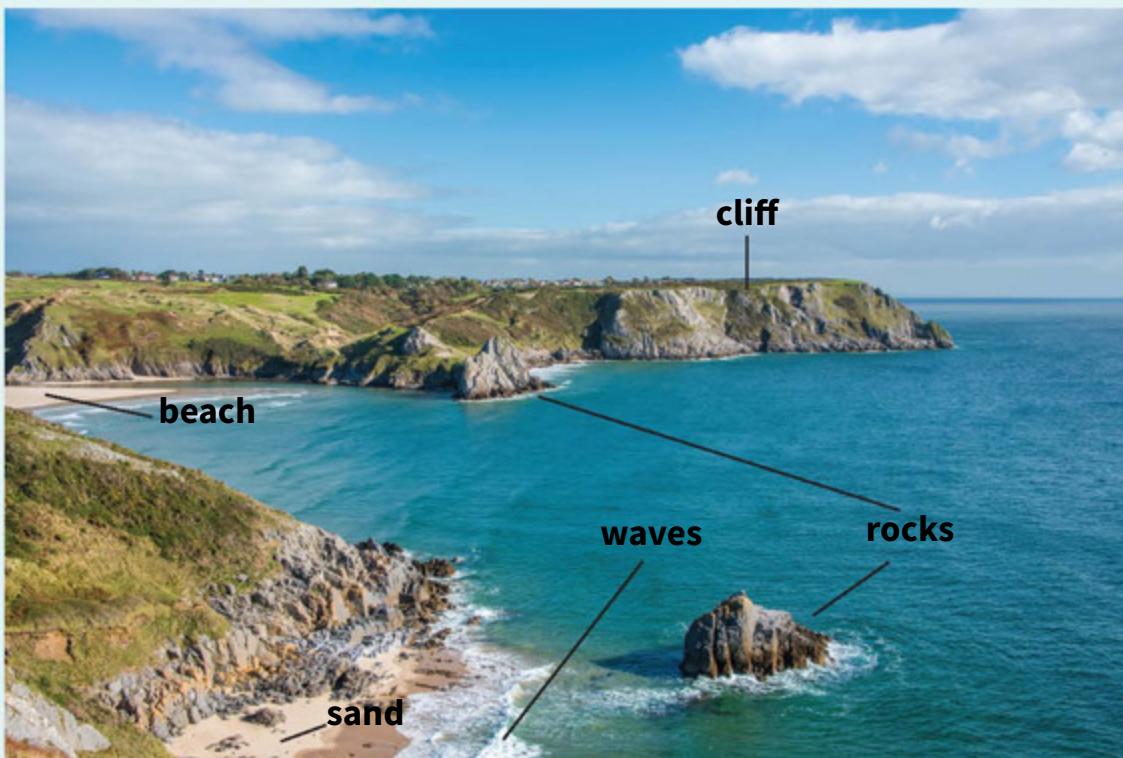
## 50.4 Over to you

Think about your own country and write answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Write down a place that is worth visiting and a place that is not worth visiting and say why.
- 2 Is there a place that is particularly famous for its historic monuments? What are they?
- 3 What typical souvenirs do tourists buy when they visit?
- 4 What are the main attractions for tourists to your country? Do you think they are worth seeing?

## A

## The beach



Many people **spend** their holiday at the **coast** [the land close to the sea], where there are a lot of **seaside resorts** [towns by the sea for tourists] and they can go to the beach every day. Generally people prefer beaches that are **sandy** [with lots of sand], where you can go for a **stroll** [a casual walk] along the **shore** [the place where the sea meets the land] in the **sunshine** [when it is sunny]. On the beach, you also sometimes get a **breeze** [a nice gentle wind] that blows off the sea.

## B

## Beach activities



surfing



windsurfing



diving



playing volleyball



sunbathing

**Volleyball** is a popular beach game and some people enjoy water sports such as **surfing**, **windsurfing** or **diving**. If the sea is **calm**<sup>1</sup>, you can **go for a swim**, but a lot of people just want to lie on the beach and **sunbathe** and get a nice (**sun)tan**<sup>2</sup>. However, there are now worries about the dangers of **sunbathing**. People who lie in the sun without any **protection**<sup>3</sup> can get **sunburn**<sup>4</sup>, and worse still, they are **at risk of**<sup>5</sup> getting skin cancer. Doctors now **recommend**<sup>6</sup> that people do not sit in the sun without using **sunscreen**<sup>7</sup>. It may be safer just to sit in the **shade**<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> without waves (does not move very much); opp **rough**

<sup>6</sup> say what someone should do

<sup>2</sup> when the skin becomes brown

<sup>7</sup> cream that gives protection from the sun; syns **sunblock, sun cream**

<sup>3</sup> something to keep someone safe

<sup>8</sup> an area where there is no light from the sun, so it is darker and less hot

<sup>4</sup> when the skin becomes red and very sore

<sup>5</sup> if you are at risk of something, there is a danger that something bad may happen to you

## Language help

We can **go for a walk**, **a drive** (a journey in the car for pleasure), **a swim**, **a coffee** [drink some coffee], **a drink** (often an alcoholic drink, e.g. wine, beer). We can also **have a swim**, **a coffee**, **a drink**.

We **went for a drive** along the coast. I **had a coffee** at Caffé Nero. Let's **go for a drink** tonight.

# Exercises

## 51.1 Write down four more words beginning with sun.

sun<sup>shine</sup> ..... sun ..... sun ..... sun ..... sun .....

## 51.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |              |                                       |           |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 sun        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> d | a shade   |
| 2 wind       | <input type="checkbox"/>              | b sea     |
| 3 seaside    | <input type="checkbox"/>              | c surfing |
| 4 sit in the | <input type="checkbox"/>              | d tan     |
| 5 sandy      | <input type="checkbox"/>              | e resort  |
| 6 rough      | <input type="checkbox"/>              | f beach   |

## 51.3 Cover the opposite page. What are these people doing?



1 *playing volleyball* .....



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....

## 51.4 Cross out the wrong answer.

- |                 |                   |                 |                   |               |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 The beach was | a lovely          | b calm          | c sandy           | d dirty       |
| 2 We went for a | a drive           | b shop          | c drink           | d stroll      |
| 3 The sea was   | a sandy           | b calm          | c rough           | d cold        |
| 4 I enjoy       | a surfing         | b diving        | c getting sunburn | d windsurfing |
| 5 We walked     | a along the beach | b by the shore  | c on the waves    | d on the sand |
| 6 The beach was | a near the cliffs | b by the breeze | c by the rocks    | d very sandy  |

## 51.5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I love sunbathing, so I can get a nice *suntan* .....
- 2 Doctors ..... that you stay out of the sun completely in the middle of the day.
- 3 We used to sunbathe for hours, but then we didn't know we were at ..... of getting skin cancer.
- 4 I always take a beach umbrella to give me ..... from the sun when it is very hot.
- 5 In the city it feels like there's no air, but you often get a nice ..... by the sea.
- 6 I love going for a ..... along the beach, especially in the evening when it's quiet.
- 7 I don't like sitting in the sun; I prefer to sit in the ..... .
- 8 We decided to ..... a swim before lunch.

## 51.6 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Do you ever spend time at seaside resorts? Where do you go, and how often?
- 2 Do you enjoy any of the beach activities on the opposite page? Which ones?
- 3 Do you like sunbathing? Why? / Why not?
- 4 Do you get a suntan easily? Have you ever had sunburn? Do you often use sunscreen?
- 5 What do you like to do in the evening after a day on the beach?

## A

**Newspapers**

Most **papers** [newspapers] are **daily**, which means that they **come out** [appear in shops; syn **are published**] every day. Some are **national** [for the whole country], others are **regional** [for a part of the country]. Some newspapers are published online; these are called **e-papers**. You can also get **mobile editions** [you read a newspaper on your phone]. Magazines are usually **weekly** or **monthly**.



## B

**Contents of\* newspapers**

**Reports** [pieces of writing about news items, written by **reporters**/ **journalists**, e.g. a **report in** *The Times* **on/about** a crime]

**Articles** [pieces of writing about an important subject, e.g. an **article on**/ **about** drugs]

**Headlines** [titles written in large letters above reports/articles, e.g.

GOVERNMENT LOSES VOTE]

**Reviews** [pieces of writing giving an opinion, e.g. a **review of** a new book]

**Advertisements** or **adverts** [words and pictures about a product, to make people buy it, e.g. **an advert for** shampoo]

\*information in

## C

**Television**

If you **broadcast** something, you send it out on TV, radio or the Internet. There are now many broadcasting companies and many programmes. People watch:

- **the news** [information about world events]
- **the weather forecast** [a description of what the weather will be like in the next few days]
- **documentaries** [programmes that give facts about real situations and real people]
- **chat shows** [programmes where famous people are asked questions about themselves]
- **a series** [a number of programmes that have the same characters or deal with the same subject]
- **soap operas** [a regular series of programmes, often two or three times a week, about a group of characters who live in the same area]
- **reality TV shows** [programmes which follow ordinary people or **celebrities** [famous people] through a number of situations or challenges. **Well-known** [famous] examples include: *Pop Idol*, *The X Factor* and *Strictly Come Dancing*.]

## Language help

We usually use **channel** to talk about television broadcasting, e.g. *The news is on Channel 4*; and **station** to talk about radio broadcasting, e.g. A: *What station are you listening to?* B: *Radio 1 – it's mostly pop music.*

## D

**Media reporting\***

Many newspapers also have online **forums** where people can leave messages and discuss topics. News is also reported online through **podcasts** [a radio programme that you download from the Internet and play on your computer or phone], e.g. Have you heard the latest business **podcast** on the CNN website?

When we refer to something that someone has said or written, we do it in these ways:

**It said in** *The Times* that the plane crashed in the sea.

**According to** the news on TV last night, the plane crashed in the sea.

\*reporting in newspapers, on TV or the Internet

## Common mistakes

**It says** in the paper / **According to** the paper ... (NOT **It's written** in the paper ...)

# Exercises

## 52.1 Tick (✓) the words which describe a type of TV programme.

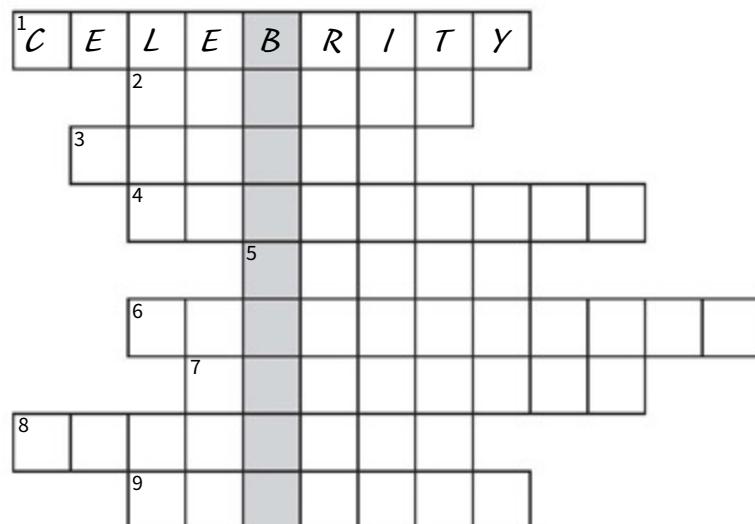
the news ✓ documentary headline soap opera  
chat show review article series

## 52.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Have you heard of 'Radio Five Live'?  
B: Yes, it's a very popular *station* .....
- 2 A: Is the magazine published every day?  
B: No, it ..... monthly.
- 3 A: Is it a national paper?  
B: No, it's a ..... paper for the south-west.
- 4 A: Can we watch the news now?  
B: Yes, it's on ..... Four.
- 5 A: Are they mostly famous people?  
B: Yes, they're all .....

## 52.3 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- 1 a famous person
- 2 a number of programmes with the same characters
- 3 a piece of writing about a news item
- 4 programmes several times a week about the same people
- 5 happening every day
- 6 a factual programme about real people and situations
- 7 relating to the whole country
- 8 a programme that interviews famous people
- 9 a piece of writing about an important subject



## 52.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Did you read that *article* ..... in the paper yesterday about space?
- 2 The manager was interviewed for the paper by one of their well-known .....
- 3 Do you understand this ..... ? '*200 WOMEN GIVEN WRONG DIAGNOSIS*'
- 4 Rock FM is the name of a radio .....
- 5 It ..... in the paper that the interest rate is likely to go up soon.
- 6 I read a ..... of his latest film. It doesn't sound very good.
- 7 You often see ..... in the paper which promise that you can learn a language in ten hours with this method. It isn't true.
- 8 ..... to the weather ..... last night, it's going to rain today.
- 9 I never watch ..... operas.
- 10 I love *The X Factor*; in fact, I love all ..... TV shows!

## 52.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
- 2 How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
- 3 What parts of the newspaper do you read?
- 4 What types of TV programme do you watch?

## A

## Starting a phone conversation

The call on the left is between two friends: Joe and Lily. When British people answer the phone at home, they usually just say 'hello'. The call on the right is a more formal business call.

JOE: Hello?

LILY: **Is that** Joe?

JOE: Yeah.

LILY: Hi. **It's** Lily.

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.

PAUL SHARP: Oh, **could I speak to** Jane Gordon, please?

RECEPTIONIST: Yes. **Who's calling**, please?

PAUL SHARP: **My name is** Paul Sharp from Bexel Plastics.

RECEPTIONIST: Right, Mr Sharp. **I'm putting you through** [I'm connecting you] ... (pause) ...

JANE GORDON: Hello?

PAUL SHARP: Mrs Gordon?

JANE GORDON: **Speaking**. [Yes, this is Mrs Gordon.]

## Common mistakes

We say: **Is that** Joe? (NOT Are you Joe? or Is it Joe?)

And we say: **It's** Lily. (NOT I am Lily or Here is Lily.)

## B

## Problems on the phone



I tried to **ring** you this morning [phone you] but I think you were **on the phone** to your mother [using the phone].



I think I **dialled** [made a phone call to a particular number] **the wrong number** (e.g. 451 and not 351) this morning – I got a very angry person on the phone!



I **gave her a ring** this morning [phoned her], but I couldn't **get through** [make contact / speak to her]; the line was **engaged** [being used, someone was on the phone].



I **left a message** (e.g. Please ring me) on Dan's **answerphone** as he was **out** [not there; syn **not in**], but he never **phoned** me **back** [returned my phone call], so I don't know if he got my message.

## C

## Phone numbers

Q: What's your **home** phone number? (also **landline**)

A: 603 884

Q: What's your **mobile number**?

A: 07723 259369

Q: What's the **emergency number** for the police, fire or ambulance?

A: 999

Q: What's the **dialling code** for the UK when you are phoning from Hungary?

A: 0044

## D

## Mobile phones and texting

Many people use their mobile **mostly/mainly** [most of the time] for **texting** [sending short written messages from one phone to another]. Do you **text** your friends and family all the time?

These are common text **abbreviations** [letters which represent words].

ASAP = as soon as possible

CU = see you

BF = boyfriend (GF = girlfriend)

IMO = **in my opinion** [this is what I think]

B4 = before

FYI = for your information

2DAY = today

U = you

2MORO = tomorrow

THX = thanks

Y = why?

LOL = laughing out loud

PLS = please

X = kiss

# Exercises

## 53.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 What are two more ways of saying *I called him?*  
*I phoned him.* .....
- 2 You phoned Tom but weren't able to speak to him. What are three possible reasons for this?  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 3 You can ring a phone number. What are three other numbers you can ring?  
..... number ..... number ..... number

## 53.2 Complete the phone conversations.

- A: Hello?
- B: Good morning. Could I <sup>1</sup> speak to ..... Luke James?
- A: Who's <sup>2</sup> ..... , please?
- B: <sup>3</sup> ..... Liam Matthews.
- A: One moment, please. I'm <sup>4</sup> ..... you through.
- C: Hello?
- B: <sup>5</sup> ..... Mr James?
- C: <sup>6</sup> .....
- A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
- B: Yes. I'm trying to contact Oliver Fallow. He left a <sup>7</sup> ..... on my <sup>8</sup> .....
- A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Fallow's <sup>9</sup> ..... at the moment. Can I ask him to <sup>10</sup> ..... you ..... later?
- A: Hello.
- B: Hi. <sup>11</sup> ..... Carlos?
- A: Yeah, speaking.
- B: Hi Carlos. <sup>12</sup> ..... Serena.
- A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring last night.
- B: I did, but I couldn't get <sup>13</sup> ..... ; the line was <sup>14</sup> .....
- A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was <sup>15</sup> ..... the phone to my brother for about an hour.

## 53.3 What do these text abbreviations mean?

- |                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1 GRT = ..... great | 6 FYI = ..... |
| 2 X = .....         | 7 LOL = ..... |
| 3 CU = .....        | 8 THX = ..... |
| 4 IMO = .....       | 9 BF = .....  |
| 5 ASAP = .....      | 10 U = .....  |

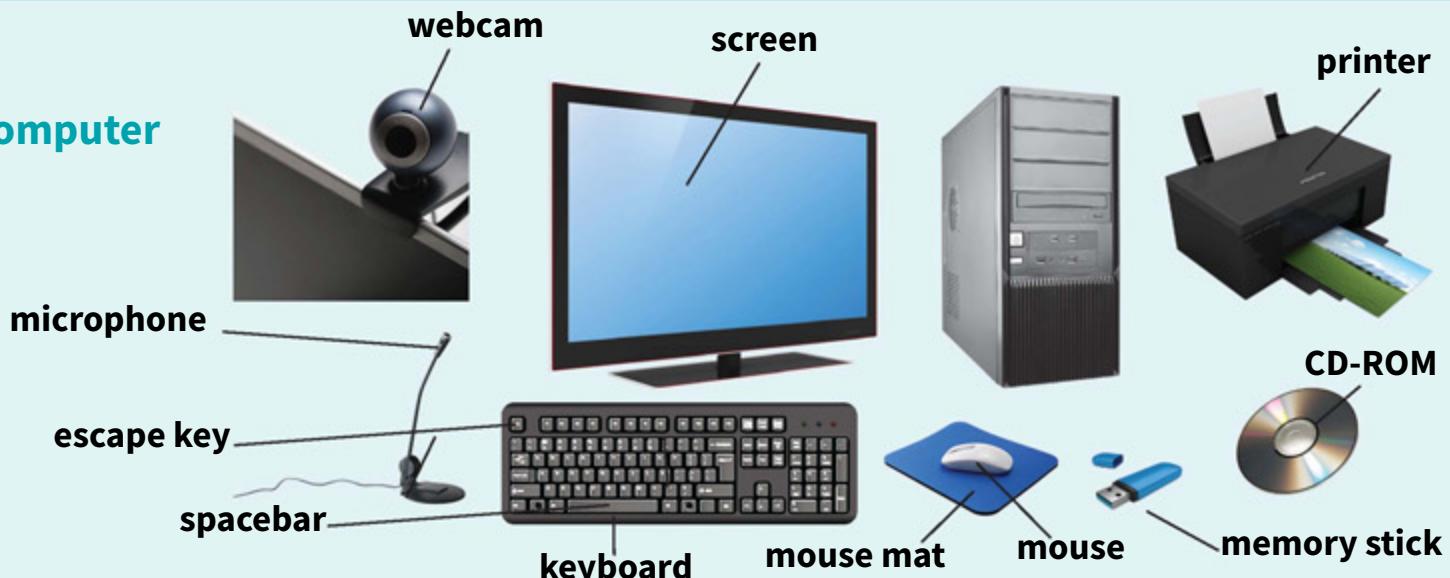
## 53.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 How often do you use a mobile phone? What do you use it for? How often do you text people? Who do you text?
- 2 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
- 3 From your country, what's the international dialling code for the United Kingdom?
- 4 How do you feel about people who use their mobile phone on a train?

## A

## The computer



## B

## Using a computer

After you have **switched on** [turned on] your computer, you may need to **log in/on** (opp **log out/off**) with your **username** and **enter** your **password** [put a special word into the computer that only you know]. If you then **double-click** on an **icon** [a small picture on the screen], you can open an **application** [email, Internet browser, etc.].

Computers can **store** [keep] large amounts of information, but when you're working it is important to **back up** the **files** you are working on [make an extra copy of the files; syn **make a backup**], so you don't lose the files if something goes wrong.



open a new  
document

open an  
existing  
document

save the  
data in this  
document

print

cut

copy

paste

To **create** [make or start] a new document, select new from the **File menu**.

You can **copy** and **paste** information from one file into another.

If you save the document, you can **print it out** later (OR you can get a **hard copy / a printout** later). It is also important to save the document in case the computer **crashes** [suddenly stops working]. Press the Escape key to **exit** [stop using an application].

## C

## FAQs\* about computers

example question	explanation
• Do you have a <b>PC</b> or a <b>laptop</b> ?	PC is short for personal computer; a laptop is a small computer that you can carry around.
• What <b>hard drive</b> do you have?	the part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information (also <b>hard disk</b> )
• What <b>operating system</b> are you using?	computer software, e.g. Windows or Mac OS, that controls how the computer works
• Have you <b>installed</b> any new <b>software</b> ?	put new programs onto your computer
• What software applications are you <b>running</b> ?	What software applications are you using?
• Do you have <b>anti-virus software</b> ?	A <b>virus</b> is a program put on a computer to destroy or steal the information on it. Anti-virus software is a program to stop a virus entering your computer.

\*frequently asked questions

# Exercises

## 54.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |              |                            |            |
|--------------|----------------------------|------------|
| 1 CD-        | <input type="checkbox"/> e | a system   |
| 2 memory     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b on       |
| 3 operating  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c key      |
| 4 hard       | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d software |
| 5 log        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e ROM      |
| 6 anti-virus | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f mat      |
| 7 mouse      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g copy     |
| 8 escape     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | h stick    |



## 54.2 Complete these words.

- 1 soft *ware* ..... 3 key ..... 5 user .....  
2 lap ..... 4 space ..... 6 pass .....

## 54.3 Test your knowledge. Can you remember what these icons mean without looking at the opposite page?



1 open a new document .....

3 .....

5 .....

7 .....



2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

## 54.4 Complete the definitions.

- 1 Computer software that controls how different parts work together is the *operating system* .....
- 2 The part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information is the .....
- 3 A program secretly put on a computer to destroy the information on it is a .....
- 4 A small computer that you can carry round with you is a .....
- 5 The special word you type into your computer that only you know is your .....

## 54.5 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: What do I do when I finish?  
B: You can press the escape key to *exit* .....
- 2 A: How often do you ..... your files?  
B: At the end of every day if I can remember.
- 3 A: Is the data ..... on the hard disk?  
B: Yes, but I always make a .....
- 4 A: Did you ..... the software yourself?  
B: No, I don't understand anything about computers. My wife did it for me.
- 5 A: How do I ..... a new document?  
B: Just select new from the File .....
- 6 A: There was a warning on the news this morning about a new computer .....  
B: Well, I should be OK. I've got ..... software.

## 54.6

Over to you

Do you have a computer? If so, can you answer all the questions in section C on the opposite page?

## A

**Using email**

Think about the way you use email.

- How often do you **check your email** [look to see if you have any messages]?
- How many emails do you send a week? Are they all **essential** [important/necessary]?
- How many emails do you get every week? Do you read them **immediately** [without waiting]?
- How quickly do you **reply to** [answer] the emails you receive?
- Do you **delete** emails **regularly** [remove them from your computer often]?
- Do you get much **spam** [emails that you do not want, usually adverts; also called **junk mail**]?
- Have you got **anti-virus software** [a program that stops a virus entering your computer]?
- How often do you send or receive **attachments**?

**Language help**

In English an email address may be written as pd@freeserve.co.uk, but we say it like this: pd **at** freeserve **dot** co **dot** uk.

## B

**Getting started on the Internet**

To go **on the Internet**, you need an **ISP** (Internet service provider) that will **connect** [join or link] your computer to the Internet and give you **access to** [the ability to use] email and other services. When you **go online** [use the Internet], you can then send and receive emails, or you can **browse** the Internet [look at websites]; you do this using a **browser** such as Internet Explorer or Firefox. Many **websites** also have **links**: if you **click** on a link, it will take you to a different website, or move you from one part of the website to another.

## C

**Using the Internet**

Many people now have Internet **access** and Internet use is changing all the time. These are common uses.

- Students **search** the Internet [look for information on the Internet; also **do an Internet search**] to help with their studies.
- People **download** [copy onto their computer; *opp upload*] information, pictures, music, **video clips** [small parts of a video recording], etc.
- People buy books, clothes and food online, book their holidays online, take out insurance online, etc. People go to a website, select the **item** [product, e.g. a book] they want and click **add to basket/bag**. When they have finished shopping they go to **checkout** and pay for their items, usually with a credit card.
- Some people have a personal website to provide news about a particular subject, or just write about events in their life. These are called **blogs**, and people who write them are **bloggers**.
- Some people just like to spend hours **surfing the web** [looking at different websites].
- Some people spend a lot of time on **social networking sites** [places on the Internet where you can have a discussion with other people, e.g. Facebook, Twitter, etc.]. On these sites people **post** comments [leave messages] to their friends.
- Some people do a lot of **instant messaging** [send and receive messages in real time].



# Exercises

## 55.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                            |                      |
|------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 go       | <input type="checkbox"/> b | a the web            |
| 2 do       | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b online             |
| 3 surf     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c emails             |
| 4 delete   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d on a link          |
| 5 download | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e an Internet search |
| 6 click    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f music              |



## 55.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What can you do when you go online? ..... *Send emails and use the Internet*
- 2 What does ISP stand for? .....
- 3 What does an ISP give you? .....
- 4 What are Safari, Internet Explorer and Firefox? .....
- 5 What do bloggers write about? .....
- 6 What is spam? .....
- 7 How do you say this: Zac@hotmail.com? .....
- 8 What do people do on social networking sites? .....

## 55.3 Complete the dialogues. The first letter of each answer has been given to help you.

- 1 A: A friend of mine has got his own b.....  
B: Oh yeah. What does he write about?
- 2 A: Do you always reply to emails i.....?  
B: Yes. I think it's rude if you don't reply as soon as you receive an email. Don't you do that?  
A: No. I don't reply at once unless it's really e.....
- 3 A: How can I view information about the computers they sell?  
B: Just c..... on that l....., and it will take you to the website which has the details.
- 4 A: Do you have Internet a..... at your school?  
B: We do in school hours, but not before or after school.
- 5 A: I sent you an email earlier with an a..... Did you get it?  
B: Oh, I'm afraid I haven't c..... my email today yet. I'll do it now.
- 6 A: Do you d..... much stuff from the Internet?  
B: Well, music naturally, and I also d..... a few video c.....
- 7 A: I keep getting viruses on my computer.  
B: Ah, you will need to get some a..... -v..... software.
- 8 A: Do you delete emails r.....?  
B: Yes, every day. I have to, because I receive so many, and most of them aren't important.

## 55.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Do you go on the Internet? If so, what are your favourite websites?
- 2 Do you have a blog or read other people's? Whose blog do you read?
- 3 Do you download material from the Internet? What do you download?
- 4 Do you watch video clips on the Internet? What video clips do you watch?
- 5 Do you use social networking sites or instant messaging? Which websites do you use? Who do you talk to?

## A

## Different crimes

A **crime** is an activity that is wrong and not allowed by law. A person who **commits a crime** is a **criminal**.

crime	person	verb
<b>theft</b> [stealing something, e.g. a car]	<b>thief</b>	<b>steal/take</b> (something)
<b>robbery</b> [stealing from a person or place, e.g. a bank]	<b>robber</b>	<b>rob</b> (someone, a place)
<b>burglary</b> [getting into a building, usually someone's home, and stealing something]	<b>burglar</b>	<b>steal</b> something <b>burgle</b> (a place)
<b>murder</b> [killing someone]	<b>murderer</b>	<b>murder</b>

Someone's **stolen/taken** my handbag.  
I don't know who **robbed** me.  
Our flat was **burgled**, but they only took money.

There's been another **burglary** in the area.  
Did you hear about the **bank robbery** yesterday?  
Do they know who **murdered** the boy?

## B

## Reporting crimes in the media

**Two women robbed a jeweller's shop in West London early this morning. They broke in<sup>1</sup> around 7 o'clock and stole jewellery worth<sup>2</sup> over £10,000.**

<sup>1</sup> entered the building using force, e.g. broke a window

<sup>2</sup> with a value of

The two men **attacked**<sup>3</sup> Mr Crawford while he was walking home yesterday afternoon. Police say the two men hit him in the face several times, then took his money and **escaped**<sup>4</sup> through Bushy Park.

<sup>3</sup> used physical violence to hurt him

<sup>4</sup> left the place to avoid danger; syn **got away**

<sup>5</sup> police officers who try to find information to solve crimes

<sup>6</sup> If you **arrest** someone, you take them to the police station because you believe they committed a crime. That person is then **under arrest**.

## BREAKING NEWS

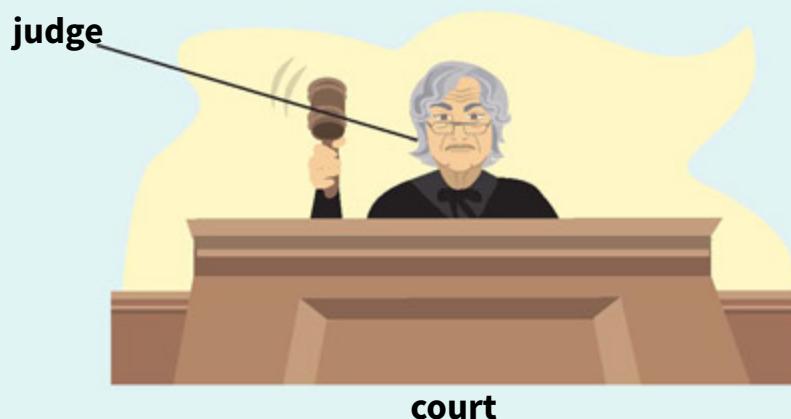
**Detectives**<sup>5</sup> **arrested**<sup>6</sup> a man this morning in connection with the murder of shop assistant, Tracey Miles.

→ [Read full story](#)

## C

## Punishment\*

If you commit a crime and the police **catch** you [find you and arrest you], you will be **punished**. For **minor offences** [crimes that are not very important; opp **serious**], the punishment may only be a **fine** [money you have to pay], but for serious crimes, you will have to go to **court**. If you are found **guilty** [the **judge**, or a **jury** of 12 people, decides you committed the crime; opp **innocent**], you may be sent to **prison** (syn **jail**).



\* what a person must suffer if they do something wrong

# Exercises

## 56.1 Test your knowledge. Can you complete this table without looking at the opposite page?

noun	person	verb
crime	<i>criminal</i>	
murder		
theft		
robbery		
burglary		

## 56.2 Find five more pairs of words that have a similar meaning.

catch theft crime jail prison arrest get away  
steal offence hit escape attack

*catch – arrest*

## 56.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Is it being decided by a judge?  
B: No, there will be a *jury*.....
- 2 A: Have the police caught the man?  
B: Yes, he's under ..... .
- 3 A: Is she guilty?  
B: No, the jury found her .....
- 4 A: He killed his wife?  
B: Yes, he's under arrest for .....
- 5 A: Was it a serious crime?  
B: No, just a minor .....
- 6 A: Will she go to prison?  
B: No, she just has to pay a .....
- 7 A: Have you ever broken the law?  
B: Yes, but I've never committed a serious .....
- 8 A: How do you think he will be ..... ?  
B: Well, it wasn't a very serious crime, so it'll probably be a fine.

## 56.4 Complete the news report.

The smartphone screen displays a news article from a mobile app. The top navigation bar shows 'NEWS' and other categories like 'World | Politics | Finance | Tech | Sports'. The battery level is at 80%. The article is titled 'TODAY BRISTOL FASHION THEFT'. It features a photograph of a mannequin wearing a patterned shirt. The text of the article is as follows:

Two men are <sup>1</sup> *under* arrest for <sup>2</sup> ..... clothes from a warehouse\* in Bristol. The two men <sup>3</sup> ..... into the warehouse late yesterday evening, <sup>4</sup> ..... the guard and tied him up, then <sup>5</sup> ..... a collection of expensive designer outfits <sup>6</sup> ..... over £40,000. A passer-by saw lights on in the warehouse and rang the police, but the two men managed to <sup>7</sup> ..... through a back door and then drove off with the stolen clothes. However, one of the men was later caught and <sup>8</sup> ..... at his home, and <sup>9</sup> ..... caught the second man just hours later hiding at a friend's house. Both men have now been charged with <sup>10</sup> ..... and will appear before a judge in <sup>11</sup> ..... on Monday. If they are found <sup>12</sup> ..... , the two men will go to <sup>13</sup> ..... for a number of years. The guard who was attacked has now been released from hospital.

\* A warehouse is a large building for storing goods that are going to be sold.

## A

**Elections in the UK**

When you **vote for** someone, you choose them by putting a cross (X) on an official piece of paper (called a **secret ballot** because no one knows who you vote for), or by putting up your hand. In the UK, a **general election** is when the people **elect**<sup>1</sup> the next **government**<sup>2</sup>. These **elections** are **held**<sup>3</sup> at least every five years. Each **constituency**<sup>4</sup> elects one person from one **political party**. That person then becomes the **MP** (Member of Parliament) for that area, and the political party with the most MPs – there are 650 at the moment – forms the next government. The **leader**<sup>5</sup> of the party **in power**<sup>6</sup> is the **Prime Minister**.

<sup>1</sup> choose by voting

<sup>2</sup> the group of people who control the country

<sup>3</sup> organised

<sup>4</sup> an area where people vote

<sup>5</sup> the person in control

<sup>6</sup> in control (of the country)

## Language help

noun	person	adjective
politics	<b>politician</b>	<b>political</b>
power		<b>powerful</b>

## B

**Political policies**

People usually vote for a political party because they **believe in** the party's ideas [think the ideas are good or right], and these ideas become **policies** [sets of plans and ideas that a political party has agreed on].

<sup>1</sup> give something to those who need it (also **provide** someone **with** something)

<sup>2</sup> looking after people, especially old people

<sup>3</sup> help (sometimes in the form of money)

<sup>4</sup> old

<sup>5</sup> make less; *syn* **cut**

<sup>6</sup> dealing with everyone in the same way; *opp* **unfair**

<sup>7</sup> money people must pay the government

<sup>8</sup> most importantly

<sup>9</sup> behave or deal with someone in a particular way

<sup>10</sup> having the same importance; *adv* **equally**

## Language help

verb	noun
believe in sth	<b>belief</b>
reduce	<b>reduction</b>

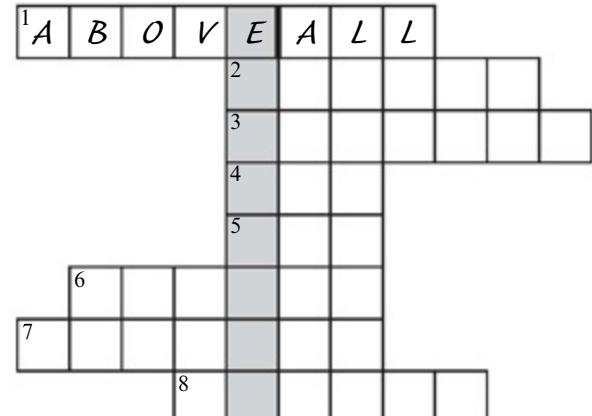
# Exercises

## 57.1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| 1 Have they set the date for the <i>election</i> ..... | ELECT    |
| 2 Employment is an important ..... issue.              | POLITICS |
| 3 My political ..... are important to me.              | BELIEVE  |
| 4 The president is a very ..... man.                   | POWER    |
| 5 I hope there will be a ..... in my tax.              | REDUCE   |
| 6 Do you believe what ..... say?                       | POLITICS |

## 57.2 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- 1 Most importantly
- 2 Person in control of a political party
- 3 Another word for 'old'
- 4 A synonym for 'reduce'
- 5 Money people must pay to the government
- 6 A set of plans and ideas that a group agree on
- 7 Help, often in the form of money
- 8 Not fair



## 57.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 They are in control of the country.     | They are in <i>power</i> ..... |
| 2 They elected her.                       | They voted .....               |
| 3 Elections take place every five years.  | Elections are .....            |
| 4 They will give hospitals more money.    | They will provide .....        |
| 5 No one knows who you vote for.          | It's a secret .....            |
| 6 It's a fair system for everyone.        | The system treats .....        |
| 7 Our policy is to look after old people. | Our policy is to provide ..... |

## 57.4 Complete the text.

In Canada, <sup>1</sup> *elections* ..... work in a similar way to the UK. Canada is divided into 308 political <sup>2</sup> ..... , but they are called 'ridings' in Canada, and altogether there are 19 registered <sup>3</sup> ..... parties in the country. <sup>4</sup> ..... are held every five years, and people <sup>5</sup> ..... for just one person in each riding to become their member of <sup>6</sup> ..... . The <sup>7</sup> ..... that wins the most ridings is then asked by the Governor-General to form the next <sup>8</sup> ..... , and the leader of that party becomes <sup>9</sup> ..... Minister.

## 57.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 How many major political parties are there in your country?
- 2 Which party is in power at the moment?
- 3 When were they elected?
- 4 Who is the leader of this party?
- 5 Did you vote in this election?

## 57.6 Over to you

Look at the policies in section B on the opposite page. What do you think of them? If you were in power, would you have these policies? What policies would you have? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

## A

## The problem

To stop global warming from **destroying**<sup>12</sup> our **environment**<sup>13</sup>, we need to act now.

Many **greenhouse gases**, e.g. carbon dioxide, methane and ozone, **exist**<sup>1</sup> naturally and are needed to **create**<sup>2</sup> the **greenhouse effect** that keeps the Earth warm enough to **support**<sup>3</sup> human life. However, the use of **fossil fuels**, e.g. **oil**, natural gas and coal, has produced **excessive**<sup>4</sup> amounts of greenhouse gases, and the **result**<sup>5</sup> is **global warming**: an increase in the average temperature on Earth. Of the 15 warmest years **on record**<sup>6</sup>, 14 have **occurred**<sup>7</sup> since 2000.

The **effects**<sup>8</sup> of **climate change** can already be seen in our everyday lives. Summers are getting hotter and winters are getting wetter, so **drought**<sup>9</sup> and **floods**<sup>10</sup> are becoming more common. With it, animal and plant life is **suffering**<sup>11</sup> – some species will disappear altogether – and certain illnesses, e.g. hay fever, asthma and skin cancer, are becoming more common.

<sup>1</sup> are real or present<sup>2</sup> make something happen or exist<sup>3</sup> help (human life) to continue<sup>4</sup> more than you want or need<sup>5</sup> something that happens because of something else that has happened<sup>6</sup> If information is **on record**, it has been written down or kept on a computer.<sup>7</sup> happened; *fml*<sup>8</sup> a change or result that is caused by something<sup>9</sup> a long time without rain when people do not have enough water<sup>10</sup> when water covers an area that is usually dry, often from too much rain<sup>11</sup> experiencing something which is unpleasant<sup>12</sup> damaging something so badly that it does not exist or cannot be used<sup>13</sup> the air, land and water around us

## B

## The solution\* – or part of it

To **reduce** global warming [make it less], the nations of the world will have to **act** together [do something to solve a problem; *syn take action*]. In the meantime, individuals can also help.

- 1 Don't **throw** things **away** – **recycle** paper, glass, plastic, etc. so that it can be used again.
- 2 **Save**<sup>1</sup> **energy**<sup>2</sup> e.g. **switch off** lights when you leave a room.
- 3 Don't **waste**<sup>3</sup> water, e.g. turn off the **tap** when you are brushing your teeth.
- 4 Change **light bulbs** for more **energy-efficient**<sup>4</sup> ones.
- 5 Drive less and walk more.
- 6 **Plant trees**<sup>5</sup> because trees reduce the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, and so reduce greenhouse gases.

<sup>\*</sup> the answer to a problem<sup>1</sup> don't waste<sup>2</sup> gas and electricity<sup>3</sup> use it badly<sup>4</sup> working well and not wasting energy<sup>5</sup> put a new tree in the ground

# Exercises

## 58.1 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

- |          |   |           |   |
|----------|---|-----------|---|
| 1 global | Is it like <u>go</u> or <u>got</u> ? <i>gəʊ</i> | 4 drought | Is it like <u>no</u> or <u>now</u> ?              |
| 2 flood  | Is it like <u>foot</u> or <u>fun</u> ?          | 5 suffer  | Is it like <u>son</u> or <u>soon</u> ?            |
| 3 fuel   | Is it like <u>food</u> or <u>few</u> ?          | 6 climate | Is it like <u>educate</u> or <u>comfortable</u> ? |

## 58.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                  |                            |           |
|------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| 1 the greenhouse | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a warming |
| 2 global         | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b change  |
| 3 fossil         | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c effect  |
| 4 greenhouse     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d fuels   |
| 5 climate        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e gases   |

## 58.3 How can we help with global warming? Cover the opposite page and complete the text.

- Don't<sup>1</sup> ..... paper, glass and plastic; <sup>2</sup> ..... it.
- Don't<sup>3</sup> ..... water: turn off the<sup>4</sup> ..... when you brush your teeth.
- <sup>5</sup> ..... energy by<sup>6</sup> ..... off lights when you leave a room.
- <sup>7</sup> ..... trees in order to<sup>8</sup> ..... the amount of carbon dioxide.
- <sup>9</sup> ..... action now, before it's too late.

## 58.4 Complete the explanations.

- 1 We don't have to create greenhouse gases; they *exist* ..... naturally.
- 2 Greenhouse gases in the atmosphere ..... the greenhouse effect.
- 3 Global warming is the ..... of an increase in the amount of greenhouse gases.
- 4 Two ..... of climate change have been hotter summers and wetter winters.
- 5 A ..... is often the result of too much rain when the rivers are full.
- 6 A ..... is a long period without rain, and they are ..... more frequently now.
- 7 The ..... is the air, land and water around us.
- 8 If you ..... something, it is so badly damaged, it cannot be used again.
- 9 If something is ..... , it works well and doesn't waste energy.
- 10 ..... is the power that comes from gas, electricity, etc.

## 58.5 Complete the tables. Use a dictionary to help you.

verb	noun	verb	noun
recycle	<i>recycling</i>		solution
waste		reduce	
destroy		support	
exist		suffer	

## 58.6 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, talk to someone else about the problems.

- 1 Can you see the effects of global warming and climate change in your country? What do you see?
- 2 What things do people recycle every week?
- 3 Do you think you often waste water and energy? How?
- 4 What more could you do to solve the problem? Does it worry you?

## A

## The job of the army



These men are **soldiers**, and they are **carrying guns**<sup>1</sup>. They are members of an **army**, and part of the responsibility of an army is to **defend** their country from **attack**<sup>2</sup> and to **protect** the people<sup>3</sup>. Sometimes this means they have to **fight** the **enemy**<sup>4</sup>. A long period of fighting is called a **war**, e.g. the First World War, 1914–1918, and during a war there will be a number of **battles**<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> have guns with them

<sup>2</sup> stop others who use violence against their country

<sup>3</sup> keep them safe

<sup>4</sup> the people they are fighting against

<sup>5</sup> fights between two armies

## Language help

**Violence** is when someone tries to hurt or kill someone; the adjective is **violent**.

*The violence has increased in recent weeks; There have been a number of violent attacks.*

## B

## Reporting in war

**BREAKING NEWS**  
**Recent Bombing**

Ten people were **killed** and many more were injured when a **bomb exploded** (see picture) in **the heart of**<sup>1</sup> the city. The attack happened just before midday, and **destroyed**<sup>2</sup> several buildings. The army are now **searching**<sup>3</sup> the area where the attack **took place**<sup>4</sup>. Most of the attackers **escaped**<sup>5</sup>, but the army believe they may still be **hiding**<sup>6</sup> in other parts of the city.

During the attack, one soldier was **shot**<sup>7</sup> and later died. It also appears that another soldier is **missing**<sup>8</sup>. The number of **deaths**<sup>9</sup> is expected to rise.

<sup>1</sup> the centre of

<sup>2</sup> damaged them so badly that they don't exist now;  
NOT completely damaged

<sup>3</sup> trying to find someone or something

<sup>4</sup> happened

<sup>5</sup> left the place without being caught; syn **get away**

<sup>6</sup> staying in a place where you cannot be seen or found

<sup>7</sup> injured by a gun

<sup>8</sup> It isn't known where someone or something is.

<sup>9</sup> people who are dead / have **died**

## Language help

Several words in the unit can be used as verbs and nouns with a similar meaning.

*They're **searching** for them.*

*They're continuing their **search** for them.*

*He can't **escape**.*

*There is no **escape**.*

*When did they **attack**?*

*Where did the **attack** take place?*

# Exercises

## 59.1 Are these words nouns, verbs, or nouns and verbs?

protect	<i>verb</i>	shoot	.....
search	<i>noun and verb</i>	war	.....
die	.....	defend	.....
attack	.....	escape	.....
death	.....	hide	.....

## 59.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- 1 The soldiers have been *fighting* ..... for days, and so far three have been injured.
- 2 The woman was ..... with a small handgun, but wasn't seriously injured.
- 3 One of the soldiers managed to ..... under the house where no one could find him.
- 4 There are 20 soldiers surrounding the house, so the men inside cannot .....
- 5 The bomb ..... inside the café. Nobody was ..... but several people were injured.
- 6 I understand the army are ..... houses in an effort to find the gunman.
- 7 The bomb completely ..... the building, but fortunately no one was inside at the time.
- 8 My men had to ..... the village from outside attacks.
- 9 Were the police ..... guns when they saw the men?

## 59.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 One man was found but the other is still *lost* / *missing*.
- 2 The *battle* / *war* lasted for two hours.
- 3 The attack happened in the *heart* / *centre* of the city.
- 4 One of the buildings was completely *damaged* / *destroyed*.
- 5 Three of the men are *died* / *dead*.
- 6 One woman *escaped* / *got away*.
- 7 The boy was badly injured and later *died* / *killed*.
- 8 Some of the policemen are not allowed to *hold* / *carry* guns.
- 9 They don't know who *shoot* / *shot* the man.

## 59.4 Complete the text.

The <sup>1</sup> *attack* ..... happened early this morning. The <sup>2</sup> ..... were out on patrol when they saw the <sup>3</sup> ..... about half a mile away. Moments later a <sup>4</sup> ..... exploded quite close to them, and was followed by a <sup>5</sup> ..... gun battle which lasted two hours. Two soldiers were <sup>6</sup> ..... and several were injured. An <sup>7</sup> ..... captain said that they have now taken control of the area where the attack <sup>8</sup> .....

## 59.5 Use a dictionary to develop these word families, and write example sentences for the new words.

verb	noun	example
protect	<i>protection</i>	<i>The army gave the families protection.</i>
destroy		
explode		
defend		

## A

**Phrases with time**

We got to the meeting **in time** [before the meeting started].  
 My brother is always **on time** [not early or late].  
**It's time (for us) to** go. [used to say that something should happen now]  
 Do you **have time for** a cup of coffee? [have enough time to do something]  
 Call me **the next time** you're in London. [on the next occasion]  
 The weather was wonderful **the last time** we were there. [on the last occasion]  
 Sophie and I arrived **at the same time**, 9 o'clock exactly.

## B

**Time prepositions often confused**

I'll be here **until** 4.30. [I won't leave before 4.30]  
 I'll be there **by** 8.15. [not later than 8.15]  
 I've worked here **for** six months. (*for* + a period of time, e.g. a week, ten days, two years)  
 I've worked here **since** May. (*since* + a point in time in the past, e.g. last Friday, March, 2011)  
 I worked on a farm **during** the summer. (this tells you 'when')  
 I worked on a farm **for** a month. (this tells you 'how long') (NOT **during** a month)  
 I'm going back to Brazil **in** ten days' **time** [ten days from now]. (NOT **after** ten days)

## C

**Approximate periods of time – past, present and future***Past*

I've known Lucia **for ages** [for a long time, e.g. many years].  
 I haven't been to the dentist **recently/lately** [e.g. in the last few months].  
 I saw Tom **recently** [e.g. a few weeks ago / not long ago].  
 I used to go skiing, but that was **a long time ago** [e.g. 5–10 years ago; *syn ages ago*].  
 My sister went to the zoo **the other day** [e.g. a few days ago, perhaps a week].

*Present*

I don't see my brother much **these days** [a period including the past and now; *syn nowadays*].

*Future*

This dictionary's fine **for the time being** [for now / the near future – but not for a long time].  
 I'm sure I'll go to America **one day** [in the future but I don't know when].

## D

**Counting time**

There are 60 **seconds** in a minute; 60 minutes in an hour; 24 hours in a day; 7 days in a week; 2 weeks in a **fortnight**; 52 weeks in a year; 10 years in a **decade**; 100 years in a **century**.

## E

**Take and last**

We use **take** to say how long we need to do something.

**It takes me** half an hour to get to school.

We can walk, but it'll **take (us)** a long time.

We use **last** to talk about how long something continues, from the beginning to the end.

The course **lasts for** ten weeks.

How long does the film **last**?

The battery in my camera didn't **last long** [continue for a long time].

# Exercises

## 60.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'll see you the next ..... time I come to London.
- 2 The shop closes at 5.30. If we don't hurry, we'll never get there ..... time.
- 3 I always get to meetings ..... time; I hate it when people are late.
- 4 I'm afraid I won't ..... time to see you this week.
- 5 I'll have to go soon. It's time ..... me to pick up the children from school.
- 6 Julian and I got to the station at the ..... time.

## 60.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'll see you in / after ten days' time.
- 2 The teacher told us to finish our homework by / until Monday.
- 3 We can't leave by / until the others get back.
- 4 I've been in the army for / since I was eighteen.
- 5 They've worked here for / since / during six months.
- 6 I visit my uncle every week for / since / during the winter.
- 7 I was at university for / since / during three years.
- 8 She's going back to France in / after three months' time.
- 9 I haven't seen them for / since last Thursday.

## 60.3 Replace the underlined words with more 'approximate' time expressions.

- 1 I had my hair cut two weeks ago. recently .....
- 2 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago. .....
- 3 I went to the library three days ago. .....
- 4 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks. .....
- 5 I haven't been to a concert for three or four years. .....
- 6 This computer will be fine for the next year. .....

## 60.4 Test your general knowledge. Can you complete these sentences with the correct number or period of time?

- 1 Michael Jackson died in 2009.
- 2 The Olympic Games usually last about a .....
- 3 Picasso was born in the ..... th century, and died in the ..... th century.
- 4 President Kennedy died in ..... That's over ..... years ago.
- 5 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from London to New York.
- 6 The best athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.
- 7 The ..... was the decade in which the USA and USSR were trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

## 60.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 I've been in my present school/university/job for .....
- 2 It takes me ..... to get to school/university/work.
- 3 A typical school/college/working day for me lasts .....
- 4 I've been studying English since .....
- 5 I haven't actually spoken English since .....
- 6 I saw ..... the other day.
- 7 Nowadays I don't .....
- 8 One day I hope .....

## A

## Cardinal numbers

379 = three **hundred** and seventy-nine  
 5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four  
 2,000,000 = two **million**

2,860 = two **thousand**, eight hundred and sixty  
 470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand  
 3,000,000,000 = three **billion**

## Language help

There is no plural ‘s’ after *hundred*, *thousand*, *million* and *billion* when they are part of a number. When we are talking generally, they are plural, e.g. **thousands** of people, **millions** of insects.

## B

## Dates

With dates, we write them and say them in a different way. We can write **4 June** or **June 4<sup>th</sup>**, but say **the fourth of June** or **June the fourth**. We can write **21 May** or **May 21<sup>st</sup>**, but say **the twenty-first of May** or **May the twenty-first**. 1997 = **nineteen ninety-seven**; 2016 = **two thousand and sixteen** or **twenty sixteen**

## Common mistakes

The **seventh** of April (NOT The seven April); the **fourth** question (NOT the four question)

## C

## Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$  = one and **a quarter**

1.25 = one **point** two five

$1\frac{1}{2}$  = one and **a half**

1.5 = one point five

$1\frac{3}{4}$  = one and **three quarters**

1.75 = one point seven five

## D

## Percentages

26% is spoken as twenty-six **per cent**. More than 50% of something is the **majority of** it, less than 50% of something is the **minority**:

The **vast majority** of the students (e.g. 95%) agreed with the new plan, only a **small minority** (e.g. 5%) were unhappy.

## E

## Calculations

There are four basic processes. Notice how they are said when we are **working out** [trying to **calculate**] the answer.

+ = **addition** e.g.  $6 + 4 = 10$  (six **plus/and** four **equals/is** ten)

- = **subtraction** e.g.  $6 - 4 = 2$  (six **minus** four is two)

× = **multiplication** e.g.  $6 \times 4 = 24$  (six **multiplied by / times** four is twenty-four)

÷ = **division** e.g.  $8 \div 2 = 4$  (eight **divided by** two is four)

Some people are not very good at **adding up** numbers [putting numbers together to reach a total], and often **get stuck** [have a problem] if they have to work out something quite difficult. The easiest way is to use a **calculator** [a small electronic machine for working out numbers].

## F

## Saying ‘0’

‘0’ can be spoken in different ways in different situations:

telephone number: 603449 = six **oh** three, **double** four nine OR six **zero** three, **double** four nine

mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven; 6.02 = six point **oh** two OR six point **nought** two

temperature: –10 degrees = ten degrees below **zero** OR **minus** ten degrees

# Exercises

## 61.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write the answers in words, then practise saying them.

- 1 462
- 2 2½
- 3 2,345
- 4 0.25
- 5 1,250,000
- 6 10.04
- 7 47%
- 8 10 September
- 9 940338 (phone number)
- 10 -5 Celsius
- 11 in 1996
- 12 2012

*four hundred and sixty-two*

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 61.2 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Two thousand and five hundred. *Two thousand, five hundred*
- 2 After the game, I heard that the crowd was over twenty thousands. *.....*
- 3 We arrived on the seven June. *.....*
- 4 There were two hundred twenty altogether. *.....*
- 5 My birthday is the thirty-one August. *.....*
- 6 My phone number is seven twenty-three, six nought nine. *.....*

## 61.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Eight *multipled* ..... by seven is fifty-six.
- 2 The ..... were in favour of the new airport; about 80%, I think.
- 3 A small ..... did not support the idea, but it was only 5%.
- 4 I'm not very good at arithmetic. I always have to use a .....
- 5 When I tried to add ..... all the numbers, I couldn't ..... it out.
- 6 I can do simple calculations, but I get ..... if the numbers are very big.

## 61.4 Can you work out the answers? If you find it difficult, use paper or a calculator.

- 1 23 and 36 is *fifty-nine* .....
- 2 24 times 3 is ..... .
- 3 80 minus 20 is ..... .
- 4 65 divided by 13 is ..... .
- 5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 3, then subtract 15 and divide by 11. What number is left?  
.....
- 6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left?  
.....

## 61.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

- 1 When were you born? .....
- 2 How tall are you? .....
- 3 What's the number of the flat or house where you live? .....
- 4 When's your birthday? .....
- 5 What's the approximate population of your town? .....
- 6 What's your body temperature? .....

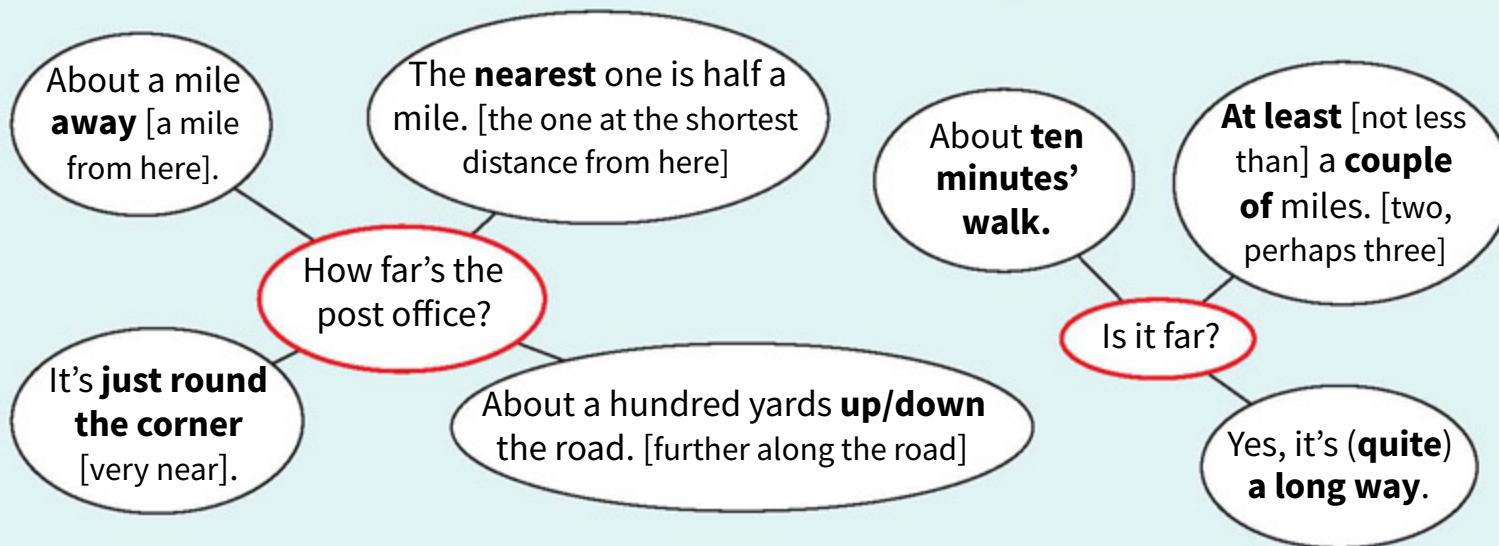
## A

## Distance: how far ...

British people buy most things in metres, centimetres and millimetres, but they still often talk about distance using the old system of **miles** [1 mile = about 1.6 kilometres], **yards** [1 yard = almost 1 metre], **feet** [1 foot = 30 centimetres], and **inches** [1 inch = 2.5 centimetres].

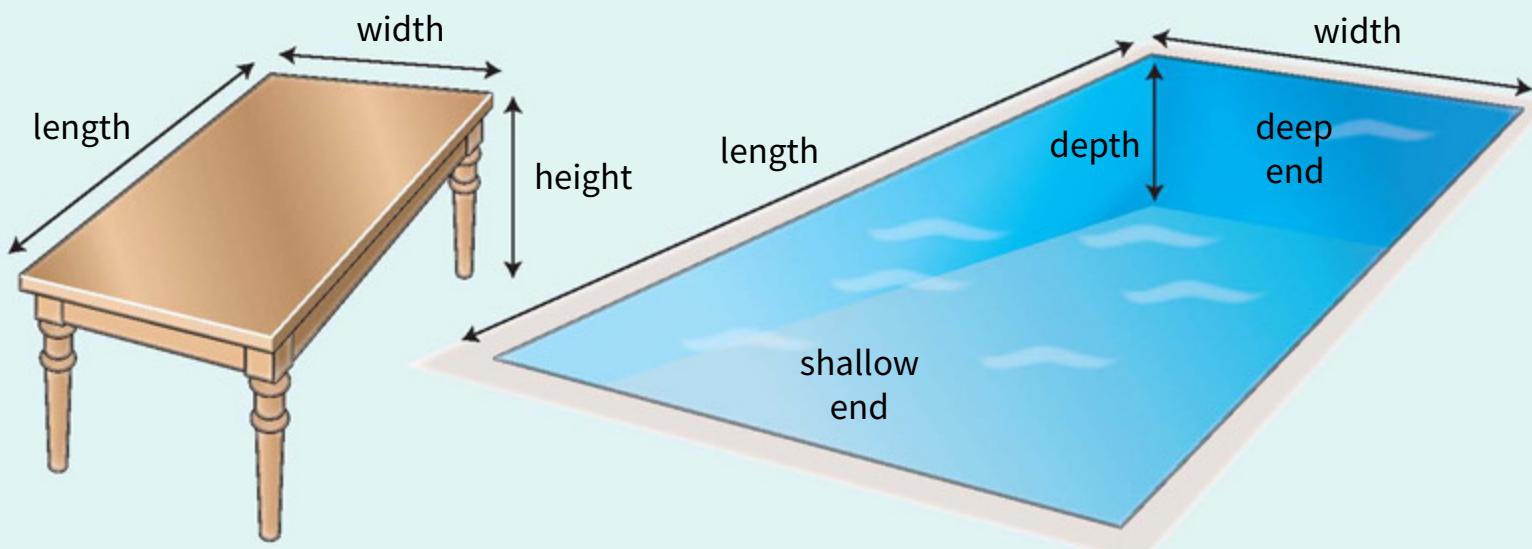
## Common mistakes

It's ten minutes' walk from here.  
(NOT ten minutes' walking.)  
It's a long way. (NOT It's far.) But we can say 'No, it isn't far.'



## B

## Dimensions: how long or wide ...



## Common mistakes

Mason is quite **tall** (NOT quite **high**). It's a **tall** tree/building (NOT a **high** tree/building). It's a **high** mountain (NOT a **tall** mountain).

We can ask about the dimensions like this:

- What's the **length** of the garage? OR How **long** is the garage?  
What's the **width** of the path? OR How **wide** is the path?  
What's the **height** of the wall? OR How **high** is the wall?  
What's the **depth** of the pool? OR How **deep** is the pool?

- It's five metres (**long**).  
It's a metre (**wide**).  
It's two metres (**high**).  
It's three metres (**deep**).

## C

## Size: how big or small ...

We use a range of adjectives to describe the size of something.

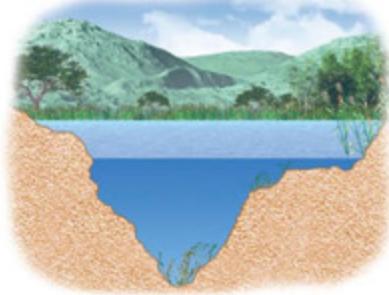
- It was a very **thick** book – over 500 pages. (opp a **thin** book)  
Their living room is **huge** [very big; syn **enormous**; opp a **tiny** room].  
We caught a **giant** crab. [very large or bigger than other similar things]  
It was a very **narrow** road for a bus. (opp a **wide** road)

# Exercises

## 62.1 Disagree with the speaker in each dialogue.

- 1 A: It's only a thin book, isn't it?  
B: No, .....*it's quite thick*.
- 2 A: The water's deep in the middle, isn't it?  
B: No, .....
- 3 A: Is the road very wide at that point?  
B: No, .....
- 4 A: James is quite short, isn't he?  
B: No, .....
- 5 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?  
B: No, .....
- 6 A: Is it a really huge pool?  
B: No, .....

## 62.2 Complete the questions (in two ways) about the lake, the mountain, the woman and the football pitch.



- 1 How ..... is the lake?
- 2 What's ..... the lake?
- 3 How ..... is the mountain?
- 4 What's ..... the mountain?
- 5 How ..... is she?
- 6 What's her ..... ?
- 7 How ..... is the pitch?
- 8 What's ..... the pitch?

## 62.3

### Over to you

Think about the building you are in now, and answer the questions using expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 How far is it to the nearest shop? .....
- 2 How far is it to a bank? .....
- 3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop? .....
- 4 Is it very far to a post office? .....
- 5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool? .....
- 6 Is it a long way to the next big town? .....
- 7 How far is the nearest train station? .....
- 8 Is it far to the centre of town? .....

## A

Objects<sup>1</sup> and materials<sup>2</sup><sup>1</sup> things you can see or touch<sup>2</sup> what something is made of or from

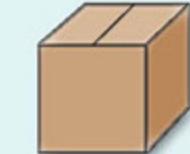
object	material	description
1 a <b>bell</b>	<b>metal</b>	used in hotel receptions
2 a chair	wood	an <b>antique</b> [an object that is old and often rare or beautiful]
3 a hat	<b>fur</b>	made from a <b>real</b> animal
4 a <b>bone</b>	<b>rubber</b>	a <b>toy</b> for dogs
5 a <b>flag</b>	cloth, e.g. cotton	the Italian <b>national</b> flag
6 a shirt	<b>cotton</b>	it has red <b>stripes</b>
7 a top	<b>silk</b>	beautifully soft and stylish
8 a sofa	<b>leather</b>	<b>stylish</b> [fashionable and attractive]
9 a <b>ladder</b>	metal	light and easy to carry
10 a <b>tissue</b>	paper	a soft piece of paper that you use for cleaning your nose
11 a <b>bucket</b>	<b>plastic</b>	used to clean floors

## Language help

Most of the materials above can be adjectives or nouns, e.g. *a cotton shirt*, or *a shirt made of cotton*; *a leather sofa*, or *a sofa made of leather*. The exception is wood: a chair made of wood is a **wooden chair**.

## B

## Shapes and colours

a **grey square**a **pink star**a **navy blue circle**a **green semi-circle**a **purple heart**a **round** balla **square** boxshoes with **pointed** toes

## Language help

When we want to say that a shape is 'almost round' or a colour is 'a sort of green', we can also express this idea with the suffix **-ish**, e.g. *She had a **roundish** face*; *He wore a **greenish** tie*.

# Exercises

## 63.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

bell circle pink silk flag grey cotton purple  
plastic bucket fur ladder square navy blue

objects	materials	shapes	colours
bell			

## 63.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |             |                                       |                                |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 a plastic | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> d | a scarf                        |
| 2 a silk    | <input type="checkbox"/>              | b hat                          |
| 3 a rubber  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | c belt                         |
| 4 a fur     | <input type="checkbox"/>              | d toy                          |
| 5 a cotton  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | e tyre (on the wheel of a car) |
| 6 a leather | <input type="checkbox"/>              | f T-shirt                      |

## 63.3 Label the objects, and their shape or colour.



1 a grey sofa .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 63.4 Which object is being described?

- 1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you write with. a pencil .....
- 2 It's a shellfish. It is usually grey, but it goes pink when you cook it. .....
- 3 It can be metal or plastic and you often put water in it to wash floors. .....
- 4 It is usually made of wood or metal, and you climb up it. .....
- 5 At certain times of the month it's round; at others, it's closer to a semi-circle. .....
- 6 An adult human body has 206 of these. .....

## 63.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you wear shoes with pointed toes?
- 2 What clothes do you have that are pink, purple or navy blue?
- 3 Do you wear anything that has stripes? If so, what?
- 4 Do you have any clothes that are made from silk or fur?
- 5 What things do you own that are made of leather?

## A

## Containers and contents\*

a **bag of** shoppinga **bottle of** apple juicea **jar of** jama **bowl of** sugara **jug of** watera **box of** chocolatesa **packet of** biscuitsa **packet of** crispsa **can of** colaa **carton of** orange juicea **tube of** toothpastea **vase of** flowersa **tin of** fruita **bar of** chocolate

\* the things inside something

## Language help

A **tin** usually has something we eat inside it; a **can** has something we drink.

## B

## Quantities\*

Just a **drop of** milk [a very small amount] and no sugar in my coffee, please.

I've cut three **slices of** beef; that should be enough for the sandwiches. (Or three **pieces of** beef)

three **slices of** beef



I took my boss a **bunch of** flowers when I visited her in hospital.

I need a **sheet of** paper. (Or a **piece/bit of** paper)

Andrew bought two **pairs of** trousers and a pair of shoes yesterday.

two **sheets of** paper

I bought a **couple of** books. [two, perhaps three]

We saw **several** churches on our way here. [some but not a lot, e.g. between three and eight]



I bought **half a dozen** eggs at the supermarket. [six]

There are a **dozen** students in the class. [twelve]

a **spoonful of** sugar

Could I have a **spoonful of** sugar in my tea?



We've got **plenty of** time. [a lot of]

**a bunch of** keys

The company is now making the toys **in large quantities**.

\* the amount or number of something



## Language help

We can usually use **slice** when talking about pieces of bread, cakes and meat. We can use **bunch** to talk about flowers, grapes, bananas and keys.

# Exercises

## 64.1 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 <u>tin</u> Is it like <u>fine</u> or <u>wind</u> ? <i>wind</i> | 5 <u>couple</u> Is it like <u>pool</u> or <u>cup</u> ? <i>pool</i>   |
| 2 <u>pair</u> Is it like <u>car</u> or <u>care</u> ? <i>car</i>  | 6 <u>dozen</u> Is it like <u>run</u> or <u>rob</u> ? <i>run</i>      |
| 3 <u>vase</u> Is it like <u>far</u> or <u>face</u> ? <i>far</i>  | 7 <u>quantity</u> Is it like <u>ran</u> or <u>want</u> ? <i>want</i> |
| 4 <u>tube</u> Is it like <u>noon</u> or <u>new</u> ? <i>noon</i> |  |

## 64.2 Complete the phrases below.



1



3



5



7



9



2



4



6



8

- 1 a bottle ..... of water  
2 a ..... of spaghetti  
3 a ..... of fruit  
4 a ..... of coffee  
5 a ..... of milk

- 6 a ..... of water  
7 a ..... of matches  
8 a ..... of soap  
9 a ..... of apples

## 64.3 Correct the mistake with the container.

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 a packet of chocolate <u>bar</u> ..... | 5 a can of milk .....          |
| 2 a vase of jam .....                    | 6 a carton of toothpaste ..... |
| 3 a tube of cigarettes .....             | 7 a jar of flowers .....       |
| 4 a tin of cola .....                    | 8 a jug of biscuits .....      |

## 64.4 Complete the sentences with one word.

- 1 I need two pairs ..... of socks inside these shoes.
- 2 I gave her a big ..... of flowers from my garden.
- 3 I cut about six ..... of bread and put them on a plate.
- 4 Could you get half a ..... more chairs?
- 5 The teacher told us to take out a blank ..... of paper.
- 6 I like to put a ..... of cream in my coffee.
- 7 There's no need to hurry – we've got ..... of time.
- 8 I met a ..... of friends – Stefan and Julia – on the way to the station.
- 9 She opened her bag on the table, turned it upside down, and all the ..... fell out.
- 10 Tennis is quite popular in our office. I know ..... people who play.

## 64.5 Cross out the wrong answer.

- 1 Could you get a carton of milk / juice / coffee?
- 2 I bought a bunch of grapes / bananas / apples.
- 3 There were a couple of / a pair of / several people waiting at the bus stop.
- 4 Would you like a slice of cake / bread / biscuit?
- 5 It's nice with a spoonful of sugar / jam / crisps.
- 6 I bought two pairs of socks / shirts / jeans.
- 7 Have you got a piece / bunch / sheet of paper I could borrow?

## A

## Apologies with common replies

We can **apologise** [say sorry] in different ways in different situations.



A: I'm(terribly/really) **sorry** – I've forgotten your book.

*Terribly/really* makes you sound 'more sorry'.



B: Never mind. That's OK.



A: I beg your pardon – I didn't see you there.

*I beg your pardon* is a more formal apology, often used if you walk into someone.



B: That's all right. (also That's OK.)



A: (I'm) sorry to disturb you.

We use this phrase when we **interrupt** / speak to someone who is busy working.



B: Don't worry. Come on in. I can finish this later.



A: (I'm) sorry to keep you waiting – I won't be long.

We use this phrase when someone is waiting for us. *I won't be long* = I will be with you very soon.



B: OK. Fine.

We use this phrase when we have to leave a room or go somewhere.



A: Excuse me, I won't be a minute.

This is a more formal apology, and it is often used in business letters.



B: OK. Fine.



A: I must apologise for the noise last night.

## Common mistakes



B: That's all right. I understand.

I'm sorry I'm late. (NOT I'm sorry for be late. OR I'm sorry to be late.)



A: I'm(really) sorry I'm late.



B: Don't worry.

## B

## Excuses

We often give an explanation or **excuse** after an apology. An **excuse** is a *reason* for the apology, which may or may not be true. These are excuses students might give for being late for class.

I'm sorry I'm late for class ...

- There was a **delay** / **hold-up** on the underground. [when a train, plane, etc. leaves or arrives later than you expect]
- I was **held up** in traffic. [**hold up** – cause a delay and make someone late – is often used in the passive]
- My train **was cancelled** [the train company decided not to run the train], and I had to wait half an hour for the next one.
- I **overslept** [slept longer than I planned or wanted to].

## C

## Thanks and replies

These are some common ways of **thanking** people, with typical replies.

A: **Thanks (very much).**

A: I've brought your books.

B: **Not at all.** (also **That's OK.**)

B: Oh, **cheers.** (*infml*)

A: **No problem.** (*infml*)

A: I'll post those letters for you.

B: Oh, thank you. **That's very kind of you.** (This is polite and slightly more formal.)

# Exercises

## 65.1 Find three more pairs of phrases that have a similar meaning.

thanks very much I'm terribly sorry don't worry never mind  
I was held up cheers I beg your pardon there was a delay

thanks very much / cheers

## 65.2 Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. I'm) count as one word.

- 1 A: I'm *terribly* ..... sorry.  
B: That's OK.
- 2 A: Thanks very much.  
B: ..... at all.
- 3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting. I won't be ..... .  
B: That's all .....
- 4 A: I'm sorry ..... late. The 7:30 train was ..... , so I had to wait for the next one.  
B: That's OK. No .....
- 5 A: I gave your parents a lift to the station.  
B: Oh, thanks. That's very ..... of you.
- 6 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting yesterday afternoon.  
B: ..... mind. I'll ask Claire to tell you what happened.
- 7 A: I ..... your pardon. I thought the room was empty.  
B: That's OK.

## 65.3 What could you say in these situations? If it is an apology, give an explanation.

- 1 You walk into someone by accident and he/she almost falls over.  
*I'm terribly sorry. OR I beg your pardon. I didn't see you.*
- 2 You arrange to meet some friends in town at 9 am but you are twenty minutes late.  
.....
- 3 Your car has broken down. You're pushing it to the side of the road and a man offers to help.  
.....
- 4 You need to speak to your boss but she's working. What do you say when you enter her office?  
.....
- 5 You have to leave a meeting to take an important phone call. What do you say to the others?  
.....
- 6 You are on the phone but a customer is waiting to talk to you. What can you say to them?  
.....
- 7 You are late for an appointment because you had to wait half an hour in traffic.  
.....
- 8 Your company promised to send some information to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and you must now write to explain. Write the first sentence of your letter.  
.....

## 65.4 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Are you ever late for class or work? If so, do you have to apologise to anyone? Do you normally give a reason why you are late? If so, what reasons are most common?
- 2 What other things have you apologised for recently? What did you say? Did you give an excuse?

## A

## Requests and replies



A: Could you pass the salt?



B: Sure. / No problem.



A: Could you possibly help me?



B: Yes, of course.



A: Naomi, I wonder if you could help me?



B: Sure.



A: I was wondering if you could lend me some money until tomorrow.



B: No, I'm afraid I can't. [I'm sorry but I can't.]

## Language help

As the requests become bigger it is normal to use longer phrases which sound more **polite**.

## B

## Asking permission and replies



A: Could I possibly have a look at your magazine?



B: Yes, help yourself.



A: May / Could I open the window?



B: Sure, go ahead.



A: Do you mind if I watch TV?



B: No, go ahead.

## Language help

When we answer **go ahead** or **help yourself**, we are giving someone permission to do the thing they have asked.

## C

## Suggestions and replies

We could try that new restaurant.

What shall we do tonight?

Let's go to the café in the square.

How about going to a club?

I don't mind. You choose.

Why don't we go and see a film?

Do you fancy listening to some music?

[do you want to; *infml*]

We can reply with different answers, from positive to negative.

Yeah, (**that's a**) **great idea**.

Yes, **if you like**.

No, **I don't fancy that**.

That **sounds good**.

Yeah, **I don't mind**.

Mm, **I'd rather** do something else.

[I would prefer to do something else.]

# Exercises

## 66.1 Correct six more mistakes in the dialogue.

- A: Do you like to go out this evening? *Would*  
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.  
A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about go to see a film?  
B: No, I think I'd rather to stay in. I have to do some homework.  
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: Well, we could go tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, it's a great idea.

## 66.2 Match 1–6 with a–f.

- |   |                            |                         |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Could you close the door?             | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a a suggestion          |
| 2 May I close the window?               | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b a negative reply      |
| 3 We could go to the cinema.            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c a request             |
| 4 Yeah, great idea.                     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d asking for permission |
| 5 I wonder if you could close the door? | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e a positive reply      |
| 6 I don't fancy that.                   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f a polite request      |

## 66.3 Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. *don't*) count as one word.

- 1 A: What *would* ..... you like to do this weekend?  
B: I don't ..... You decide.
- 2 A: Could you ..... open that window? It's very hot in here.  
B: Yes, of .....
- 3 A: I was ..... if you could give me a lift to Luke's this evening.  
B: Sure, no .....
- 4 A: What do you ..... doing this evening?  
B: I don't ..... Any ideas?  
A: Why ..... we go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.  
B: Yeah, that's a great .....
- 5 A: Do you ..... if I use your phone?  
B: No, go .....
- 6 A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?  
B: How ..... going to the beach if the weather's nice?  
A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.  
B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.  
A: Yes, OK, if you .....

## 66.4 Reply to the questions. Try to give a different answer each time.

- 1 Could I borrow your pen for a minute? *Yes, sure.* .....
- 2 Could you possibly post a letter for me? .....
- 3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me? .....
- 4 Do you mind if I take this chair? .....
- 5 I've got some tickets for a concert. Do you fancy going? .....
- 6 How about going to a football match at the weekend? .....
- 7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English? .....

## A

**Asking someone for their opinion**

**What do you think of** his new book / Tom's girlfriend? (asking about a specific thing or person)

**What do you think about** global warming / cosmetic surgery? (asking about a general topic)

**How do you feel about** working with the others?

## B

**Introducing your own opinion**

**Personally, I think** Helena was probably right.

**Personally, I feel** that we should increase the price.

**In my opinion** [I think], we need to change the direction of the company.

**My view/feeling is** [my opinion is] that we need to wait a bit longer.

**Common mistakes**

Personally, I **don't think it's** a good idea. (NOT I think it's not a good idea.)

**In my opinion**, motorbikes are dangerous. (NOT On my opinion OR In my meaning)

In most situations, it is probably easier and more natural to use **personally**.

## C

**Giving the opinion of others**

The newspaper **says** that his death was not an accident. (NOT It's written in the newspaper)

**According to** the paper [the paper says], the government didn't know about it.

## D

**Agreeing and disagreeing (with someone)**

**I totally agree (with you)** [agree completely, 100%].

**I partly agree (with you)** [agree but not completely].

**I agree (with you) to a certain extent** [partly agree].

**Common mistakes**

**I agree** with you. (NOT I'm agree with you.)

**Do you agree?** (NOT Are you agree?)

In British English, it is common to agree with someone before giving a different opinion.

**That's true, but** I think ...

**I see what you mean**, [I understand what you are saying] but ...

**I agree to some extent, but** ...

I think that's a good **point** [idea or opinion], **but** ...

**I take your point** [I understand and partly agree with your opinion], **but** ...

## E

**Giving a strong opinion**

**I feel very strongly about** military service.

I think everyone should do it.



I think you're **absolutely right/wrong** [100% correct/wrong].



I don't agree **at all** [I completely disagree].



I **disagree completely** [100% don't agree].



# Exercises

## 67.1 Complete the questions in different ways to ask people their opinion.

- 1 What do you think about sending people to Mars?
- 2 ..... these shoes? Do you like them?
- 3 ..... having more responsibility?

## 67.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Did you think he was right in what he said?  
B: Not completely, but I partly agreed with him.
- 2 A: What did you think ..... the film?  
B: Well, ..... I didn't like it.
- 3 A: Do you agree with her?  
B: Yes, to a certain .....
- 4 A: She feels very ..... about protecting the environment.  
B: Yes, I know, and I think she's absolutely .....
- 5 A: ..... , I think all politicians tell lies.  
B: Sorry, but I ..... completely.
- 6 A: We can't send everyone to university.  
B: Yes, that's ..... , but we should give everyone a chance to go.
- 7 A: My ..... is that we should make all chocolate and sweets more expensive, and then people couldn't afford to eat so many things that are bad for them.  
B: That's a good ..... , but it seems unfair on people who don't eat too many sweet things.
- 8 A: I see what you ..... about spending more money, but can we afford it?  
B: Well, in my ..... we have no choice.

## 67.3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 I think you're right. AGREE I agree with you.
- 2 I think the club needs new players. OPINION .....
- 3 I completely disagree with you. AT ALL .....
- 4 The newspaper says the fire was started on purpose. ACCORDING .....
  
- 5 I partly agree with her. EXTENT .....
- 6 I see what you mean, but I'm not sure I agree. POINT .....

## 67.4 Over to you

Respond to the statements with your own opinion. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 I think most women are happy to stay at home and be a mother and housewife.

2 Personally I don't think the government should give so much money to people who don't work.

3 My feeling is that we should give more money to poor countries in other parts of the world.

4 I think we should make it more expensive to drive a car in order to reduce the number of cars.

## A

## Likes and dislikes

	agree	disagree
I <b>love</b> rock music. I'm <b>really into</b> dance music. [like it very much; <i>infml</i> ] I like a lot of pop music.	 <b>So do I. / Me too.</b> <b>So am I. / Me too.</b> So do I. / Me too.	<b>Really? I don't.</b> <b>Really? I'm not.</b> Do you? I hate it.
I <b>quite</b> like salsa and samba. I <b>don't mind</b> jazz. [it's OK]	So do I. / Me too. Yeah, it's OK.	Oh, I'm not very keen. Oh, I can't stand it.
I'm <b>not very keen on</b> folk music. I <b>can't stand</b> classical music. [dislike it very much; <i>infml</i> ] I <b>hate</b> opera.	 <b>Neither am I. / Me neither.</b> <b>Neither can I. / Me neither.</b> So do I. / Me too.	Really? I love it. Really? I quite like it.

## Language help

Many of these verbs can be followed by a noun or an -ing form, e.g. *I love driving, I like singing, I don't mind work, I dislike driving, I can't stand getting up early, I hate cold weather*.

## B

## Attitudes and interests

My **attitude to** a lot of things has changed over the years. [how you think or feel about something]

I **used to** like chips. [I liked chips in the past but not now.]

I used to play computer games, but now they **don't interest** me. [I don't find them interesting.]

I'm very **interested in** modern architecture, but I used to think it was awful.

I used to go swimming a lot, but now I don't go **at all** [*at all* makes a negative stronger].

Mark and I used to have the same **interests** [things we enjoy doing], but now it seems we **have nothing in common** [have no interests that are similar; opp **have a lot in common**].

## Common mistakes

I'm **interested in** seeing that. (NOT I'm **interest** in seeing that; OR I'm interested **to see** that.)

It takes time to **get used to** [become familiar with] **living** in a different country.

I didn't like my new glasses at first, but now I've **got used to** them.

I found the winters very cold at first, but you **get used to** it.

## C

## Which do you, or would you, prefer?



A: Which do you **prefer** in general, tea or coffee?  
[like more]



B: Well, I **prefer** coffee **to** tea in the morning, but in the afternoon I usually drink tea.



A: Tonight, we can go to the cinema or the theatre.  
Which **would you prefer**?



B: I think I'd **prefer to** go to the cinema. (syn **I'd rather**)

# Exercises

## 68.1 Correct the mistakes in B's replies.

- 1 A: I can drive.  
B: So do I. .... *can* .....
- 2 A: I love modern art.  
B: Yes, so I do. ....
- 3 A: Do you like chocolate?  
B: Yes, I like very much. ....
- 4 A: Do you like it in England?  
B: Yes, I'm getting used to live here. ....
- 5 A: I don't like shopping.  
B: Me too. ....
- 6 A: Do you like football?  
B: Yes, but I prefer rugby than football. ....
- 7 A: Do you like this?  
B: No, I'm not interest in music. ....

## 68.2 Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 My sister loves Robbie Williams, but I can't ..... *stand* ..... him.
- 2 The two boys have nothing in ..... ; they're completely different.
- 3 The others enjoyed the film, but I didn't like it at .....
- 4 I love the cinema, but this particular film doesn't ..... me.
- 5 Carole is really ..... modern art at the moment. Personally, I hate it.
- 6 I ..... to love cheese, but I never eat it now.
- 7 A: Would you like to go out? B: I'd ..... stay here, actually. Is that OK with you?
- 8 I didn't like raw fish at first, but I'm ..... used to it now.

## 68.3 Agree with the statements using *so* or *neither* and the correct verb. Then agree using *Me too* or *Me neither*.

- 1 I love this ice cream. *So do I.* ..... *Me too.* .....
- 2 I like strawberries. .... .....
- 3 I don't like cold tea. .... .....
- 4 I can't work with music on. .... .....
- 5 I'm single. .... .....
- 6 I'm not married. .... .....
- 7 I've got a cat. .... .....

## 68.4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 He likes salsa. INTO *He's into salsa.* .....
- 2 I hate these new shoes. STAND .....
- 3 She'd prefer to go home. RATHER .....
- 4 I don't like James Bond films very much. KEEN .....
- 5 I think the new building is alright. MIND .....
- 6 I went riding a lot in the past, but not now. USED .....
- 7 We have a lot of the same interests. COMMON .....
- 8 I'm becoming familiar with this new computer. USED .....
- 9 I don't feel the same way about work now. ATTITUDE .....

## 68.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

I really like ..... . I prefer ..... to ..... .  
I don't mind ..... . ..... doesn't interest me.  
I can't stand ..... . I used to ..... .

## A

**Greetings\***

When we are **introduced to a stranger** [told the name of someone we have never met] in a formal **situation**, we usually **shake hands** and say *hello*, or perhaps **hello, nice to meet you**. In an informal situation, we usually just say *hello* or *hi*.

When we **greet** friends, there are no real rules in Britain. Men may kiss **female** friends [girls/women] on one **cheek** [side of the face], on both cheeks, or not at all. Women may kiss **male** friends and female friends **once, twice**, or not at all. We usually say things like this:

A: Hello. How are you? B: Fine, thanks. **How about** you?

A: Hi. **How's it going? / How are things?** (infml) B: **Not (so) bad**, thanks. And you?

\* saying hello

## B

**Farewells\***

To someone we have just met for the first time we can say **Goodbye. Nice to meet you**.

With friends we can say **bye, cheers** (infml), **take care** (infml), or **see you** (soon/later/tomorrow, etc.).

When we say goodbye to a school or work friend on Friday afternoon we usually say:

A: Have a nice weekend.

B: Yeah, **same to you**. (NOT same **for** you)

\* saying goodbye

## C

**Expressions for special situations****Language help**

We use **Thank goodness** when we are happy that something bad did not happen. A synonym is **Thank God** (infml), but there are some people who may not like the use of this expression. We can use **Goodness** on its own to express surprise, e.g. *Goodness, is it ten o'clock already?*

# Exercises

## 69.1 Find five more phrases.

good take excuse bless luck you  
thank me goodness not care bad

*good luck*

.....

.....

.....

## 69.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: How are you?  
B: Fine. How *about* ..... you?
- 2 A: How's it ..... ?  
B: Not ..... . And you?
- 3 A: Have a nice weekend.  
B: Yeah, ..... you.
- 4 A: Nobody was hurt in the accident.  
B: Oh, ..... for that.
- 5 A: I'll see you tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, ..... care.
- 6 A: I've just passed my exam.  
B: ..... !
- 7 A: I'm fine, thanks.  
B: Good. And ..... Sarah?

## 69.3 What could you say in these situations?

- 1 A friend says, 'Have a good weekend'. What do you reply? *Yeah, same to you.*
- 2 You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say? .....
- 3 You are on a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them? .....
- 4 A friend tells you they have just won some money. What do you say? .....
- 5 A friend is going for a job interview this afternoon. What do you say? .....
- 6 You are having a drink with friends. What do you say when you hold up your glasses to drink?  
.....
- 7 Someone sneezes next to you. What do you say? .....

## 69.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 When you meet someone for the first time in a formal ..... , what do you say?
- 2 When you are ..... to someone in a formal situation, do you normally ..... hands?
- 3 What do you do and say when you ..... friends?
- 4 Do you usually kiss friends? If so, is it on one ..... or both ..... ?
- 5 When you say goodbye to friends, do you use informal expressions like *Cheers*, or *Take .....* ? If so, what are they?  
.....

## 69.5 Over to you

Answer the questions in Exercise 69.4 about your country. If possible, ask someone from a different country the same questions.

## A

## With adjectives

Prefixes, e.g. **un-**, **dis-**, **im-**, can be added to some adjectives to give the opposite meaning.

happy	<b>un</b> happy	<b>honest</b> [tells the truth]	<b>dishonest</b>
possible	<b>im</b> possible	<b>correct</b> [right✓]	<b>incorrect</b>
regular	<b>ir</b> regular	<b>legal</b> [allowed by law]	<b>illegal</b>

Dan used all the milk but said he didn't; he's very **dishonest**.

I got eight answers right, but two were **incorrect**.

It's **illegal** in the UK to ride a motorbike without a helmet.

## B

**un-**

Of the prefixes above, **un-** is the most common, and appears in a number of adjectives.

This chair is incredibly **uncomfortable**.

It was **unnecessary** for them to wait for us.

Xerxes – that's a very **unusual** name. [different, not common or ordinary]

I won the game; it was completely **unexpected**. [I didn't think I was going to win]

Marsha's hat is **unbelievable**. [surprising because it is either very good or very bad]

We tried to open the door, but we **were unable to** get in. [could not]

I need to do more exercise; I'm very **unfit**. [not healthy and not in good condition]

Declan played well, and I thought he was **unlucky** to lose.

They're **unlikely** to get here before midday. [They probably won't get here before midday.]

The test was **unfair** because some of the students had more time to do it than others. [If something is *unfair*, it does not treat people equally.]

## Language help

Adding a negative prefix does not usually change the pronunciation; the stress stays the same.

She was un'lucky. It's unb'e'lievable. (NOT She was 'unlucky. It was 'unbelievable.)

## C

## With verbs

With some verbs, these prefixes can have particular meanings.

<b>dis-</b> [the opposite of something]	I <b>disagree</b> with the others. [don't agree / have the same opinion] The plane <b>appeared</b> in the sky, then it <b>disappeared</b> behind a cloud.
<b>un-</b> [the opposite of an action]	I couldn't <b>unlock</b> the door this morning. [open the door using a key; opp <b>lockWe had to <b>get undressed</b> in the cold. [take off our clothes; opp <b>get dressed</b>] I <b>unpacked</b> the bags. [took everything out of the bags; opp <b>pack</b>]</b>
<b>over-</b> [too much]	The bank <b>overcharged</b> me. [asked me to pay too much money]
<b>mis-</b> [do something incorrectly]	I <b>misunderstood</b> what he said; I'm afraid my English isn't very good. I <b>misheard</b> her. I thought she said <i>Rita</i> , not <i>Brita</i> .
<b>re-</b> [again]	The teacher has asked me to <b>rewrite</b> my essay.

# Exercises

## 70.1 Write the opposite.

1 <i>un</i> happy	7 ..... agree
2 ..... able	8 ..... necessary
3 ..... correct	9 ..... regular
4 ..... usual	10 ..... honest
5 ..... possible	11 ..... fair
6 ..... comfortable	12 ..... lucky

## 70.2 Which sentence on the right logically follows each sentence on the left?

- |  |                            |                                |
|--|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 She arrived home.                    | <input type="checkbox"/> b | a She unpacked her suitcase.   |
| 2 Her essay was terrible.              | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b She unlocked the front door. |
| 3 She decided to go to bed.            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c She has disappeared.         |
| 4 He called her name.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d She had overcharged me.      |
| 5 She's not here now.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e She had to rewrite it.       |
| 6 He thought he was right.             | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f She misheard it.             |
| 7 She got to the hotel.                | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g She disagreed.               |
| 8 After I paid, I looked at the price. | <input type="checkbox"/> h | h She got undressed.           |

## 70.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A using different words. You only need one word for each gap.

- 1 A: Adera is a strange name.  
B: Yes, very *unusual*.....
- 2 A: It's against the law, isn't it?  
B: Oh yes, it's ..... .
- 3 A: You mean he took off all his clothes!  
B: Yes, he got completely ..... .
- 4 A: He probably won't get back in time for the meeting.  
B: I agree. It's very ..... .
- 5 A: A lot of the answers were wrong.  
B: Yes, I'm afraid they were nearly all ..... .
- 6 A: He doesn't look in very good condition; he's a bit overweight.  
B: I know. He looks terribly ..... .
- 7 A: Nobody thought this would happen.  
B: Yes, it was completely ..... .
- 8 A: They never tell the truth.  
B: I know. They're both ..... .
- 9 A: His business always seems to lose money, and it's not his fault.  
B: I know. He's very ..... .
- 10 A: Ann always gives more attention to Sarah than she does to Lucas.  
B: Yes, it's very ..... on poor Lucas.

## 70.4 These words all appear in other units of the book. Do you know how to form the opposites?

pleasant	<i>unpleasant</i>	fashionable	
kind		reliable	
patient (adj)		friendly	
suitable		tidy	
like (v)		ability	
do up		sociable	

## A

## Verb + noun suffix

Suffixes are used at the ends of words; they often tell you if a word is a noun, a verb, an adjective or an adverb. Two suffixes which form nouns from verbs are **-ion** and **-ment**.

verb	noun
<b>invent</b> [produce or design something completely new]	<b>invention</b>
<b>discuss</b> [talk about something seriously]	<b>discussion</b>
<b>translate</b> [change from one language to another]	<b>translation</b>
<b>relax</b> [rest, and feel calm and comfortable]	<b>relaxation</b>
<b>improve</b> [get better]	<b>improvement</b>
<b>govern</b> [control the affairs of a city or country]	<b>government</b>
<b>manage</b> [direct or control a business]	<b>management</b>
<b>develop</b> [grow or change and become more advanced]	<b>development</b>

His latest **invention** is a new board game.

**Relaxation** will help you to sleep better.

We had a **discussion about** politics.

The **management** has to change.

I need money for more **development**.

We need an **improvement** in the weather.

## B

## Adjective + noun suffix

The suffixes **-ness** and **-ity** often form nouns from adjectives.

adjective	noun
<b>weak</b> ( <i>opp</i> strong)	<b>weakness</b>
happy	<b>happiness</b>
<b>ill</b> [sick, not well]	<b>illness</b>
<b>fit</b> [in good condition, usually because of exercise]	<b>fitness</b>
<b>stupid</b> ( <i>opp</i> intelligent, clever)	<b>stupidity</b>
<b>popular</b> [liked by a lot of people]	<b>popularity</b>
<b>similar</b> [almost the same; <i>opp</i> different]	<b>similarity</b>
<b>able</b>	<b>ability</b> ( <i>opp</i> <b>inability</b> )

What is his main **weakness** as a manager?

Snowboarding is growing in **popularity**.

I'm frustrated by my **inability** to use computers.

Fortunately it wasn't a serious **illness**.

There is a **similarity between** them.

Her **happiness** is all that matters to me.

## C

**-er, -or and -ist**

These suffixes can be added to nouns or verbs. They often describe people and jobs.

<b>-er</b>	<b>-or</b>	<b>-ist</b>
ballet <b>dancer</b>	company <b>director</b>	<b>artist</b> , e.g. Picasso
pop <b>singer</b>	<b>translator</b>	<b>economist</b>
professional <b>footballer</b>	film <b>actor</b>	<b>scientist</b>

## Language help

Adding a suffix to a verb, adjective or noun may change the position of the main stress, e.g. *re'lax* – *relax'ation*, *'stupid* – *stu'pidity*, *eco'nomics* – *e'conomist*.

(The ' symbol is before the syllable with the main stress.)

# Exercises

**71.1** Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. (Stress is marked on the pronunciation of a word in a dictionary.) The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

verb	noun	adjective	noun
dis'cuss	<i>dis'cussion</i>	stupid	
improve		happy	
invent		similar	
relax		popular	
hesitate		sad	
arrange		active	

**71.2** Write down the names of the people who do these things as a job.

- 1 sing opera music *opera singers* .....
- 2 act in films .....
- 3 important managers in a company .....
- 4 change words from one language into another .....
- 5 play football .....
- 6 dance in ballets .....
- 7 paint pictures .....
- 8 work in science .....

**71.3** Complete the text using words from the box with the correct suffix and spelling. One word also needs a prefix.

weak      improve      govern      economics      able      manage      discuss

“ In his speech last night, the prime minister said that the present <sup>1</sup> *weakness* ..... of the economy was caused by the bad <sup>2</sup> ..... of the last <sup>3</sup> ..... and their <sup>4</sup> ..... to give the right kind of help for industry. He said he was now involved in detailed <sup>5</sup> ..... with ministers, bankers and <sup>6</sup> ..... about a range of different financial measures, and he hoped the people would be able to see a big <sup>7</sup> ..... in the economy by the end of the year. ”

**71.4** Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: He hasn't been well at all, has he?  
B: No, it's quite a serious *illness* .....
- 2 A: Are they almost the same?  
B: Yes, the ..... is amazing.
- 3 A: Has anyone made anything like this before?  
B: No, it's a brand-new .....
- 4 A: Is her new novel going to be published in other languages?  
B: Yes, someone is working on a ..... right now.
- 5 A: Does your daughter enjoy drawing too?  
B: Yes, she's a very good .....
- 6 A: Javier gets tired after he's been playing for about ten minutes.  
B: I know. If he wants to be in the team, he'll have to improve his .....
- 7 A: Do you think the organisation can still grow?  
B: Yes, I think there is an opportunity for further .....

Common suffixes that form adjectives include: **-able** (comfortable), **-al** (musical), **-y** (cloudy), **-ous** (famous) and **-ive** (attractive).

## A

**-al**

Adjectives ending **-al** are usually formed from nouns, and often mean ‘relating to the noun’, e.g. a **musical** instrument (from music), a **political** issue (from politics), an **electrical** fault (related to electricity), a **personal** opinion (the opinion of one person).

## SHICHI-GO-SAN

*Shichi-Go-San* (meaning 7, 5, 3) is an **annual** ceremony in Japan for three-and seven-year-old girls, and three-and five-year-old boys. It is on November 15, but it is not a **national**<sup>1</sup> holiday, so people often have it on the nearest weekend. Seven, five and three are seen as important years in the growth of a child, and the numbers also have **cultural significance**<sup>2</sup> because odd numbers (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, etc.) are lucky in Japan. This is one of the special days when the older boys and girls are allowed to wear **traditional**<sup>3</sup> clothes: a kimono for girls and hakama trousers for boys. Now it is quite **normal**<sup>4</sup> for children to wear western-style clothes at this ceremony. The children visit a shrine and are then given special sweets called *Chitose-Ame* by their parents.



<sup>1</sup> a holiday for the whole country

<sup>2</sup> they are important in Japanese culture

<sup>3</sup> in a style that has continued for many years

<sup>4</sup> usual

## B

**-able /əbl/**

This suffix forms adjectives from nouns *and* verbs, and the prefix **un-** often forms the opposite: an **enjoyable** party [something that you enjoyed]

a **comfortable** chair (*opp* **uncomfortable**)

a **suitable** word or phrase [right/correct for a particular situation; *opp* **unsuitable**]

a **reliable** service; reliable information [able to be trusted or believed; *opp* **unreliable**]

**fashionable** clothes [popular now with many people; *opp* **unfashionable**]

a **reasonable** decision or price [fair; not a bad decision or price; *opp* **unreasonable**]

a **sociable** person [enjoys being with people; *opp* **unsociable**]

Sometimes the opposite form is the more common adjective:

an **unforgettable** experience [something that cannot be forgotten]

an **unbelievable** story [something that is very surprising and very difficult to believe]

## C

**-ful and -less**

The suffix **-ful** often means ‘full of’ or ‘having the quality of the noun’, e.g. a **colourful** room has a lot of colour in it; a **helpful** person gives a lot of help; a **peaceful** place is calm and quiet. The opposite meaning is sometimes formed by adding the suffix **-less** to the noun.

a **useful** machine [having a lot of uses; *opp* a **useless** machine]

a **painful** injection [giving pain and being unpleasant; *opp* a **painless** injection]

a **careful** driver [drives with care and attention; *opp* a **careless** driver]

## Common mistakes

The suffix is **-ful** (NOT **full**), so **useful** and **careful** (NOT **usefull** or **carefull**).

# Exercises

## 72.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: one word is correct.

- |             |                  |               |       |                |       |
|-------------|------------------|---------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| 1 enjoiable | <i>enjoyable</i> | 4 peacefull   | ..... | 7 unforgetable | ..... |
| 2 carful    | .....            | 5 confortable | ..... | 8 reasonable   | ..... |
| 3 relyable  | .....            | 6 anual       | ..... | 9 unbeleivable | ..... |

## 72.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                 |                            |                 |
|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a national    | <input type="checkbox"/> d | a injection     |
| 2 a useful      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b mistake       |
| 3 a painful     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c price         |
| 4 fashionable   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d holiday       |
| 5 a careless    | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e man           |
| 6 an electrical | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f bit of advice |
| 7 an unsociable | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g clothes       |
| 8 a reasonable  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | h fault         |

## 72.3 Write an adjective formed from these nouns or verbs. 11–15 are not on the opposite page, but you can find them in the index if you don't know them.

- |             |                    |               |       |            |       |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1 tradition | <i>traditional</i> | 6 fame        | ..... | 11 wind    | ..... |
| 2 attract   | .....              | 7 electricity | ..... | 12 danger  | ..... |
| 3 person    | .....              | 8 politics    | ..... | 13 create  | ..... |
| 4 cloud     | .....              | 9 enjoy       | ..... | 14 emotion | ..... |
| 5 colour    | .....              | 10 nation     | ..... | 15 fog     | ..... |

## 72.4 Tick (✓) the words which form opposites with the suffix -less.

- |           |                          |         |           |
|-----------|--------------------------|---------|-----------|
| wonderful | No ( <i>wonderless</i> ) | useful  | beautiful |
| careful   |                          | painful | peaceful  |

## 72.5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 You must be very ..... *careful* ..... when you drive in wet weather.
- 2 She told us an ..... story about a dog that could speak.
- 3 The tourist information office was very ..... , and told us everything we needed to know.
- 4 The festival is an ..... event, held on the first Monday in September.
- 5 It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of that table.
- 6 This bag is ..... ; it's too small for me to put anything in it.
- 7 We've never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very .....
- 8 Most people agreed with it, so I think it was a ..... decision.
- 9 This is just my ..... opinion; others may not agree.
- 10 Travelling round China and the Far East was an ..... experience.
- 11 Children perform ..... dances at the ceremony, as they have done for hundreds of years.
- 12 Do you think this dress is ..... for a wedding?

## 72.6 Choose three adjectives from the opposite page which could describe these people or things.

- 1 a village: ..... , ..... , .....
- 2 a jacket: ..... , ..... , .....
- 3 an event: ..... , ..... , .....
- 4 a person you know: ..... , ..... , .....
- 5 an opinion: ..... , ..... , .....
- 6 a room: ..... , ..... , .....

## A

## Formation

We form compound nouns by putting two words together (or three) to create a new idea. Compound nouns are very common in English.

**Ice hockey** is a game of hockey played on ice.

**Public transport** is transport that can be used by the public.

A **campsite** is a **site** for camping. [a place used for a special purpose]

A **babysitter** is someone who looks after young children when their parents go out.

**Income tax** is money you pay to the government out of your **income** [the total amount of money you receive every year from your work and other places].

Your **mother tongue** is the first language you learn as a child.

A **travel agent** is someone whose job is to make travel arrangements for you.

A **film-maker** is someone who makes films for the cinema or television.

A **full stop** is a punctuation mark at the end of a sentence.

A **haircut** is the act of cutting someone's hair, e.g. *That boy needs a haircut.*

hairdresser



DJ (disc jockey)



hairdryer

wheelchair



toothpaste

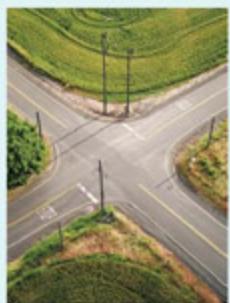


toothbrush



sunglasses

chest of drawers



crossroads



cashpoint



traffic lights



earrings

## B

## One word or two?

Some compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. **wheelchair**; a few are written with a hyphen, e.g. **T-shirt**; many are written as two words, e.g. **credit card**, **bus stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

## C

## Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part, e.g. '**haircut**' or '**income tax**', but sometimes it is on the second part, e.g. **public transport**, **full stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

## D

## Forming new compounds

One part of a compound often forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

**airport** e.g. Heathrow

**bus driver**

**ID card (identity card)**

**airline** e.g. Lufthansa, KLM

**bus stop**

**credit card**

**aircraft** e.g. Airbus A380

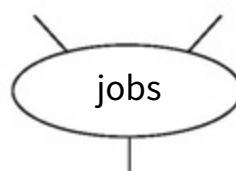
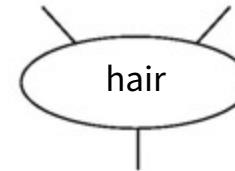
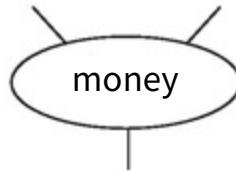
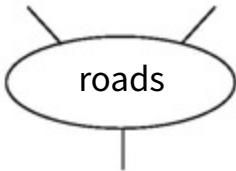
**bus station**

**birthday card**

# Exercises

## 73.1 Complete the circles with compound nouns from the opposite page.

public  
transport



## 73.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I got some money from the *cashpoint*.
- 2 I booked our holiday through a .....
- 3 We stayed on a very nice ....., but unfortunately our tent wasn't really big enough.
- 4 He can't walk at all now, so he has to use a ..... to move around.
- 5 I sent her a ..... but she never received it; it must have got lost in the post.
- 6 Liz and Mark wanted to go out, but they couldn't find a ..... for the children.
- 7 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
- 8 Most people have to pay ..... on their salary; the more you earn, the more you pay.
- 9 I washed my hair, then discovered that the ..... wasn't working.

## 73.3 Which words are being defined?

- 1 A substance that you use to clean your teeth. *toothpaste*
- 2 A piece of furniture for keeping clothes in. .....
- 3 Someone who plays music on the radio or at discos. .....
- 4 A card with your name, photograph and information to prove who you are. .....
- 5 The first language you learn as a child. .....
- 6 A game played on ice using sticks. .....
- 7 A punctuation mark at the end of a sentence. .....
- 8 A card you use to pay for things. .....

## 73.4 Make new compounds using one part of the compounds below. Answers for 1–6 are on the opposite page, answers for 7–12 are in other parts of the book.

- 1 airport .....  
2 full stop .....
- 3 hairdresser .....
- 4 credit card .....
- 5 toothpaste .....
- 6 bus driver .....

- 7 living room .....
- 8 brother-in-law .....
- 9 sunglasses .....
- 10 traffic lights .....
- 11 wheelchair .....
- 12 film-maker .....

## A

**What do we mean by word partners?**

If you want to use a word naturally, you often need to know other words that are commonly used with it. These are called word partners or collocations, and they can be different from language to language. For example:

I **spent time** in Paris. (NOT I **passed** time in Paris.) I **missed the bus**. (NOT I **lost** the bus.)

We **have** children. (NOT We **get** children.)

I **made** a mistake. (NOT I **did** a mistake.)

It was a **serious injury**. (also a **serious illness**)

It's **quite likely** that we'll stay here.

[we'll probably stay here]

It **depends on** my parents. (NOT It depends **of** my parents. See Unit 77.)

## Language help

More word partners can be found in the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary* for intermediate learners and the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

## B

**Verbs and nouns**

There are many verbs and nouns that are often used together.

Pavel **told** me a **joke** but I can't remember it. [told me a funny story]

I need to **lose weight**. [become less heavy; opp **put on weight**]

The doctor told my father that he should **go on a diet**. [eat less in order to lose weight]

It's very difficult to **predict the future**. [say what will happen in the future]

We won the game 2–1, and my brother **scored** the first **goal<sup>1</sup>**.

My neighbour's **alarm went off<sup>2</sup>** in the middle of the night.

They **fell in love** and got married. Now Emily is **expecting a baby<sup>3</sup>**.



## C

**Adjectives and nouns**

Many adjectives and nouns are often used together. These are all examples where the meaning is 'big' or 'a lot', but where we usually use a particular adjective.

We've got a **large number** of students/tourists this year. (opp a **limited/small** number)

I will need a **large amount** of money.

There's a **wide choice** of food available. (opp a **limited/narrow** choice)

Sergio has a **wide vocabulary** in English. (opp a **limited vocabulary**)

It's only a toy gun but it makes a very **loud noise**.

Her family is of **great importance** to her.

We went to a party last night and it was **great fun** [very enjoyable; we enjoyed it a lot].

There was **heavy traffic** on the motorway going out of town. (opp **light** traffic)

## D

**Adverbs and adjectives**

The adverbs in the first three sentences mean *very*, the adverbs in the last sentence mean *fully/completely*. In each case, the adverbs and adjectives are common word partners.

I'm **terribly sorry** I'm late.

She's **well aware** of the problem. [She knows all about the problem.]

It's **vitally important** that we get the right person for the job.

Ava is **fast asleep**, but the other two are still **wide awake**.

# Exercises

## 74.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Why does she do so many mistakes? ..... *make*
- 2 My sister got a baby last month. ..
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late; I lost the bus. ..
- 4 There was an accident and Tommy has a grave head injury. ..
- 5 I don't know if I can come – it depends of the weather. ..
- 6 We passed three days in Amsterdam. ..
- 7 I wouldn't like to try and say the future. ..
- 8 My sister is waiting for a baby next month. ..
- 9 Axel said me a very funny joke. ..
- 10 She gave us a big amount of money. ..

## 74.2 Complete the text.

My mum went to see the doctor, and he told her to go on a <sup>1</sup> ..... *diet* ..... I think she knows that she needs to <sup>2</sup> ..... weight, but she's not happy about giving up chocolate. Anyway, I told her it's <sup>3</sup> ..... important that she keeps to the diet, because if she <sup>4</sup> ..... any more weight, it's quite <sup>5</sup> ..... that she'll end up with a more <sup>6</sup> ..... illness. Fortunately, I think she's <sup>7</sup> ..... aware of that.

## 74.3 Replace *big* or *little* with a more suitable adjective.

- 1 You won't need a *big* amount of money. ..... *large*
- 2 Why are they making such a *big* noise? ..
- 3 I've got quite a *big* vocabulary in French. ..
- 4 There is only a *little* choice of things we can buy. ..
- 5 We had a very *big* number of tourists this year. ..
- 6 I think the event had *big* importance for her. ..
- 7 Isabel only has a *little* vocabulary in English. ..

## 74.4 Complete the sentences and dialogues.

- 1 A: Why were they late? B: They got stuck in ..... *heavy* ..... traffic.
- 2 When I went into her bedroom, she was ..... asleep.
- 3 A: Did you enjoy last night? B: Yes, it was ..... fun.
- 4 I met Sasha in town. She told me she's ..... a baby in June. Isn't that fantastic news?
- 5 A: We won 1–0. B: Who ..... the goal?
- 6 Maths ..... me a joke, but I'm afraid I didn't understand it.
- 7 A: Are the boys asleep? B: No, they're still ..... awake.
- 8 My neighbour's burglar alarm ..... at 2 o'clock this morning and woke me up.
- 9 A: Why is she staying in Paris? B: She ..... in love with a French guy.
- 10 I'm ..... sorry, but I've lost your book – I'll buy you a new one.

## 74.5

### Over to you

Look at the verbs and nouns in section B, and the adjectives and nouns in section C on the opposite page. Are they the same in your language? If possible, compare with someone else who speaks your language.

## A

**What are fixed phrases?**

There are many groups of words which you need to learn as complete phrases, because they often have a meaning which is different from the words on their own. Many of these are called idioms.

They arrived **out of the blue** [I didn't know they were coming; it was unexpected].

Does the name Merchant **ring a bell** [sound familiar]?

You'll have to **make up your mind** soon. [make a decision]

Some fixed phrases are easier to understand, but the same idea may be expressed in a different way in your language.

I think we'll have to **get rid of** some of this furniture.

[remove it, e.g. sell it, throw it away, give it away, etc.]

I'm afraid I can't talk to you now; **I'm (just) about to leave**. [I am going to leave very soon]

I don't know what Martin said, but Natalie **burst into tears** [suddenly started crying]. She was very upset.

Everyone was there **apart from** Yasmine.

[not including Yasmine; syn **except for**]



## B

**Time phrases**

He's leaving **in four days' time** [four days from now; also in three weeks'/six months'/two years' time, etc.].

I got here **the week before last** [during the week/month, etc. before the previous one].

The course is fine **so far** [up until now].

I rang our local doctor and fortunately she was able to come **at once** [now, immediately; syns **right away / straight away**].

He's so busy at work; he comes home late **night after night** [every night; also **day after day**, etc.].

## C

**Pairs of words**

A number of fixed phrases consist of two words, usually joined by **and**, and sometimes **or**.

I go to the theatre **now and again** [occasionally; syns **now and then**].

Andy had **one or two** [a few] suggestions.

I've got a house in the country, and I like to go there whenever possible for a bit of **peace and quiet** [a calm situation without noise].

I've been **up and down** the street, but I can't find their house. [first in one direction, then the other]

I've been to Paris **once or twice** [a few times].

I'll finish this report **sooner or later** [I don't know when, but I'll finish it].

## D

**Introducing advice, opinions, etc.**

Many fixed phrases are used to introduce advice, an opinion, an example, etc.

**If I were you** [in your situation], I'd accept the job they offered you.

**In general** [usually, or in most situations; syn **on the whole**] the summers are quite warm in this part of the country.

There were lots of questions. **For instance** [for example], how much will it cost?

I'm sure you'll have a great holiday. **By the way**, what time does the train leave? (used to introduce a new subject to the conversation)

**To be honest**, I didn't like her boyfriend very much. (used to say what you really think)

# Exercises

## 75.1 Using all the words in the square, find eight more phrases.

ON	DAY	SOONER	AND	RIGHT
SO	AND	NOW	TWO	LATER
UP	OR	OFF	PEACE	AFTER
FAR	AND	ONE	AWAY	AGAIN
AND	DAY	QUIET	OR	DOWN

on and off

.....

## 75.2 Complete the sentences with one word, then underline the full fixed phrase in each sentence.

- 1 She's been working on that essay night after night.
- 2 I'm arranging everything for next week. By the ..... , is your sister coming this evening?
- 3 My parents always turn up at my flat out of the .....
- 4 Some people enjoyed the book, but to be ..... , I thought it was boring.
- 5 I'd like to get ..... of these CDs because I don't listen to them any more.
- 6 In ..... , people are much happier when they have jobs that they enjoy.
- 7 I don't know what to do at the moment but I'll have to make up my ..... soon.
- 8 It's a flexible ticket. For ..... , you can use it during the week or at weekends.
- 9 Can I ring you later? I'm just ..... to have lunch.
- 10 If I ..... you, I'd get a new dictionary.

## 75.3 Complete the fixed phrase in each dialogue.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 A: Do you go there much?<br>B: Now ..... .              | 7 A: Have you been there often?<br>B: Once .....                                     |
| 2 A: Have you had any ideas?<br>B: Yeah. One .....        | 8 A: Do you need me there now?<br>B: Yes. Could you come at ..... ?                  |
| 3 A: Was she very upset?<br>B: Yes. She burst ..... .     | 9 A: When are you going back?<br>B: In two weeks' .....                              |
| 4 A: You arrived ten days ago?<br>B: Yeah, the week ..... | 10 A: How's the course?<br>B: It's good so .....                                     |
| 5 A: Should I accept the job?<br>B: Yes, I would if ..... | 11 A: I spoke to Chris Myler. Do you know him?<br>B: No, the name doesn't ring ..... |
| 6 A: Will they get here?<br>B: Yeah, sooner .....         | 12 A: Have you done all the housework?<br>B: Yes, apart ..... the washing.           |

## 75.4 Here are more idioms. Can you underline one in each sentence, and guess what it means?

- 1 I've been in the job a few days, but I already feel at home. ..... *feel comfortable and relaxed*
- 2 I've just bought these shoes and they cost a fortune. .....
- 3 Could you keep an eye on my bag for me? .....
- 4 The answer's on the tip of my tongue. .....
- 5 We had a night on the town last night. .....
- 6 I could do with a new computer; mine's quite old now. .....

## A

## Common responses

A large number of fixed phrases are used as common responses in everyday conversation.

A: What time did he get here?

B: **I've no idea.** [I don't know]

A: Are you going tonight?

B: **That depends.** [used to say you are not sure because other things affect your answer; also **It depends**]

A: Shall we go out tonight?

B: Yeah, **why not** [OK]?

A: Did you like the film?

B: **Not really.** [used to say no but not strongly]

A: I'm going to Sweden next week.

B: Really. **What for?** [why?]

A: Can I borrow your car?

B: **No way.** [that's impossible; *infml*; syn **no chance**]

A: They're coming tonight, aren't they?

B: **I suppose so.** [used to say yes but not strongly]

A: Jason has grown a beard.

B: I know. **I couldn't believe my eyes!** [I was very surprised when I saw it]

A: We have to work tonight.

B: **You must be joking.**

A: Eli got top marks.

B: **I don't believe it!** [used to express great surprise]

## Language help

We can use **you must be joking** (syns **you're joking/kidding**) when someone has just said something that is a surprise. It may be an unpleasant surprise (as above), or a nice surprise, e.g.

A: *My father said he would pay for all of us to go on holiday.*

B: **You're kidding.** Fantastic!

## B

## In conversation

Notice how fixed phrases can form an important part of an everyday conversation.

A: I had to **have a word with** Vince and Milan today. [speak to them without others listening]

B: Oh yeah? Are they causing trouble again?

A: Well, **you know**, [used to fill a pause in conversation] they just keep talking to each other, and they don't **pay attention** [listen] – **that sort of thing**.

B: Why don't you make them sit in different places?

A: I tried that, but they still talked to each other.

B: Well, **in that case** [because of the situation described], you'll have to move one of them.

A: Maybe, but I'd **feel bad about** that [be unhappy about].

They're quite nice boys, you know, they just **can't help it** [can't control some actions or behaviour].

B: Sure ... but you can't let **that kind of thing** continue.

A: No, you're right. But I've given them a final warning today, so let's **wait and see** what happens. [wait to discover what will happen]

B: OK. But **what if** they don't improve? [what will you do if they don't improve?]

A: I think it'll be OK.

B: Well, if you **change your mind** [change your decision], come and see me again, and I'll arrange for one of them to be moved to another class.



## Language help

We use **sort/kind** in several common phrases in informal speech.

(and) **that sort/kind of thing** [examples of that type]

e.g. *I grow onions and carrots – that sort/kind of thing.*

**sort/kind of** [approximately/more or less] e.g. *Her new top is sort of blue; I thought he was kind of strange.*

# Exercises

## 76.1 Put the responses in the most suitable column below.

no way    not really    I suppose so    why not  
you're kidding    that depends    I don't believe it

positive	negative	not sure or either
	<i>no way</i>	

## 76.2 Choose the correct word. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 I need to have a *word*/ speak with Catalina.
- 2 I don't know what they plan to do; we'll have to wait and see / *watch*.
- 3 He usually wears jeans, trainers, and that *sort* / *kind* of thing.
- 4 Little children shout and scream all the time; they can't *help* / leave it.
- 5 A: I went to Cambridge last week. B: Really? *What* / *Why* for?
- 6 The trouble with Mark is that he doesn't *pay* / give attention.
- 7 A: Are you working tonight? B: *It* / *That* depends.

## 76.3 Complete the dialogues with a suitable fixed phrase.

- 1 A: Did you hear that Daniel's getting married?  
B: Yeah. *I don't believe it!*
- 2 A: Sofia doesn't listen.  
B: No. She never .....
- 3 A: Did you speak to Nathalie?  
B: Yes, I .....
- 4 A: Dad wasn't happy about forgetting my birthday.  
B: No, he felt .....
- 5 A: Do you know what time he'll be here?  
B: No, I'm afraid I've .....
- 6 A: Are you still planning to sell the flat?  
B: No, I've ..... I'm going to keep it now.

## 76.4 Where could you add the phrases in the box to the dialogues below?

*you know*    I couldn't believe my eyes    kind of    in that case  
that sort of thing    you must be joking    why not

- 1 A: What did you say to him?  
B: Well, *v* it was quite difficult. *you know*
- 2 A: What colour was it?  
B: Blue.
- 3 A: He's not coming this evening, so you won't be able to ask him.  
B: Well, I'll phone him and ask him.
- 4 A: Jerry says we'll have to walk all the way to the campsite.  
B: That's ten miles!
- 5 A: Do you want to get a takeaway?  
B: Yeah.
- 6 A: What do they sell?  
B: Oh, burgers, pizzas, ...
- 7 A: Did you see Chloe wearing those high-heeled shoes?  
B: Yes.

## A

## Verb + preposition

Pay special attention to prepositions that are different in your language.

Paul doesn't like the manager's decision and I **agree with** him. [have the same opinion as]

Don't **worry about** your exam. [be nervous about]

His teachers were **satisfied with** his progress. [pleased with]

Many people **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes.

I'm **thinking of** going to China. [it's my plan to go] (used in the continuous form)

This land **belongs to** the company. [it is the company's land]

I **translated** the letter **into** French. [changed from one language into another]

She **complained to** the manager **about** the food. [said she wasn't happy/satisfied with]

I can't **concentrate on** [think about] my work when the radio is playing.

We can **rely on** this photocopier. [trust it; it will not go wrong]

I may go but it **depends on** the weather. [used to say you are not sure about something]

## Language help

**Depend (on)** has other meanings:

*Martha depends on her son for money. [she needs his money]*

*We can depend on the others for support. [we can trust the others to support us]*

Remember: it **depends on** something or someone (NOT it depends **of** something or someone)

## B

## Prepositions that change the meaning



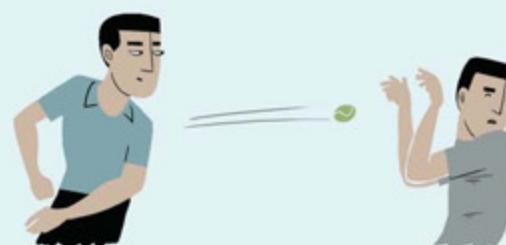
She **shouted to** me. [spoke in a loud voice to be heard]



He **shouted at** me. [spoke in a loud voice because he was angry]



He **threw** the ball **to** me. [for me to catch it]



He **threw** the ball **at** me. [in order to hit me]

## C

## Adjective + preposition

I've never been very **good at** maths. (opp **bad at**)

She's **afraid of** flying. [frightened of]

The neighbours **are fond of** the children. [like]

She's **similar to** her sister [the same as her in some ways], but very **different from** her brother.

He's very **interested in** photography.

I think she's **aware of** the problem. [knows about]

I'm **tired of** people telling me what to do. [bored or a bit angry about]

Katya **is mad about** Brad Pitt. [likes him very much; *infml*]

We're **short of** coffee at the moment. [we don't have much]

There's **something wrong with** this TV. [the TV is not working correctly]

# Exercises

## 77.1 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the best endings on the right.

- 1 He's tired
- 2 She wasn't aware
- 3 He threw the pen to
- 4 She complained
- 5 He shouted at
- 6 He shouted to
- 7 He threw the book at
- 8 I don't agree

<input type="checkbox"/>

- a me, but it missed.
- b to the manager.
- c of working at weekends.
- d his friend on the other side of the lake.
- e me, but I dropped it.
- f with them.
- g us to get out of his garden.
- h of her mistakes.

## 77.2 Complete the questions with the correct preposition, then write an answer for each one.

- 1 A: What is she worried about? B: Her exams.
- 2 A: What subjects is she good at? B: Maths.
- 3 A: Who does this belong to? B: My mother.
- 4 A: What does he spend all his money on? B: Food.
- 5 A: What are you afraid of? B: Spiders.
- 6 A: What kind of films are you interested in? B: Horror films.
- 7 A: What does the decision depend on? B: The weather.
- 8 A: I know he's angry, but who's he shouting at? B: His wife.
- 9 A: Who can we rely on? B: Our friends.
- 10 A: What language is the book being translated into? B: Spanish.

## 77.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Are you going to the exhibition?  
B: Yes, I'm very interested in art.
- 2 A: Is she similar to her sister?  
B: No, they're completely different.
- 3 A: What did she think about?  
B: She wasn't happy with the food.
- 4 A: Angel is very good-looking.  
B: That's why I'm keen about him!
- 5 A: What's wrong with the radio?  
B: I don't know, but it's not working.
- 6 A: Did you like the course?  
B: No, I wasn't very satisfied with it.
- 7 A: What's the matter?  
B: I can't concentrate on this with the TV on.
- 8 A: It's a big problem.  
B: Yes, but we're optimistic about that.
- 9 A: We're a bit short of milk.  
B: OK. I'll buy some when I go out.
- 10 A: Do Max's children have jobs?  
B: No, they still depend on their parents.

## 77.4 Do you know which preposition follows the words below? They are all in this book. If you don't know, use the index to help you. A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition.

keen ..... succeed ..... apply .....  
suffer ..... get married ..... apologise .....

## 77.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 I'm not very good at ....
- 2 I've always been interested in ....
- 3 I'm not very fond of ....
- 4 I spend most of my money on ....
- 5 For my next holiday, I'm thinking about ....

## A

**By, on or in + noun**

I took his pen **by mistake** [I thought it was my pen].

These shoes are made **by hand** [not using a machine].

I met them **by chance** [it wasn't planned; it was luck].



He broke the plate **by accident** [he did not want or plan to do it].

He broke the plate **on purpose** [he wanted to do it; it was his intention].

My boss is **on the phone** at the moment. [using the phone]

The workers are **on strike** [they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.].

The books were **on display** in the window. [in the window for people to look at]

Part of the building was **on fire** [burning].

Most of the passengers are now **on board** [on the train, boat, plane, etc.].

Why are they always **in a hurry** [needing to do something or go somewhere very quickly]?

I explained everything **in detail** [including all the important information].

She won't make that mistake again **in future**.

The poor little girl was **in tears** [crying].

## B

**Phrases easily confused**

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and the students are usually here **on time** [at 8.30].

If we hurry, we'll be there **in time** [before the time we need to be there].

We were tired of waiting, so **in the end** we went home. [finally, after a lot of time or thought]

**At the end** of the book they get married. [in the last part]

To be successful **in business** it's important to get on well with people. [working as businesspeople]

They're both in Germany **on business** [they are there for work, not a holiday].

I'm afraid this book's a bit **out-of-date** [old and not useful, or not correct in its information].

I try to keep **up-to-date** with all the changes. [knowing all the most recent ideas and information]

I'll see you **in a moment** [not now, but very soon; syn **in a minute**].

I can't speak to you **at the moment** [now; syn **right now**].

**Common mistakes**

I'm busy **at the moment**. (NOT I'm busy **in this moment**.)

# Exercises

## 78.1 Put the nouns into the correct columns.

board hand accident display detail  
fire future mistake tears strike

on	in	by
board		

## 78.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm afraid I deleted your email on/in/by accident.
- 2 Did she hit him on/by/in purpose?
- 3 I just saw them with/by/on chance.
- 4 Most of these files are out-of-/out-from-/out-for- date.
- 5 My wife is away in/on/by business at the moment.
- 6 I'm afraid I'm busy on/in/at the moment.
- 7 I've got to go; I'm in/on/at a hurry.
- 8 I won't go there again on/in/at future.

## 78.3 Complete the missing noun in these prepositional phrases.

- 1 I saw smoke coming out of the window, and I realised the house was on fire.
- 2 Nobody is at the factory. The workers are all on.
- 3 These chocolates are expensive because they are all made by.
- 4 I'm just going to the shop but I'll be back in a.
- 5 I'm sure she broke that vase on; she never liked it.
- 6 I'm sorry I can't stop to talk now – I'm in a.
- 7 She never thanked me for the present, so I won't buy her another one in.
- 8 You can't trust things you read on the Internet; a lot of the information there is out-of-.
- 9 I told them everything they wanted to know. I explained it all in.
- 10 I went to the exhibition, and some of Katya's paintings were on.
- 11 The manager can't speak to you at the; I'm afraid she's on the.
- 12 It was a terrible journey but we got there in the.

## 78.4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a prepositional phrase.

- 1 The meeting was planned for 11 am and we got there at 11 am. on time
- 2 Did you get to the cinema before the film started? .....
- 3 Most of the factory is burning. .....
- 4 I had great difficulty finding the camera I wanted, so finally I bought one on the Internet.  
.....
- 5 He gets killed in the last scene of the film. .....
- 6 I'm afraid I'm very busy right now. .....
- 7 I saw her yesterday but we didn't plan to meet. .....
- 8 I'm writing an email, but I'll be with you very soon. .....
- 9 Most of these books are old and the information is wrong. .....
- 10 I explained the system with all the important information. .....

## A

**Formation**

A phrasal verb is a verb + adverb or preposition, and sometimes a verb + adverb *and* preposition.

He **fell over** [fell to the ground] and hurt his knee.

I'll try to **find out** [learn/discover] the quickest way to get there.

He didn't like his coat, so he **gave it away** [gave it to someone for no money].

If you don't understand the meaning, **look it up** [find the meaning in a book/dictionary].

Who's going to **sort out** the problem? [deal with it successfully; solve it]

He doesn't **get on with** [have a good relationship with] his parents. (verb + adv. + prep.)

## B

**Meaning**

The adverb or preposition does not always change the meaning of the verb, and is not always used.

I didn't **wake (up)** until 7 o'clock. She's **saving (up)** for a new computer.

**Hurry (up)** or we'll be late.

I went to **lie (down)** on the bed.

Sometimes an adverb adds a particular meaning to the verb. For example, **back** can mean *return*.

I bought this jacket yesterday, but I'm going to **take it back** to the shop; it's too small.

You can look at the books, but remember to **put them back** on the shelf.

They liked Greece so much they want to **go back** next year.

Often, the adverb or preposition changes the meaning of the verb: *give up* doesn't mean the same as *give*, and *carry on* doesn't mean the same as *carry*.

My wife has decided to **give up** [stop] smoking.

We'll take a short break and then **carry on** [continue] with the meeting.

The shops are going to **put up** [increase] the price of bread.

When the hotel gets busy, we have to **take on** [employ] more staff.

## C

**Multiple meanings**

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

**go away**

I was busy, so I told him to **go away** [leave].

We try to **go away** in August. [go on holiday]

**Pick something /someone up**

I **picked up** most of the rubbish. [lifted it from the floor]

I'm going to **pick Jane up** at the station. [collect someone, usually in a car]

**Put something on**

Could you **put** the light **on** [make a piece of equipment work by pressing a switch; *syn* **switch sth on**]?

I **put on** my best suit. [put clothes on your body]



# Exercises

## 79.1

Choose the correct adverb or preposition to complete the sentence.

- |   |        |        |        |
|---|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 I can't see. Could you put the light ..... ?            | a in   | b on   | c out  |
| 2 If he doesn't want it, he can give it ..... .           | a out  | b away | c up   |
| 3 Have they sorted it ..... ?                             | a out  | b over | c up   |
| 4 It was broken, so I had to take it ..... .              | a over | b on   | c back |
| 5 I went to the airport to pick her ..... .               | a up   | b down | c over |
| 6 What time did you wake ..... ?                          | a to   | b up   | c for  |
| 7 I get married next year. I need to start saving ..... . | a out  | b on   | c up   |
| 8 Could you switch the TV ..... ?                         | a down | b on   | c in   |

## 79.2

Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

- 1 We never discovered what it means. ..... *found out*
- 2 I'd like to return next year. ..... *come back*
- 3 We collected Mia from the station. ..... *picked up*
- 4 We'll have to increase the price this year. ..... *raise*
- 5 I've decided to stop eating chocolate. ..... *quit*
- 6 Is Hana going to continue with her English course? ..... *keep*
- 7 I told them to leave. ..... *go away*
- 8 I have a good relationship with my parents. ..... *get along well with*
- 9 We are planning to employ ten new drivers next year. ..... *hire*

## 79.3

Look at the dictionary entry for *go off* and match the meanings with the sentences below.

- a When the light goes off, the machine has finished. .... *3*
- b My alarm clock went off early this morning. .... *1*
- c I think this meat has gone off. .... *2*
- d The bomb went off without any warning. .... *4*
- e Beatriz went off early; she had to meet a friend. .... *5*

## 79.4

Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Can you afford that bike?  
B: No, I'll have to ..... *save up* for it.
- 2 A: Is there still a problem?  
B: Don't worry. I'll ..... it ..... .
- 3 A: Can we look at some books?  
B: Yes, but ..... them ..... afterwards.
- 4 A: Did you feel unwell?  
B: Yes, I had to ..... on the bed.
- 5 A: What's the matter?  
B: I ..... and cut my knee.
- 6 A: I don't know what this means.  
B: Well, ..... it ..... in a dictionary.
- 7 A: Does he look smart?  
B: Yes. He's ..... his suit.
- 8 A: ..... or we'll be late.  
B: OK, I'm coming.

### go off

#### 1 Leave

to leave a place and go somewhere else

*She's gone off to the cafe with Tony.*

#### 2 Food UK informal

If food goes off it is not good to eat anymore because it is too old.

#### 3 Stop

If a light or machine goes off, it stops working.

*The heating goes off at 10 o'clock.*

#### 4 Explode

If a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires.

#### 5 Make noise

If something that makes a noise goes off, it suddenly starts making a noise.

*His car alarm goes off every time it rains.*

## A

**Phrasal verbs with no object**

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object. We cannot put other words between the parts of the verb.

When does your train **get in** [arrive]?

**Hold on** [wait a moment], I just need to get my coat.

The car **broke down** on my way to work. [stopped working]

I'll **call for** them at 8 o'clock. [go to collect them]

We **set off** [started the journey] about 7.30.

## B

**Phrasal verbs with an object**

Many phrasal verbs need an object. We can usually put the object in different positions.

**Put on** your shoes.

**Turn on** the TV.

**Take off** your coat.

**Put** your shoes **on**.

**Turn** the TV **on**.

**Take** your coat **off**.

These are separable phrasal verbs, but if the object is a long phrase, it usually goes at the end, e.g. **I turned off the lights in the living room**. If the object is a pronoun, it must go in the middle, e.g. **Turn it off**.

## Common mistakes

**Put** them **on**. (NOT Put **on** them.); **Take** it **off**. (NOT Take **off** it.)

There are some phrasal verbs where the object must come after the phrasal verb.

I will **look after** the children for you. [take care of them]

How did the two men **break into** the shop? [enter the shop using force, e.g. breaking a window]

## C

**In dictionaries**

Dictionaries usually show the grammar of a phrasal verb like this:

The screenshot shows a digital dictionary interface with a search bar and navigation icons. The first entry is for **hang around**, categorized as **No object**. It defines the verb as "(also UK hang about)" and provides examples: "to spend time somewhere, usually without doing very much: There's nowhere for teenagers to go, so they just hang around on street corners." The second entry is for **hand sth out**, categorized as **Separable**. It defines the verb as "to give something to all the people in a group: A girl was handing out leaflets at the station." The third entry is for **get over sth**, categorized as **Not separable**. It defines the verb as "to begin to feel better after being unhappy or ill: It took her months to get over the shock of Richard leaving." The interface includes a sidebar with the word count (166) and a footer with page numbers (166-167).

## D

**Style**

Phrasal verbs are commonly used in spoken and written English. Many phrasal verbs are quite informal, and sometimes there is a single word with the same meaning as a phrasal verb, which sounds more formal. We use this word instead of the phrasal verb in more formal situations.

**leave sb/sth out** [not include sb/sth; syn **omit**], e.g. He made a list of people but left me out.

**make sth up** [create sth from your imagination; syn **invent**], e.g. We had to make up a story.

**put sth off** [put sth back to a later date; syn **postpone**], e.g. They put the game off till Friday.

**turn sth/sb down** [refuse an offer or request; syn **reject**], e.g. I offered her a job but she turned it down.

# Exercises

## 80.1 Correct any mistakes with word order in the sentences. Be careful: some are correct.

- 1 She asked me to hand out them. *hand them out*
- 2 I've got some boots but I'll put on them later.
- 3 Could you turn the light on?
- 4 My boots were tight and I couldn't take off them.
- 5 We set off very early this morning.
- 6 Why did they turn down it?
- 7 The boys were hanging the station around.

## 80.2 Replace the underlined word with a phrasal verb that makes the sentence more informal.

- 1 Could you wait a minute, please? *hold on* .....
- 2 As so many people are ill, I've had to postpone the meeting till next week. .....
- 3 The teacher told us to invent a story to go with the picture in our books. .....
- 4 They omitted a number of the names from my list. .....
- 5 I don't know why he rejected my offer of help. .....
- 6 The train should arrive by ten o'clock. .....

## 80.3 Write a sentence to describe what is happening or what has happened in the pictures.



1 *He's putting on his jacket.* .....

3 .....

5 .....



2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

## 80.4 Complete the phrasal verbs.

- 1 I'm not stopping, so I won't take off ..... my coat.
- 2 We didn't think Mike was good enough, so we left him ..... .
- 3 He told me he was 25, but I don't believe him. I think he's making that ..... .
- 4 We'll get there by seven if we set ..... now.
- 5 I'll call ..... you a bit later. I should be at your house by 7 o'clock.
- 6 They offered him the job but he turned it ..... .

## 80.5 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 It was cold so I put on my gloves/coat/scarf.
- 2 Inma is still getting over .....
- 3 I'm not very good at making up .....
- 4 She asked me to turn on .....
- 5 Two men tried to break into .....
- 6 She's going out, so I said I'd look after .....

## A

## Things we make, do and take

## Common mistakes

We use all three of these common verbs with particular nouns. These word partners (collocations) are often different in other languages, so look at them carefully.

I've **made** a **mistake**.

She **took** a **photo** of me this morning.

They **made** a big **effort** to finish the work.

Sometimes two different verbs are possible.

I'm just going to **take/have** a **shower**.

**Take/Have** a **look** at these pictures.

We must **make/take** a **decision**.

I'm afraid I haven't **done** my **homework**.

I haven't **done** the **housework** yet.

The children are **making** too much **noise**.

I'm **doing/taking** a Spanish **course** next month.

I don't **do/take** much **exercise**.

## B

## Make

**Make** can mean 'to cause something to happen or cause a particular state'.

I like Boris – he **makes me** laugh.

It **made them** angry when Karen refused to help with the washing-up.

**Make** can also mean 'to force someone to do something'.

My parents **made me** do my homework when I was a child.

The police **made us** wait outside the main gates.

If you **make friends with** someone, you get to know them and like them.

I **made friends with** a couple of guys from Canada when I was on holiday.

If you **make up your mind**, you decide something.

He's **made up his mind** to leave work at the end of next month.

## C

## Do

We use **do** to describe a general action when we don't know what it is, or there's no noun.

What shall we **do** this afternoon?

Don't just stand there, **do** something.

If you **do your hair / make-up**, you make it look nice.

I'll just **do my hair**, then we can go out.

If you **do your best**, you try as hard as possible.

I'm not a good student, but I always **do my best**.

## D

## Take

**Take** can mean to:

- remove something from a place/person, e.g. I **took** the key **out of** my pocket.
- remove something without permission, e.g. Someone has **taken** my pen.
- accept something, e.g. Did he **take** the job they offered him? Do they **take** credit cards there?
- write something down, e.g. I **took** notes during the meeting. The man **took** my name and address.
- wear a particular size in clothes, e.g. I **take** size 43 shoes.

If you **take it / things easy**, you relax and don't do very much.

I'll **take things easy** today.

If you **take a break**, you stop work and rest for a short period.

Let's **take a** ten-minute **break**.

# Exercises

## 81.1 Choose the correct verb(s). Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 Did he do / make many mistakes?
- 2 I couldn't do / make the homework.
- 3 We must take / make a decision soon.
- 4 I want to do / make a course in English.
- 5 Could you take / have a look at this letter?
- 6 How many photos did they make / take?
- 7 I don't often make / do the housework.
- 8 They did / made a lot of noise at the party.

## 81.2 What are the people doing in the pictures?



1 *She's taking a photo.* .....

3 .....

5 .....



2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

## 81.3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a phrase including the verb in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 I clean the flat at the weekend. DO
- 2 They forced us to go. MAKE
- 3 I'm trying as hard as possible. DO
- 4 OK, let's stop work and relax for a bit. TAKE
- 5 He is definitely trying. MAKE
- 6 When are they going to decide? MAKE
- 7 I'm going to relax and do nothing this weekend. TAKE

*I do the housework at the weekend.* .....

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 81.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Someone took ..... my coat. It was here a minute ago and now it's gone.
- 2 I'm tired of writing this report. I'm going to ..... a break for ten minutes.
- 3 We ..... friends with Andrés when we were in the same class last year.
- 4 I've ..... nothing today.
- 5 If they offered him a job with more money, why didn't he ..... it?
- 6 Could you take a ..... at my essay? I think there are lots of mistakes in it.
- 7 When he shouted out the wrong answer, it ..... him look stupid.
- 8 What size do you ..... ?
- 9 I'm putting on weight because I don't ..... enough exercise.
- 10 I've ..... up my mind. I'm going to go to Thailand for my holiday.

## 81.5 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 What things make you happy, make you sad, and make you angry?
- 2 What things do your parents, or your boss, or your teachers make you do (or made you do in the past)?

## A

**Give**

We can use **give** when someone or something causes a certain effect.

All that noise has **given me a headache**.

The walk this morning **gave me an appetite** [made me hungry].

Listening to Wai Sin has **given me an idea**.

We often use **give** with different nouns to express an action.

He **gave** me some **advice** [advised me].

Valentina **gave** us a **shock** when she shouted like that. [shocked us]

I had to **give** a **speech** at the wedding. [talk formally to a group of people; also **give a lecture**]

I'll **give** her a **ring** [ring/phone her].

I had lots of work to do, but fortunately Ollie **gave** me a **hand** [helped me].



**She gave me a hug.**



**He gave the car a push.**

## B

**Keep**

**Keep** can mean to stay or cause someone to stay in a particular state or condition.

**Keep right** [stay on the right side].

She asked us to **keep quiet**.

This coat will **keep you warm**.

Going to the gym **keeps me fit**.

**Keep (on) doing something** means to repeat doing something, and often it is something you don't want to do or happen.

I **keep losing** my glasses.

I **keep getting** backache.

She **keeps on interrupting** me. [talks to me / disturbs me when I am doing something]

If you **keep in touch**, you continue to communicate with someone, especially by phone or email.

I met Mara on holiday and we've **kept in touch** ever since.

If you **keep a secret**, you don't tell other people something that you know.

Tom told me not to tell anyone about his new job, but I'm not very good at **keeping a secret**.

If you **keep something up**, you continue doing something at a high level.

You're working hard and your English is improving. That's good – **keep it up**.

## C

**Miss**

If you **miss** a person, you feel sad because that person is not there.

When I went to work in Hungary, I really **missed my girlfriend**.

If you **miss** what someone says, you don't hear it.

I'm sorry, I **missed that**. What did you say?

If you **miss a chance / opportunity**, you don't use an opportunity to do something.

Lily's been chosen for the team, but now she's injured, she might **miss her chance** to play.

If you **miss** something, you manage to avoid it or not experience it.

I left home early in order to **miss the rush hour**.

# Exercises

## 82.1 Match each verb with three phrases on the right.

give	<i>a speech</i> .....	in touch
	.....	<i>a speech</i>
	.....	an opportunity
miss	.....	on doing something
	.....	someone a hug
	.....	a person
keep	.....	someone a hand
	.....	what someone says
	.....	a secret

## 82.2 Complete the sentences with a suitable adjective or -ing form.

- 1 I never drink coffee at night; it keeps me *awake* .....
- 2 This umbrella should keep you ..... .
- 3 I don't know why she keeps ..... – it wasn't a very funny story.
- 4 If you do lots of exercise, it'll keep you .....
- 5 It's really stupid, but I keep ..... to lock the doors and windows when I go out.
- 6 They're making a lot of noise in there. Could you tell them to keep ..... ?
- 7 I know his name is Stuart, but I keep ..... it's Stephen.
- 8 I keep ..... up early in the morning because it's so light in my bedroom.

## 82.3 Complete the dialogues using a verb + noun. Don't repeat the underlined phrases.

- 1 A: He's sad without Harper.  
B: I know. He *misses her* .....
- 2 A: Did you phone her?  
B: Yes, I ..... her a ..... last night.
- 3 A: He didn't put his arms round her, did he?  
B: Yes. He ..... her a big .....
- 4 A: Have you stayed in contact with your old school friends all this time?  
B: Yes, I've tried to ..... in ..... as much as possible.
- 5 A: Could anyone help me with this?  
B: Yeah, I'll ..... you a .....
- 6 A: It's his own fault. He had a chance to go and he didn't take it.  
B: I know. He ..... his .....
- 7 A: I expect you're hungry after all that work.  
B: Yes, it's ..... me an .....

## 82.4 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and a word from the box.

shock	fun	headaches	secret	push	up	dog	idea	rush hour
-------	-----	-----------	--------	------	----	-----	------	-----------

- 1 She *gave* ..... me a *shock* ..... when she broke that window.
- 2 If we leave the party early, we'll ..... all the .....
- 3 The guys are working really hard, but I don't know if they can ..... it .....
- 4 I couldn't get the car started, but fortunately someone ..... me a .....
- 5 We left before seven because we wanted to ..... the .....
- 6 She doesn't know what the problem is, but she ..... getting .....
- 7 I saw a fascinating programme on TV, and that's what ..... me the .....
- 8 When I go on holiday alone, I really ..... my .....
- 9 I didn't say anything to Annie about the wedding because she can't ..... a .....

## A

## Uses

**Get** is an informal word and is very common in spoken English. It can have many different meanings.

OBTAIN

I **got** a ticket from my brother.I need to **get** some help.

RECEIVE

I **got** a new phone for my birthday.Did you **get** my email?

BUY

Where did you **get** that watch?I went to **get** a magazine.

ARRIVE

What time did you **get** here?I'll phone when I **get** home.

BECOME

It **gets** dark very early in winter.My hands are **getting** cold.

FETCH

Could you (**go and**) **get** my glasses from the kitchen for me?

ANSWER the door/phone

A: Is that the door?

B: Yes, I'll **get** it.

DO a task, or arrange for someone to do it for you, using **get** + past participle

I'll never **get** this essay finished; it's too difficult.

I need to **get** my hair cut.

I **got** my watch repaired today.

## B

## Phrases

You can **get in touch with** me via email. [make contact by email, phone or letter]

A bedtime story helps children **get to sleep** [start sleeping].

The salsa classes are a chance for us to **get together** [meet and spend time together].

I'm sorry I **got** the number **wrong** [said or wrote something that was not correct].

My cold is **getting worse** [becoming more unpleasant; opp **getting better**].

I'd like to **get rid of** my old CDs. [throw them away, give them away, or sell them]

I **got to know** lots of Americans when I stayed in San Francisco. [met and became friends with]

## C

## Phrasal verbs

He stopped the car and I **got out** [left the car; also leave a building].

I gave her £25, but I'll **get it back** tomorrow. [have it returned to me]

The door was locked so we couldn't **get in** [enter a place, especially when it is difficult].

Our train should **get in** around midnight. [arrive]

What time did you **get up** this morning? [get out of bed]

# Exercises

## 83.1 Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

- 1 I usually get about five emails a day. *receive* .....
- 2 Where can I get something to eat round here? .....
- 3 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute. .....
- 4 What time did they get here last night? .....
- 5 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs. .....
- 6 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full. .....
- 7 The phone's ringing. Could you get it for me? .....
- 8 Molly sent me a card but I never got it. .....

## 83.2 Complete the dialogues using *getting* + a suitable adjective. Add other words if necessary.

- 1 A: It's *getting cold in here* .  
B: Yes, it is. I'll turn on the heating.
- 2 A: I'm .....  
B: Me too. Let's have something to eat.
- 3 A: I'm .....  
B: Yes, me too. I'll open the window.
- 4 A: It's .....  
B: Yes, it is. I'll put the lights on.
- 5 A: It's .....  
B: Yes, it is. I think I'll go to bed.
- 6 A: My English is .....  
B: No, it isn't – it's much better now.

## 83.3 Rewrite the sentences using a phrase or phrasal verb with *get*. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 Will the books be returned to you?  
Will you *get the books back*? .....
- 2 We must meet up and have a meal.  
We must .....  
.....
- 3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?  
How do you .....  
.....
- 4 I must contact the travel company.  
I must .....  
.....
- 5 I'd like to throw away these old magazines.  
I'd like to .....  
.....
- 6 The train won't arrive before 10 o'clock.  
The train won't .....  
.....
- 7 The doors were locked; we couldn't leave.  
The doors were locked; we couldn't .....  
.....
- 8 I was awake for hours last night.  
I couldn't .....  
.....

## 83.4 Continue these statements in a suitable way.

- 1 The window is broken. We *need to get it repaired*.  
.....
- 2 My hair is getting long. I .....  
.....
- 3 This essay is taking me hours. I .....  
.....
- 4 My watch isn't working. I .....  
.....
- 5 Lola has still got my CDs. I .....  
.....

## 83.5 Write down examples of *get* that you see or hear, and try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to understand how this important word is used in English.

## A

## Different meanings of go

- When we leave a place in order to do an activity, especially for enjoyment, we often express it with **go + -ing** or **go (out) for a + noun**.

We could **go shopping / sightseeing / swimming / clubbing** [to a nightclub] tomorrow.  
Why don't we **go (out) for a walk / drive / drink / meal / picnic** at lunchtime?

- Go** can also describe a changing state (usually to a bad one) with certain adjectives.

My dad's **going grey** [his hair is becoming grey] and my uncle is **going bald** [losing his hair].

My grandmother is **going deaf** [deaf = cannot hear].

Our 12-year-old dog is **going blind** [blind = cannot see].

He'll **go mad** if you wear his jacket. [become very angry; *infml*]

- We use **go** when we want to ask/say if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere.

Does this bus **go** to the National Gallery?

I think this road **goes** through the village.



**going bald**

- Go** can also mean 'disappear'.

When I looked in the drawer, my watch **had gone** [it was there before, but not now].

- Go and get** means **fetch** [go to a place and bring something back with you].

You stay here, and I'll **go and get** the bags from the car.

## B

## Phrasal verbs and expressions

A: What's **going on** in here? [happening]

A: Shall we wait for George or **go on to** the theatre? [continue or move to another place/thing]

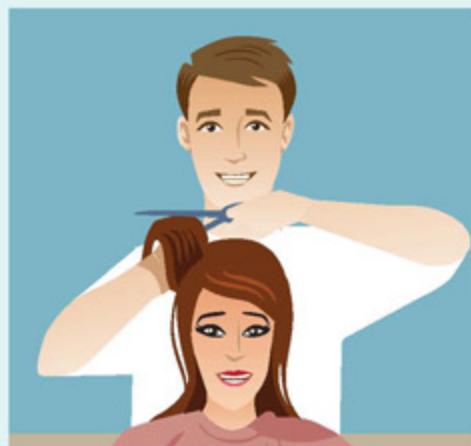
B: I don't know. I touched this switch and the lights **went out** [stopped working].

B: Er, I'm not sure of the way; let's wait for George.

A: How's the business?

B: Well, it was **going well** [successful; opp **going badly**] up until the summer, but since then a few things have **gone wrong** [there have been problems], and we've lost a few customers.

A: Are you **going away** this year? [going on holiday]



B: Yes. We had a lovely time in Italy last year, so we've decided to **go back** in June. [return]

A: I think I'll have the chicken. How about you?

A: **How's it going?** [How are you? *infml*]

B: I'm **going for** the roast beef. [choosing]

B: Not bad. And you?

# Exercises

## 84.1 Complete the sentences with an *-ing* noun, e.g. **riding**, or **(out)** for a + noun, e.g. **(out)** for a walk.

- 1 I went shopping ..... this morning and bought some new clothes.
- 2 It was a lovely day, so we made some sandwiches and decided to go ..... .
- 3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new café near the square?
- 4 I wanted to go ..... because it was my first time in Rome.
- 5 My brother has just got a new sports car. We could go ..... at the weekend.
- 6 The pool is at the end of the road, so we often go ..... .
- 7 I'm just going to take the dog ..... .
- 8 We went ..... last night and didn't get home until three this morning.
- 9 It was my father's birthday, so we decided to go ..... .

## 84.2 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 He went mad when he saw me. got angry .....
- 2 Hi Sue. How's it going? .....
- 3 Could you go and get my handbag from the other room? .....
- 4 Do you want to go on and do the next exercise? .....
- 5 What's going on in the next classroom? .....
- 6 When I got back, the others had gone. .....
- 7 I can't stay for the weekend; I have to go back on Friday. .....
- 8 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station? .....
- 9 My girlfriend had fish but I went for the chicken dish. .....

## 84.3 Complete the dialogues with a phrasal verb or expression using *go*.

- 1 A: I hear you had problems with your exam?  
B: Yes, everything went wrong ..... I couldn't answer any of the questions.
- 2 A: Can't he see very well?  
B: No, I'm afraid he's ..... .
- 3 A: Your uncle's just opened a new restaurant, hasn't he? How's it doing?  
B: Great. It's ..... .
- 4 A: I imagine your parents were angry that you had a party when they were away.  
B: They were. My dad ..... .
- 5 A: Simon isn't losing his hair already, is he?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid he's ..... .
- 6 A: Are the books downstairs in the staffroom?  
B: Yes. Could you ..... them for me?  
A: Yeah, sure.
- 7 A: Are you having a holiday this year?  
B: Yes, we're hoping to ..... in the summer.
- 8 A: What have you done?!  
B: I don't know. The lights just ..... .

## 84.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Do you often go swimming in the summer?  | Do you often go for a walk on your own?            |
| Do you go clubbing most weekends?        | Do you like going out for a meal?                  |
| Do you often go shopping with a friend?  | Do you often go sightseeing on holiday?            |
| Did you often go for picnics as a child? | Do you enjoy going out for a drive in the country? |

## A

## The five basic senses



sight



hearing



taste



smell



touch

To express it another way, the ability to see, hear, taste, smell and feel.

## B

## Sense verbs with adjectives

You **look** tired this evening. [from what I can see]

That man **sounded foreign**. [from another country, from what I could hear]

This cake **tastes** a bit strange.

Fresh bread **smells** wonderful.

This shirt **feels damp**. [slightly wet, often in an unpleasant way]

## Language help

The verbs above can all be used as nouns.

*I like the **look** of this hotel.* [the appearance of it]

*I love the **sound** of his voice.*

## C

Sense verbs with *like* or *as if/though*

We can describe things using sense verbs with **like** + noun or **as if / though** + clause, but *not* **like** + adjective (NOT She looks **like** nice). When we use **like** + noun, we are often describing how similar two things are.

Have you ever had a nectarine? They **look like** peaches.



nectarine

Did you hear that noise? It **sounded like** an alarm.



coconut

That shampoo **smells like** coconut. (also **smells of** coconut)



silk

Don't you think this material **feels like** silk?

That boy **looks as if** he's trying to get over the wall.

I spoke to Isobel. It **sounded as though** they had a good time on holiday.

## Language help

We also use **seem** and **appear** to describe a sense or feeling about someone or something, after we have seen them, talked to them, etc. Before **like** + noun, we usually use **seem**.

*I saw Will and he **seemed/appeared** quite happy. The shop **appears/seems** to be very busy. Amelia said she wanted to travel a bit, which **seems like** a good idea.*

## D

## Verbs easily confused

If you **look** [look carefully] at the map, you can **see** [are able to see] the church on the left.

They've been **watching** that man for weeks. [paying attention to something, often for a long time]

He ran into me because he wasn't **looking** [paying attention].

I **watched/saw** a film on TV. I **saw** a film at the cinema. (NOT I **watched** a film at the cinema.)

I **heard** [was able to hear] what she said but I wasn't **listening** [paying attention].

Don't **touch** the oven [put your hand on it]. It's hot!

Just **feel** my feet [put your hand on them to discover something about them]. Aren't they cold?

# Exercises

## 85.1 Cover the opposite page. What are the five basic senses?

sight .....

## 85.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't *hearing* / *listening to* what I was saying.
- 2 I was *listening to* / *hearing* the radio when I *listened to* / *heard* a terrible noise outside.
- 3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't *listen to* / *hear* it.
- 4 There's a good film on at the cinema. Have you *watched* / *seen* it?
- 5 Quick. Come and *watch* / *look at* this man walking by.
- 6 We *watched* / *looked at* the birds while they were eating food from the bird table.
- 7 If you stand near the fire, you can *touch* / *feel* how hot it is.
- 8 You mustn't *touch* / *feel* the paintings in the museum.
- 9 If you *see* / *look* carefully, you can *look* / *see* how the man does the magic trick.
- 10 Anya wants to get a parrot, which *seems* / *appears* like a strange thing to do.

## 85.3 Complete the sentences with a different sense verb and a word from the box. Add *like* where necessary.

delicious    a church    an alarm    very nice  
damp    coconut    calm and relaxed    silk

- 1 Abigail has just taken the cakes out of the oven and they ..... *smell delicious* .....
- 2 The sheets on her bed looked expensive, and when I touched them, they ..... .
- 3 I could see something quite tall in the distance. It .....
- 4 When I heard the noise I jumped out of bed because it .....
- 5 Have you tried these biscuits? They .....
- 6 I've just met my new class; they .....
- 7 I don't want to sit on the grass. It .....
- 8 I saw her before the exam and she .....

## 85.4 Complete the middle part of the sentences.

- 1 Alexei said that Lola was doing well, so it ..... *sounds as if/though* ..... she'll pass the exam.
- 2 Erin told me about the accident. It ..... it was quite serious.
- 3 Put your hand on the radiator. Does it ..... it's getting warm?
- 4 I've just spoken to Tom. He ..... he's got a cold.
- 5 Have you tried the soup? It ..... it needs a bit more salt to me.
- 6 Is that your little boy on the floor? It ..... he's fallen over.
- 7 Alina didn't ask any questions. It ..... she wasn't interested.

## 85.5

Over to you

Complete the sentences about your own likes and dislikes. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- I love the smell of .....  
I hate the smell of .....  
I love the sound of .....  
I hate the sound of .....  
I love the taste of .....  
I hate the taste of .....

## A

## Common uncountable nouns

One of the problems with uncountable nouns is that many of them are countable in other languages.

## Common mistakes

I need information. (NOT I need **a**n information.) (no indefinite article)

I need some information. (NOT I need **informations**.) (no plural form)

The homework was difficult. (NOT The homework **were** difficult.) (use with a singular verb)

- You can put all that **rubbish** in the bin over there. [things that you throw away because you do not want them]
- Is there any more **news** about the man who was injured?
- She gave me some good **advice** about buying a car. [what you think someone should do]
- Do the children get **pocket money** [money that parents give regularly to their children]?
- You need a lot of **equipment** for camping, e.g. tent, sleeping bag, torch, things for cooking, etc. [the things that are used for a particular activity]
- We sold the **furniture** [tables, chairs, armchairs, etc.].
- The **scenery** is really beautiful. [the natural beauty you see around you]
- My **knowledge of** Russian is limited. [what I know about it]
- She's worked very hard and I believe she is **making progress** [improving / getting better].
- Can you take the dog? We haven't got any **room** in our car. [empty space]
- Would anyone like some more **toast**?
- The children's **behaviour** was terrible: they were climbing all over the furniture and making a lot of noise. [the way you do and say things]



bin



tent



sleeping bag



torch



toast

## B

## Uncountable nouns in dictionaries

Dictionaries show countable nouns with a (C) and uncountable nouns with a (U). Some nouns can be countable with one meaning, and uncountable with another.

**experience** (U) [the knowledge you get from doing a particular job or activity]

She's got a lot of **experience of** working with children.

**experience** (C) [something that happens to you that affects the way you feel]

I had so many fantastic **experiences** on my trip to Thailand and Japan.

**chance** (U) [luck]

Lotto is a game of **chance**.

**chance** (C) [the opportunity to do something]

He's had several **chances** to go abroad, but he's just not interested.

## C

## Making uncountable nouns countable

You can make some uncountable nouns singular. Sometimes we do this with a word like **piece** (for advice, equipment, toast, furniture, news), but in spoken English we often use **a bit** (infml) with most uncountable nouns.

**a good piece of** advice

**an interesting bit of** news

**another piece of** toast

**just a bit of** rubbish

# Exercises

## 86.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I need some informations. *information* .....
- 2 Our teacher has a news about the trip. .....
- 3 She gave me some good advices. .....
- 4 Her progress are very good. .....
- 5 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday. .....
- 6 The furnitures were very old. .....
- 7 I have no experiences of using these equipments. .....
- 8 I need to improve my knowledges of this new technology. .....

## 86.2 Make the uncountable nouns countable.

- |                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 I did some homework.               | I did <i>a bit of homework</i> . |
| 2 It's useful equipment.             | It's .....                       |
| 3 It was good advice.                | It was .....                     |
| 4 Do you want some more toast?       | Do you want .....                |
| 5 She's making progress.             | She's making .....               |
| 6 There's some rubbish on the floor. | There's .....                    |
| 7 I gave them some pocket money.     | I gave them .....                |
| 8 I heard some news this morning.    | I heard .....                    |

## 86.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Have you been given all the details?  
B: No, I need more *information* .
- 2 A: She hasn't worked there long enough.  
B: No, she needs more .....
- 3 A: Is your flat big enough?  
B: No, we need more .....
- 4 A: Does she know what to do when she leaves school?  
B: No, she needs some .....
- 5 A: Don't you think the room looks empty?  
B: Yes, we need more .....
- 6 A: Is his English getting better?  
B: No, he isn't making any .....

## 86.4 Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

- 1 I asked my teacher for some *a*dvice ..... about grammar books.
- 2 I've had some great e..... when I've travelled on my own.
- 3 If we give him another c..... , I'm sure he'll be able to do it.
- 4 That stuff over there is r..... ; just throw it in the bin.
- 5 We camped on the hill above the lake because the s..... is so beautiful.
- 6 I don't know what's wrong with Celia, but her b..... was very strange this morning.
- 7 Do you have any e..... of working with computers?
- 8 I don't have any k..... of this subject; you'd better ask Fariah.

## 86.5 Use a dictionary to find out if these nouns are countable or uncountable. Keep a record of them in your notebook.

transport

luggage

suitcase

pasta

traffic

accident

## A

**Verb + -ing form**

A number of verbs are commonly followed by an *-ing* form.

## QUESTIONNAIRE

### QUESTIONS

- Do you **enjoy** studying?
- Do you **mind** getting up early? [Is it OK for you, or not?]
- Do you like or **dislike** having your photograph taken?
- Do you usually **avoid** speaking to strangers at parties? [try not to do something]
- Can you **imagine** being without a car? [think of yourself in a situation with no car]
- Have you ever **considered** [thought about] living in another country?
- Would you **recommend** [advise] having a holiday in the capital city of your country? If so, would you **suggest** going at a particular time of the year?

### ANSWERS

- |  |
|--|
| Yes, I do.   |
| No, I don't mind at all.                                     |
| I <b>hate</b> having my picture taken.                       |
| Yes. I prefer to talk to people that I already know.         |
| No, I can't. I need my car.                                  |
| Yes, many times. I'd like to live abroad.                    |
| Yes, I would, and I would suggest going in spring or autumn. |

### Common mistakes

I enjoy going there. (NOT I enjoy **to go** there.) They suggested leaving early. (NOT They suggested **to leave** early.) He recommended staying there. (NOT He recommended **to stay** there.)

## B

**Verb + to infinitive**

I **hope** to see them next week. [want to see them and believe I will see them]

They **agreed** to help me. [said they will help]

I **intend** to leave next month. [plan]

I **offered** to help them. [said I was happy to help]

I **attempted** to cook the dinner, but it was terrible. [tried]

I **promised** to bring her book back. [said I would definitely bring it back]

The shop assistant was very rude, so I **demanded** to see the manager. [said in a firm way]

## C

**Verb + (object) + preposition + noun/-ing**

A: Jo has just rung and **asked** me **for** advice about Greece. They're **thinking of**<sup>1</sup> going there.

B: Well, be careful. They went to India last year on your advice and then **blamed**<sup>2</sup> you **for** the terrible holiday they had.

A: That was their fault. They **insisted on**<sup>3</sup> going in the summer when it was far too hot.

<sup>1</sup> thinking about going to Greece (often used in the continuous and followed by a noun/-ing form; NOT I'm thinking **to go** there.)

<sup>2</sup> said you were responsible for something bad, in this case the terrible holiday

<sup>3</sup> said they must go (in the summer)

# Exercises

## 87.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 I hope *seeing* / *to see* them.
- 2 They agreed *helping* / *to help* me.
- 3 We enjoy *staying* / *to stay* by the sea.
- 4 I suggested *going* / *to go* on the train.
- 5 She insisted *in* / *on* paying for our meal.
- 6 We must attempt *getting* / *to get* there on time.
- 7 Have you considered *working* / *to work* in a bank?
- 8 I demanded *speaking* / *to speak* to the doctor in charge.
- 9 I asked *him help* / *him for help*.
- 10 They blamed me *for* / *of* it.
- 11 I don't mind *waiting* / *to wait* for you.
- 12 I try to avoid *travelling* / *to travel* in the rush hour.

## 87.2 Complete the sentences with the most suitable verb.

- 1 Have you ..... the waiter for the bill?
- 2 My sister is ..... of spending the summer in France if she can afford it.
- 3 I've had a computer for about 20 years; I can't ..... being without one.
- 4 We always try to ..... driving into town in the rush hour.
- 5 The accident wasn't my fault but they ..... me for it.
- 6 We're ..... to see my parents later this week. We had ..... to go last week, but Madison was ill and we couldn't go.
- 7 I ..... meeting your friends; they were really nice.
- 8 Have you ever ..... moving out of a town and going to live in the country?
- 9 I offered to drive, but Mason ..... on taking his car because he said he ..... being a passenger.
- 10 Ella's parents weren't happy with the school, and they ..... to see the head teacher.

**87.3 When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. A good dictionary will give you this information, usually with examples. Using a good English dictionary, find the constructions that commonly follow these verbs.**

### FORMAL

*Might I suggest a white wine with your salmon, sir?*

### [+ (that)]

*I suggest (that) we wait a while before we make any firm decisions.*

*Liz suggested (that) I try the shop on Mill Road.*

### [+ -ing VERB]

*I suggested putting the matter to the committee.*

fancy + ..... pretend + ..... or .....  
decide + ..... or ..... accuse + .....

## 87.4 Over to you

Answer the questions in the questionnaire on the opposite page. If possible, ask someone else the same questions. Then complete the sentences about yourself using the correct construction after each verb.

- I like .....  
I dislike .....  
I don't mind .....  
I'm thinking .....  
I can't imagine .....  
I hope .....  
I intend .....

## A

**A great opportunity**

“I’m 24 years old, and I work in a photography studio. It’s not a very exciting job but I love photography and the pay isn’t bad. But, two months ago, I was given the chance to go to Italy and work on a film by a famous director. My best friend thought that it was a fantastic opportunity and **advised<sup>1</sup> me to go**. Dad wasn’t so sure. He didn’t try and **persuade<sup>2</sup> me not to go**, but he **warned<sup>3</sup> me that** it would be hard work, and **reminded<sup>4</sup> me that** it was only three months, then I’d be out of a job. I **realised<sup>5</sup> that** my girlfriend wasn’t happy about it either, but I **promised<sup>6</sup> her that** I would phone every day, and **suggested<sup>7</sup> that** she could come out to Italy for a holiday while I was there. I didn’t **mention<sup>8</sup> that** I was part of a small team with three other women. Anyway, I’m going.”



<sup>1</sup> say what you think someone should do

advise + obj + inf

<sup>2</sup> make someone agree to do something by talking a lot

persuade + obj + inf

<sup>3</sup> tell someone that something bad may happen, to stop it happening

warn + obj + (that) ...

<sup>4</sup> tell someone something so that they don’t forget it

remind + obj + (that) ...

<sup>5</sup> understand something (that) you didn’t understand before

realise + (that) ...

<sup>6</sup> say (that) you will certainly do something

promise + (obj) + (that) ...

<sup>7</sup> tell someone about a possible idea or plan

suggest + (that) ...

<sup>8</sup> say something, often briefly or quickly

mention + (that) ...

**Language help**

Some verbs can be followed by different constructions. We can also say, for example:

*I suggested going there.*

suggest + -ing

*She warned me not to go.*

warn + obj + inf

*He reminded me to post the letter.*

remind + obj + inf

## B

**Other verbs**

Here are some more verbs which are used with the same constructions.

**Verb + (that)** ...: *say, hope, notice, recommend and expect.*

I **said** that I was busy. (NOT I said **him** that I was busy.)

I **hope** (that) you’ll come and see us soon.

When I left, I **noticed** that the door was open. [could see]

I **recommended** that we all go together, so no one gets lost.

I **expect** (that) he’ll ring us later. [think or believe that something will happen]

**Verb + object + (that)** ...: *tell, show and convince.*

I **told** them (that) they could leave early.

He tried to **convince me** that I needed some new clothes. [make me believe]

**Verb + object + to infinitive**: *ask, tell, want, allow, expect, remind, help and encourage.*

Tracey **asked** me to look after her cat.

They **told** us to wait outside.

They **want** us to stay at school.

I **expected** them to be here by now.

I had to **remind** him to buy the food. [tell somebody so that they do not forget]

She **helped** me to write the report. (You can also say: She helped me write the report.)

My parents **encouraged** me to read. [gave me support and confidence to make it possible]

# Exercises

## 88.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 She encouraged me going. *She encouraged me to go.*
- 2 He told it's impossible. ....
- 3 I asked that Chloe stay with me. ....
- 4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant. ....
- 5 I warned them not going. ....
- 6 He helped me buying my suit. ....
- 7 She allowed us go. ....
- 8 He said me the film was terrible. ....
- 9 She advised me buy a dictionary. ....
- 10 I recommended to stay there. ....
- 11 He reminded me go to the bank. ....
- 12 I want that he leaves. ....

## 88.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the correct form.

realise warn expect remind convince encourage  
help persuade mention recommend notice hope

- 1 She couldn't breathe easily, so I *realised* that something was wrong.
- 2 When we went in, I ..... that people were looking at us.
- 3 Martin knew the area was dangerous but he didn't ..... me not to go there.
- 4 I didn't want the job but my mother ..... me to take it. It was a mistake.
- 5 I wasn't sure about the plan, but my boss ..... me that it would work.
- 6 My uncle ..... that we try the new Chinese restaurant.
- 7 When I spoke to Jodie, I ..... that we were busy tonight.
- 8 Our teacher has always ..... us to practise our English outside of class.
- 9 Fortunately Aidan ..... me that it was Marsha's birthday; I'd forgotten.
- 10 I said I would ..... Ian to put up the shelves.
- 11 They said they'd come, so I ..... that they'll be here soon.
- 12 I ..... that I pass my exams.

## 88.3 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 He was given some money and I recommended ..... *that he put it in the bank.*
- 2 Some of them were getting hungry so I suggested .....
- 3 She said there were strange noises outside her flat, so I advised .....
- 4 When I saw her face, I noticed .....
- 5 When I was young, my parents sometimes allowed .....
- 6 As soon as I put on the coat, I realised .....
- 7 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn't persuade .....
- 8 Her train was delayed, so I expect .....
- 9 The water can make you ill and I warned .....
- 10 I borrowed his laptop yesterday but promised him that .....

## 88.4 Over to you

Look at the verbs on the opposite page again and translate them into your own language.  
Do you use the translated verbs with the same constructions? If not, these are the verbs that may cause you the most problems when you are speaking English.

## A

## Extreme adjectives

There are many 'extreme' adjectives we use to say that something is very good, or very small, or very surprising, etc.

We were lucky – the weather was **marvellous** [very good; syns **terrific, wonderful, amazing**].

Don't go and see that film – it's **awful** [very bad; syn **dreadful**].

I was **delighted** she passed her exam. [very pleased]

It's a nice modern flat, but it's absolutely **tiny** [very small].



I wasn't very hungry, but they gave us a **huge** meal. [very big; syn **enormous**]

You should watch that programme; you'll find it absolutely **fascinating** [very interesting].

Everyone was really **exhausted** by the end of the day. [very tired]

Bungee jumping is the most **terrifying** thing I've ever done. [very frightening]

Computers are an **essential** part of modern life. [very important and necessary]

The food was **delicious** [very good; but usually only for food].

## Language help

The food was **absolutely marvellous**. (NOT The food was **very marvellous**.) We can use **absolutely** or **really** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *absolutely awful, really terrific*, but we can't use **very**.

We use **very** or **really** with gradable adjectives which do not have an extreme meaning, e.g. *very big, very good, very nice, very tired, really good, really tired*, etc. (NOT **absolutely big**)

## B

Adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**

A large group of adjectives can have an **-ing** or **-ed** ending. The **-ing** ending describes a person, thing or situation; the **-ed** ending describes the effect on someone of this person, thing or situation.

I don't know if other people were **bored**, but I thought it was a very **boring** lesson.

The weather is so **depressing** at the moment; it's making everyone feel **depressed**.

## Common mistakes

I was bored by that film. (NOT I was **boring** by that film.)

We're very interested in the new designs. (NOT We're very **interesting** in the new designs.)

These adjectives can all end in **-ing** or **-ed**, depending on the meaning.

It was really **tiring** going up that hill. [making you feel tired]

I was **amazed** she could climb that wall. [very surprised]

My exam results were very **disappointing** [not as good as I expected].

She was **annoyed** that I forgot to tell her. [angry]

I kept calling her Emma, so I was **embarrassed** when Ben told me her name was Angela.

[feeling a bit stupid because of something you have said or done]

The map he gave us was very **confusing** [difficult to understand].

We were **shocked** by the violence in the film. [very surprised in an unpleasant way]

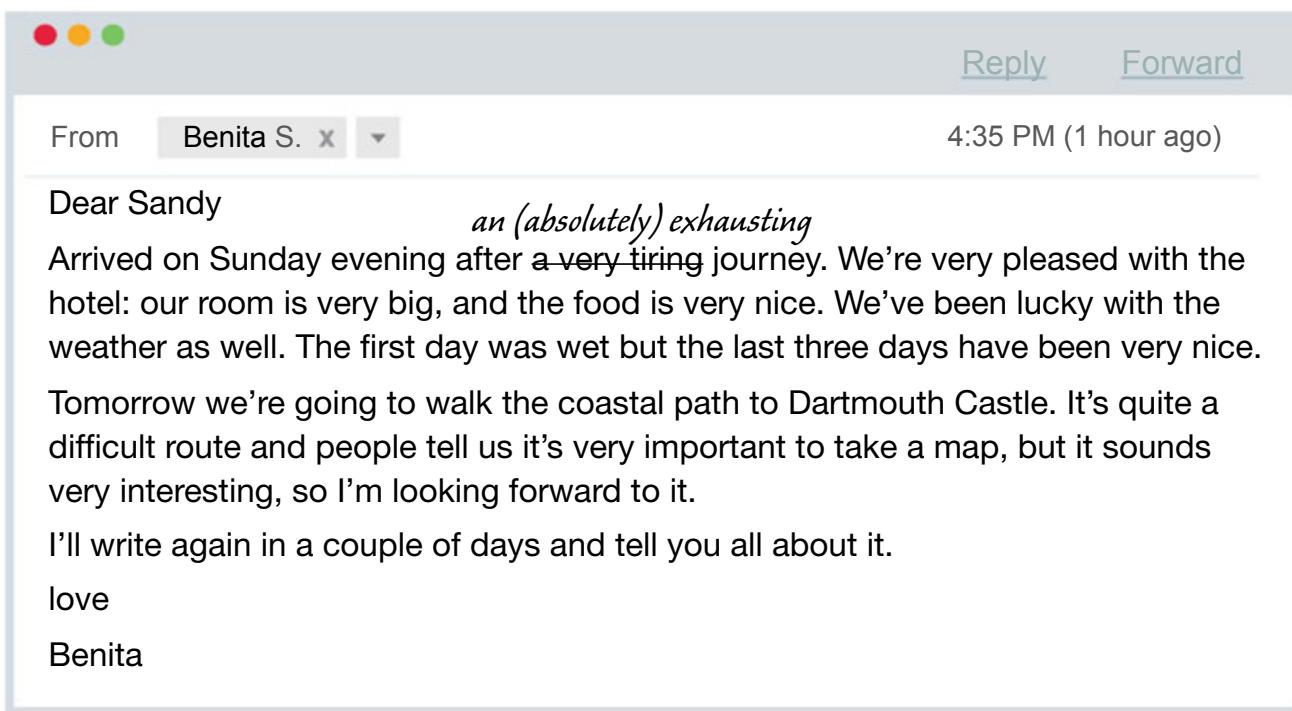
# Exercises

## 89.1 Put the words into the correct column.

bad dreadful important small exhausted  
terrified tired essential frightened tiny

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
bad	dreadful

## 89.2 Change the adjectives where possible to give the email a more positive and/or more extreme effect. Include *absolutely* or *really* two or three times.



## 89.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A, using a suitable adjective from the opposite page.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A: I was <u>very interested</u> in her talk.<br>B: Yes, it was ..... .                         | 4 A: Did you have a <u>nice</u> holiday?<br>B: Yes, absolutely .....                                  |
| 2 A: Were you <u>very frightened</u> ?<br>B: Yes, it was absolutely ..... .                      | 5 A: I expect you were <u>very pleased</u> with your score.<br>B: Yes, I was absolutely .....         |
| 3 A: It was <u>surprising</u> to see the children behave so badly.<br>B: I know. We were ..... . | 6 A: I expect you were a bit <u>angry</u> when they arrived an hour late?<br>B: Yes, I was very ..... |

## 89.4 Write an adjective to describe how the people felt in these situations.

- 1 They walked ten miles, then spent the afternoon cutting down trees. ..... *exhausted*
- 2 From the description on the travel website, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach. .....
- 3 I arrived in jeans, but everyone else was wearing very formal clothes. .....
- 4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station. .....
- 5 My brother has a flat and it's usually in a terrible mess – he's very untidy. But yesterday when I visited him, the place was incredibly tidy. In fact, everything looked new. .....
- 6 I got my results yesterday and I passed every exam with a grade A. .....

## A

**At, on and in**

**At** a point or place, e.g. I met her **at** the bus stop. He's **at** work at the moment.

**On** a surface, e.g. The book's **on** the desk. They sat **on** the floor. I put the picture **on** the wall.

**In** an area, space, or inside something, e.g. He's **in** the kitchen. She lives **in** Warsaw/Poland. The knife's **in** the top drawer.

## Common mistakes

I met them **at** the airport. (NOT I met them **on** the airport.)

There's a computer **on** my desk. (NOT There's a computer **in** my desk.)

The conference is being held **in** Delhi. (NOT The conference is being held **at** Delhi.)

## B

## Where exactly?



I know they live **in** Danvers Street, and I think they're **at** number twenty-three.



I'm sure there's a chemist **on** the left **before** the bank.  
[first there is a chemist, and then a bank; opp **after**]



Their house is **beyond** the farm [on the other side of the farm], **by** [near] the old church.



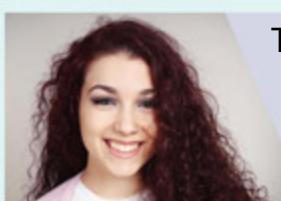
I saw your bike in the back garden **against** the wall.  
[touching the wall]



They've just bought a house **right** [exactly] **beside/by** [next to] the river.



I found your phone on the sofa **beneath/underneath** a pile of cushions. [under]



Their office is **above** the shop (opp **below**).



You can just see the top of the building **among** the trees.  
[somewhere in the middle of the trees]

## C

## Movement



We came **over** the bridge (opp **under**), then **through** the tunnel and **round** the lake.



The mouse ran **out of** the back door (opp **into**), **towards** the gate, then disappeared **down** a hole.



The woman came **after** us [followed in order to catch us], but we managed to climb **into** the back of my dad's van. Fortunately she went **past** the van and didn't see us.

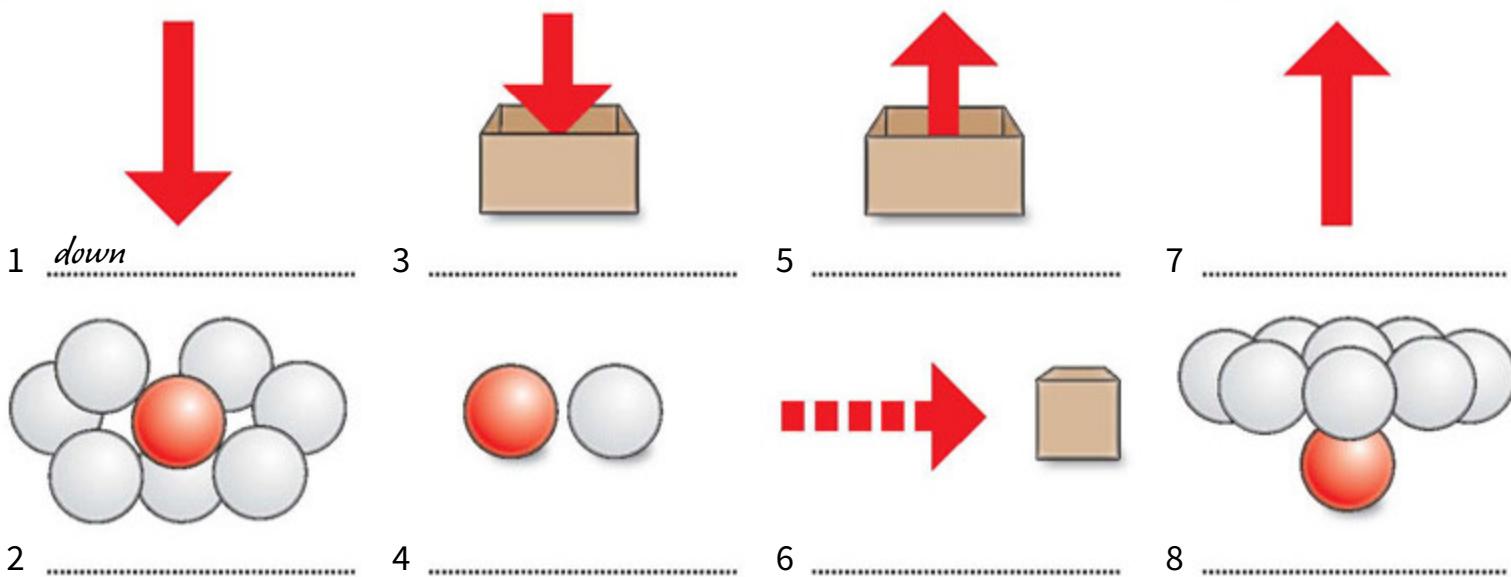
# Exercises

## 90.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I put the milk ..... the fridge.
- 2 They live ..... the next road.
- 3 They live ..... 34 Lawrence Street.
- 4 Your clothes are ..... the floor.
- 5 I met her ..... a party.
- 6 She works ..... Moscow.
- 7 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
- 8 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
- 9 I left my books ..... school.
- 10 There was snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
- 11 The key is ..... my jacket pocket.
- 12 Mausha's ..... work this morning.

## 90.2 Put the prepositions in the box under the correct picture.

beside    towards    out of    down    among    into    up    underneath



## 90.3 Complete the dialogues so that B says the opposite to A.

- 1 A: Did you go up the hill?  
B: No, .....  
2 A: Did you climb over the fence?  
B: No, we went .....  
3 A: Did you see her get into the car?  
B: No, but I saw her .....  
4 A: Did you say we had to turn left before the bridge?  
B: No, turn left .....  
5 A: Does she live in the flat above you?  
B: No, she's in the flat .....  
6 A: Did you say the bed was in the middle of the room?  
B: No, it's ..... the wall.

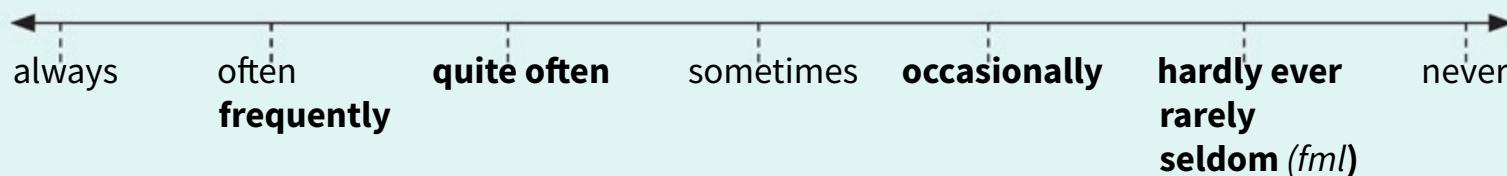
## 90.4 Over to you

Answer the questions, and give reasons for your answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Is it a good idea to live right beside a hospital?
- 2 Would you like to live above a restaurant?
- 3 Are you happy to drive on icy roads?
- 4 Do you like putting lots of things on your bedroom wall?
- 5 In a plane or train, do you like sitting by the window?
- 6 Would you like to live among lots of rich and famous people?

## A

## Adverbs of frequency: how often



She **hardly ever** plays tennis now.  
I **occasionally** go to the theatre.  
We see them quite **frequently**.

I am **often** late.  
He **rarely** works at weekends.  
I have **never** been to America.

## Language help

Remember that frequency adverbs usually go before the main verb, with the exception of the verb *be*. Notice the position of the adverb when the present perfect is used.

## B

## Adverbs of degree: how much

I was **a bit** tired. (infml) The flat was **a little (bit)** small. She was **slightly** nervous.

## Language help

**A bit**, **a little** and **slightly** have the same meaning and are mostly used before adjectives that express negative ideas, e.g. *We were a bit bored. I was slightly upset.* (NOT *I was a bit happy.*) *A bit* and *a little* cannot be used with adjectives before a noun.  
*It was a slightly small flat.* (NOT *It was a bit small flat.*)

The next four adverbs all mean ‘more than *a bit* but less than *very*’.

The hotel was **quite** busy. We had **quite a** nice room. (NOT ~~a quite nice room~~)

The food was **fairly** boring. It was **a fairly** wet day.

I was **rather** annoyed I missed the film. It was **a rather** good party. OR **rather a** good party.

The weather was **pretty** good. (infml) We had **a pretty** difficult journey.

The restaurant was **completely/totally** empty. I **totally/completely** agree with you.

We had an **extremely** interesting trip. [very interesting]

It's an **incredibly** good book.

## C

## Adverbs of manner

These adverbs describe the way in which someone does something, or the way that something happens.

Nora had **secretly**<sup>1</sup> put all of the letters into her bag.

Penelope was in pain, and I could see she needed help **urgently**<sup>3</sup>.

I went in and shut the door **quietly**.  
The curtains were closed and the room was dark, but I **suddenly**<sup>2</sup> realised I wasn't alone.

I spoke to Charles **briefly**<sup>4</sup> this morning.  
I asked him very **politely** if he could work an extra hour this evening, but he reacted quite **angrily** and walked off.

<sup>1</sup> in a way that others couldn't know about

<sup>2</sup> quickly

<sup>3</sup> very quickly because of something important

<sup>4</sup> for a short time

# Exercises

## 91.1 Form sentences from the words.

- 1 get occasionally I early up
- 2 me ever phones she hardly
- 3 have leg my broken never I
- 4 frequently them I at visit weekends
- 5 brother often me Sunday calls quite on my
- 6 summer saw I him rarely the during
- 7 office always in she the is eight before

*I occasionally get up early.*.....

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 91.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has a similar meaning.

- 1 The film was pretty good. *rather*.....
- 2 She hardly ever goes to conferences now. .....
- 3 The shops were quite busy. .....
- 4 They are two sisters, but they look totally different. .....
- 5 I thought the film was a bit disappointing, didn't you? .....
- 6 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week. .....
- 7 We often ask them to turn their music down. .....

## 91.3 Put the two ideas into one sentence by using a suitable adverb.

- 1 I walked up the path. I didn't make a noise. *I walked up the path quietly.*.....
- 2 I must speak to her. It's important. .....
- 3 I asked him to move his car. I did it in a nice and correct way. .....
- 4 I spoke to her. I made sure the others didn't know. .....
- 5 He ran out of the room. It was very quick and unexpected. .....
- 6 I spoke to her this morning. It was only for a few minutes. .....

## 91.4 Change the underlined adverbs in 1–4 to make them more positive. Change the underlined adverbs in 5–7 to make them less negative.

- 1 The play was quite interesting. *very*.....
- 2 I thought they were very good. .....
- 3 He's been getting quite good marks in his exams. .....
- 4 It's a pretty nice house. .....
- 5 John said the flat was very small. .....
- 6 They said it was fairly boring. .....
- 7 His clothes were very dirty. .....

## 91.5 Over to you

Make the sentences true for you by adding a suitable adverb, in the correct place.

- 1 I clean my teeth after breakfast. *I always clean my teeth after breakfast.*.....
- 2 I buy clothes I don't like. .....
- 3 I lose things. .....
- 4 I forget things. .....
- 5 I remember my dreams. .....
- 6 I speak to strangers on buses and trains. .....
- 7 I give money to people in the street if they ask me. .....

Now think about each of your answers to the sentences above. Do you think they are:

- a) fairly typical?      b) slightly unusual?      c) quite unusual?

If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

## A

**When / As soon as**

The meaning of these two time expressions is almost the same, but **as soon as** suggests something more immediate or important.

I'll phone my uncle **when / as soon as** I get home.

**As soon as / When** you've finished this exercise, you can go home.

**Common mistakes**

I'll see you **when I get** there. (NOT I'll see you when I **will** get there.)  
We don't use a future form after **when / as soon as**.

## B

**Two things happening at the same time**

Violet got ready **while** I cooked the dinner. [two long actions]

The accident happened **while** I was on my way to work. [a longer action 'on my way to work' and a short action 'the accident'; we can also use **when** or **as** here.]

I saw him (**just**) **as** I came out of the office. [two short actions happening at the same time; we can also use **when** here]

## C

**One thing after another**

We met the others in the café, and **then / after that / afterwards** we went to the match.

I talked to Joe, and **afterwards** [at a later time but usually the same day] I came home.

I was in Caracas for three months, and **then / after that** I went to Colombia.

**After** my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.

We had something to eat **before** going out.

**Common mistakes**

After **seeing** the film, we went home.  
(NOT After **see** the film, we went home.)

## D

**A sequence\* of actions**

We had a really nice holiday. **First of all / First** we spent a few days in St Moritz. **After that / Then** we drove down the coast and stayed in Portofino for a week. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland to stay with my uncle. (*Finally* is used here to introduce the last thing in a list.)

\* one action after another, and so on

## E

**At first ... eventually**

**To begin with**, the two girls got on very well when they shared the flat. But **after a while** [a period of time], they started arguing about various things, and **eventually** [finally, after a long time or a lot of problems] Lauren walked out and found a new place.

**At first** I enjoyed the classes, but after a while it got a bit boring, and **in the end** [finally, after a period of time or thought] I left.

## F

**A list of reasons**

We can use **firstly / for one thing / for a start** to introduce a first reason for something, and then **secondly/besides/anyway** to add a further reason.

A: What's wrong with her new dress?

B: **Firstly**, it's a horrible colour, and **secondly**, I don't think it suits her.

A: Why can't we go out tonight?

B: Well, **for one thing / for a start**, I've got a lot of work – and **besides/anyway**, I can't afford it.

# Exercises

## 92.1 Find five more pairs of words/phrases that are similar in meaning.

then	for one thing	when	besides	finally	at first	for a start
in the end	after that	to begin with	as soon as	anyway		

then / after that

.....  
.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
.....

## 92.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 I rang my mum *when / while* I was waiting for my train.
- 2 I'll give them your message as soon as I *get / will* get there.
- 3 Maria cleaned the kitchen *as / while* I did the bathroom.
- 4 Before *leave / leaving* they went to an exhibition in a little gallery.
- 5 We can have lunch *when / as soon as* we've finished this.
- 6 The phone rang *while / just as* I was shutting the front door.
- 7 We spent the morning in the park and *after that / afterwards* we went home for lunch.
- 8 The letter arrived *while / just as* we were having lunch.
- 9 I met the others *when / as* I was on my way to the station.
- 10 After *to clean / cleaning* my room, I was exhausted.

## 92.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening, when we could go to Karl's party?  
B: Well, *for one thing* ..... , I'd like to watch a programme on TV, and ..... , I don't think it'll be a very good party.
- 2 A: What did you do in Portugal?  
B: Well, ..... we flew to Lisbon and spent a few days there. ..... we took the train down to Lagos and spent a week on the Algarve with a couple we met in London. And ..... we went to Faro and flew back from there.
- 3 A: Did Matt enjoy his time in India?  
B: Well, ..... I think he found it difficult because the food and weather are so different. But after a ..... he got used to it, and didn't want to come home.
- 4 A: Why can't the company pay for me to go to the conference?  
B: Well, ..... the boss doesn't seem to think it's very important, and ..... we're too busy at the moment to give anyone time off work.
- 5 A: Did the new company do well?  
B: Yeah, ..... it did very well. But then the manager left, and after a ..... they started losing money. .... , they had to close down.

## 92.4 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 We had a game of table tennis and afterwards ..... *we went for a drink*.
- 2 I'll give you the answers to this exercise when .....
- 3 I'll text you as soon as .....
- 4 I must remember to lock the back door before .....
- 5 He thinks he dropped the letter as .....
- 6 I worked with a partner in class. I looked up half of the words while .....
- 7 We were in a traffic jam for hours but eventually .....
- 8 If we phone his home, he probably won't be there. Anyway, .....

## A

**As well (as), what's more, in addition (to), besides**

We often link ideas using *and*, e.g. The food's nice **and** very good value. There are other words and phrases we also use to add more information. Sometimes we still include *and* or *also*.

The restaurant has excellent food; it's **also** very good value.

You always get a good view, *and* the seats are comfortable **as well**. (syn **too**)

**As well as** getting cheaper tickets, I *also* got the opportunity to buy them in advance.

The clothes are nice, *and* **what's more**, the shop is open every day of the week.

The scheme gives young people experience. **In addition**, companies can afford to employ them.

**In addition to** the new food department, they're *also* planning to open a café.

**Besides** being a mum with four children, she's *also* a successful designer.

## B

**Although, despite, in spite of**

We use these link words when there are two ideas in a sentence, and the second is surprising or not expected. They can be used at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.

**Although / Even though** the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.

We found the place quite easily, **although / even though** we didn't know where it was.

They went for a walk **despite the fact that** it was raining.

**Despite** having no money, he **still** seemed very happy.

They got there on time **in spite of** the delay.

**In spite of** all the problems, we **still** enjoyed the trip.

## Language help

We can use **still** to emphasise that we didn't expect something to happen or be true, e.g. *He didn't do any work but he still passed the exam; The work is very hard, but he still enjoys it.*

## C

**However, yet, though**

We can use **however** and **yet** when the second part of an idea is surprising after the first part. **However** is often used to link ideas in two separate sentences. **Though** can be used in a similar way in spoken English, but usually comes at the end of the sentence. Notice the use of commas (,) here, and the different positions of *however*.

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However**, he is a very good teacher.

We didn't particularly like the house. The garden, **however**, was wonderful.

It was warm and sunny when we were there. Most of the time, **however**, it's quite cold.

We went in the autumn, **yet** it was still quite warm.

I didn't like the film much. I'm glad I went to see it, **though**.

They told us the shop was next to the station. We never found it, **though**.

## D

**While and whereas**

We can use **while** and **whereas** to compare two different facts or situations.

Alex is very quick to understand, **whereas/while** the others are quite slow.

I get £20 an hour, **while** Josh only gets £12.

The speed limit on this road is 80kph, **whereas** it's 130kph on the motorway.

I was very keen on the film, **whereas** Christoph didn't like it at all.

# Exercises

## 93.1 Put the words into the correct column.

in addition    although    in spite of    as well    however    also    what's more    despite

words that add more information	words that introduce surprising information
<i>in addition</i>	

## 93.2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 *Although* / *In spite of* we left late, we still got there in time.
- 2 She's going on holiday with friends. Her parents, *however* / *whereas*, are not very happy about it.
- 3 We decided to work *in spite of* / *despite* the fact we were on holiday.
- 4 They enjoyed the course, *even though* / *as well* it was very difficult.
- 5 I told John the car was too expensive. *However* / *Although*, he still bought it.
- 6 Most people tried to help us. They were very friendly *too* / *as well*.
- 7 Ethan spends his time in the library, *while* / *whereas* the others are always playing football.
- 8 It was a fantastic evening, *although* / *despite* the terrible food.

## 93.3 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

She went to school today                          in spite of  
She always worked hard in class,                 although  
She has the ability to do the job.                 However,  
She didn't pass the exam                           whereas  
She worked there for ten years.                    What's more,  
*She went to school today although she didn't feel very well.*

she was never happy in the job.  
she is very experienced.  
the help I gave her.  
she didn't feel very well.  
most of her classmates were lazy.

## 93.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 People say the hotel is very good. It's *also* ..... quite cheap.
- 2 ..... the fact that they were busy, they ..... helped us.
- 3 It's not the best dictionary you can buy. ...., it's better than nothing.
- 4 She managed to get there, ..... she didn't have a map like the others.
- 5 ..... heavy rain, they've also had very strong winds.
- 6 She's the youngest in the group, and she's better than most of them .....
- 7 I think you can do it. It won't be easy, .....
- 8 I was right at the back at the concert, ..... I could ..... hear everything.

## 93.5 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 Although it's an old skirt, *I still like it. (OR it still looks nice.)*
- 2 My parents get up at 7.30, whereas .....
- 3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
- 4 If you buy a season ticket, you can travel as often as you like. What's more, .....
- 5 The exam was very difficult. However, .....
- 6 I understood what she was saying, although .....
- 7 My uncle is nearly 70, but he still .....

## A

**Reason**

I went home early **because** I was feeling tired.

**As/Since** I was feeling tired, I went home early. (We don't usually start a sentence with *because*.)

I was feeling tired, **so** I went home early. (This is very common in spoken English.)

**The reason** I went home early **was that** I was feeling tired.

We can also use **because of** with a different construction. Compare:

They go there **because** the weather is wonderful. (because + noun + verb)

They go there **because of** the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

**Due to** means the same as **because of**, and is often used to explain the reason for a problem.

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. (**Due to** is often used after the verb *be*.)

## Common mistakes

It's a pity you can't go on holiday **because** Chiclayo is very nice. (NOT It's a pity you can't go on holiday **because of** Chiclayo is very nice.)

We moved house **because of** my father's work. (NOT We moved house **because** my father's work.)

## B

**Purpose**

A **purpose** is an intention or reason for doing something.

The **purpose of** the meeting is to plan next year's timetable. [the reason *for* the meeting]

We often introduce a purpose using **so (that)** or **(in order) to**:

I bought this book **so (that)** I **could** improve my English.

They went home early **(in order) to** watch the match on television.

We moved house **so (that)** we **could** send our children to this school.

She went into town **(in order) to** do some shopping.

## C

**Result**

These link words/phrases are used when one thing happens because another thing has happened. **Therefore** and **as a result** are more formal than **so**, and less common in spoken English.

I left my ticket at home, **so** I had to buy another one.

They've got more money, and **therefore** they can afford to buy the best football players.

I forgot to send the email. **As a result**, no one knew about the meeting.

## D

**Conditions**

We sometimes use **whether** [if] when we are not sure about something.

I didn't buy it because I wasn't sure **whether** you'd like it.

I spoke to the others, but I don't know **whether** they're coming.

We'll be late **unless** we leave now. [if we don't leave now]

**Unless** the weather improves [if the weather doesn't improve], we won't be able to go.

I have to go now, **otherwise** [because if I don't] I'll miss the last bus.

You'll have to turn up the music, **otherwise** [because if you don't] they won't be able to hear it.

You can borrow it **as long as** you bring it back by Thursday. [but you *must* bring it back]

You can wear what you like **as long as** you look quite smart. [but you *must* look quite smart]

I'm taking my umbrella **in case** it rains. [I'm doing A because B might happen later.]

Take some money **in case** you need to get a taxi.

# Exercises

## 94.1 Rewrite the sentences using *because of*. Make any necessary changes.

- 1 I couldn't play because my arm was broken. *I couldn't play because of my broken arm.*
- 2 Teresa got the job because her exam results were good. ....
- 3 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside. ....
- 4 As she had a cold, she didn't go to school. ....
- 5 The light was bad, so the referee stopped the game. ....
- 6 The traffic was terrible; I was late. ....
- 7 He's only 17, and therefore he can't vote. ....

## 94.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I must write that letter now, *otherwise* ..... I'll forget to do it.
- 2 I'll take some sandwiches with me ..... I get hungry.
- 3 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog ..... she takes it for a walk every day.
- 4 I left early ..... miss the rush-hour traffic.
- 5 My girlfriend didn't feel very well. ...., we left the party quite early.
- 6 ..... there's a problem, I won't disturb you.
- 7 You can borrow my dictionary ..... you bring it back on Monday.
- 8 You'd better tidy your room, ..... your mother will be angry.
- 9 I sent Luiza an invitation, but I don't know ..... she's coming.
- 10 The ..... I didn't ring you was that I'd lost your phone number.

## 94.3 Complete the memo.

Reply Forward

To All Staff CC BCC  
From Daniel Myers 09 August  
Subject Temporary roadworks

From next Monday, the council are closing both approach roads to the factory. The <sup>1</sup> *purpose* of this, I believe, is to install new gas pipes. <sup>2</sup> ..... this will create long delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning <sup>3</sup> ..... everyone gets here on time. The roadworks also mean that you won't be able to park on the street, and <sup>4</sup> ..... it may be a good idea to leave your cars at home <sup>5</sup> ..... it is absolutely impossible for you to use public transport.

I haven't been told <sup>6</sup> ..... the roadworks will continue for the whole week, but I will let you know as soon as possible, and I apologise for the inconvenience.

Daniel Myers  
Office manager

## 94.4 Over to you

Complete the sentences in a way that is true for you.

- I want to improve my English because .....
- I don't know whether my English .....
- I often need to write words down, otherwise I .....
- I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore .....
- Speaking English may be important in order to .....

## A

## Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing, but you will also hear examples in more formal spoken English, e.g. announcements, speeches, television news, or discussions.

NOTICE IN A CAFE: Only food **purchased** [bought] here may be eaten **on the premises** [here].

BUSINESS LETTER: I **regret to inform you** [I am sorry to say] that we are unable to ...

INFORMATION NOTICE: If you **require** [need] **further assistance** [more help], please contact the above address.

FORMAL LETTER: We are not in a position to **grant** [give or allow] you a visa to this country.

POLICE STATEMENT: The man is being questioned **regarding** [about] the robbery last night.

THEATRE ANNOUNCEMENT: The play will **commence** [start] in two minutes.

STATION ANNOUNCEMENT: The next train to **depart** [leave] from platform 7 will be the 7:22 to Reading.

AIRPORT ANNOUNCEMENT: Will passengers for Miami please **proceed** to [go to] gate 36.

## B

## Informal English

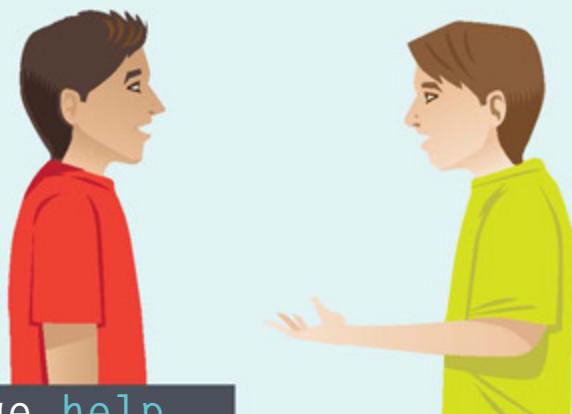
Informal language is more common in spoken English, and also in most emails or letters to friends. The words and phrases in **bold** in these dialogues are all informal.

A: Who's Callum?  
B: A **mate** [a friend] of mine.  
A: Really?  
B: Yeah, I see him **quite a bit** [often]; he's a nice **bloke** [man].

A: Toby, I'm afraid I can't **make it** [come] this evening.  
B: Oh, that's a shame.  
A: Yeah, I'm sorry, but **the thing is** [the problem is], Ella's not well, so I'll have to look after the **kids** [children].  
B: OK, don't worry. There will still be twelve **or so** [about twelve] at the meeting, and I'll ring you later and let you know what happens.  
A: **Cheers** [thanks]. That would be great.

A: **I bet** [I'm sure] you're hungry.  
B: Yes, **I'm dying for** something to eat. [want to eat something very much]  
A: Well, I think you'll find some **stuff** in the fridge.

A: What **are you up to** this evening?  
[What are you doing?]  
B: Nothing much. Why?  
A: Well, would you like to see the new Coen Brothers film? I've heard it's **great** [very good; syn **terrific**].  
B: Really? My brother saw it and said it was a **load of rubbish** [terrible].



## Language help

We often use the uncountable noun **stuff**, especially in spoken English, to refer to an uncountable noun or a group of things. We do this when others know what we are talking about, or if we don't need to be exact. Put this **stuff** in the cupboard. [e.g. plates, food, toys] We carried our camping **stuff** [equipment]. What's this **stuff** in the fridge in the blue bottle? [liquid]

# Exercises

## 95.1 Put the words into the correct column on the right.

depart mate  
cheers commence  
regarding terrific  
purchase bloke  
proceed to kids

formal	informal
<i>depart</i>	

## 95.2 Now write a synonym for each of the words in 95.1.

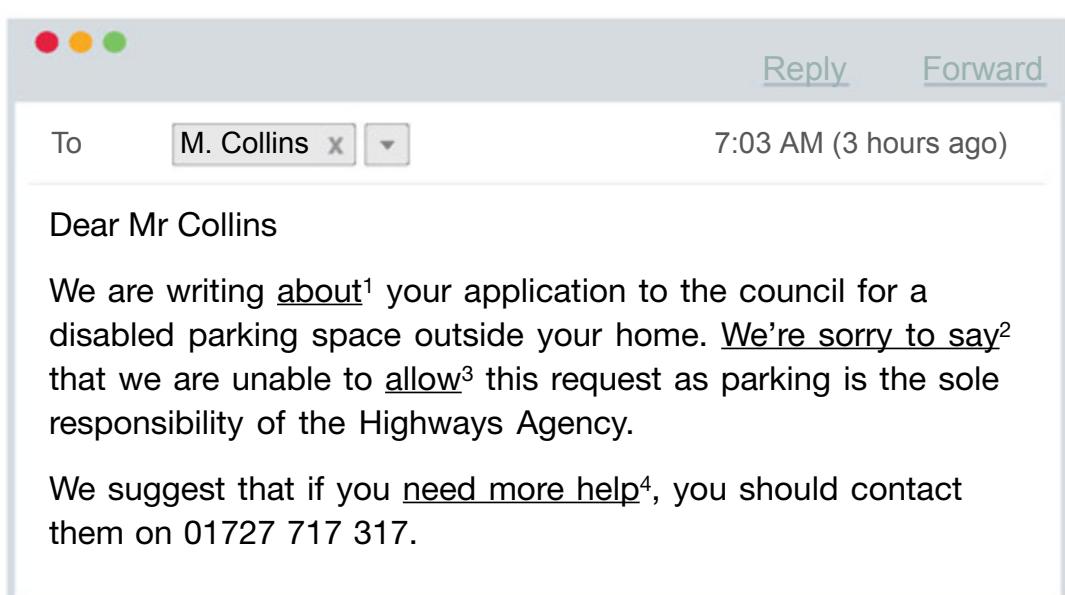
depart	leave	mate	
cheers		commence	
regarding		terrific	
purchase		bloke	
proceed to		kids	

## 95.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with more informal words or phrases.

- 1 I'm sure your parents are pleased? *I bet* .....
- 2 I'd love to come, but the problem is, my mother wants us to go and see her. ....
- 3 I watched that new series on TV last night. It was absolutely terrible. ....
- 4 What are you doing this weekend? .....
- 5 I really want something to drink. ....
- 6 None of them can come on Monday. ....
- 7 Jamie is a friend of mine. ....
- 8 We go there often. ....
- 9 You can leave all those books, files and papers on the desk. ....
- 10 We should be able to get approximately 40 on the coach. ....

## 95.4 Rewrite the underlined parts of this letter in more suitable formal English.

- 1 regarding .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....



## 95.5 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is *formal* or *informal/spoken*. Use your dictionary to find out if the underlined words here are *formal* or *informal/spoken*. What do they mean?

- 1 I thought the film was a drag.
- 2 Smoking isn't permitted.
- 3 It's a scary film.
- 4 This watch cost fifty quid.

## A

**Types of form**

- a **registration form** where you enter your name on an official list, e.g. at a school or college (also called an **enrolment form** when you are applying to do a course of study)
- an **entry form** if you want to enter for an exam, e.g. Cambridge English: First
- a **landing card** for people from some countries when they enter the UK
- a **visa application form** when you make an official request to enter or leave some countries

## B

**Language of forms**

When you **fill in** [complete] a form, you will see that they often have more formal expressions. In spoken English, ideas may be expressed differently.

written	spoken
<b>date of birth</b>	= When were you born?
<b>place of birth</b>	= Where were you born?
<b>country of origin</b>	= Where do you come from?
<b>marital status</b>	= Are you single or married?
<b>date of arrival</b>	= When did you arrive?
<b>date of departure</b>	= When are you leaving? OR When did you leave?
<b>signed</b>	= Write your <b>signature</b> [the special way you have of writing your own name]

## C

**Curriculum vitae**

If you **apply for** a job, you need to send a letter and a **CV (curriculum vitae or résumé** in American English), which should give:

- **personal details** [information about you such as your name, address, email address, etc.]
- details about your **education** and **qualifications**, e.g. university degree, teaching certificate, etc.
- your **work experience** [the jobs you have done]
- your **interests** [what you enjoy doing]
- **skills** [abilities you have learned and practised, e.g. ability to speak a foreign language]
- **career aims** [what you want to do in your future working life]
- names of people who will give you a **reference** [a letter written by someone who knows you which says if you are suitable for a particular job]

If you **apply to** university, they **require** [need; *fml*] a **personal statement** in which you must explain why you want to go to this university; why you want to follow this particular course; details of your educational background; your skills; your interests.

## D

**Tips for writing a CV or personal statement**

A **tip** is a useful piece of advice. Here are some tips for writing a CV or personal statement.

- A CV should be no longer than two pages; a personal statement no more than 45 lines of text.
- **Type** your CV or personal statement (**handwriting** is not suitable).
- Keep it simple. Don't make it **complicated** [difficult to understand].
- Check there are no mistakes.
- Make sure the information you give is **relevant** [connected to and useful for the particular job]. For example, if you are going to be working **on your own** [without others], don't say that you are good at working **in a team** [with a group of people].

# Exercises

## 96.1 What forms do you have to complete in these situations?

- 1 You are just arriving in Britain and you come from a country outside the European Union. A landing card .....
- 2 You are applying to do an English course at a school in Britain. .....
- 3 You are going to do a Cambridge exam. .....
- 4 You want to travel to the United States this summer. .....

## 96.2 Write these sentences in more informal English.

- 1 What was your date of arrival? When did you arrive/get here? .....
- 2 What's your date of birth? .....
- 3 What's your country of origin? .....
- 4 What's your marital status? .....
- 5 What's your date of departure? .....

## 96.3 Match the words on the left with the information on the right.

- |                    |                            |   |
|--------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1 personal details | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a I would like to become a radio producer.                                |
| 2 education        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b Trainee at Northern Radio Station, Jan–June 2007                        |
| 3 qualifications   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c Leona Phillips, 18 Mansion Road, Beckington BE2 3RJ                     |
| 4 work experience  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d I direct plays for a theatre group, and help with a children's charity. |
| 5 career aims      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e letter from Mr J. Tobin BA, MA (University tutor)                       |
| 6 interests        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f BA Honours degree in Media Studies                                      |
| 7 references       | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g Kent University 2007–2010, Ainslie Grammar School 1999–2006             |

## 96.4 Answer correct or incorrect.

- 1 It's OK to make one or two mistakes in my CV. incorrect .....
- 2 I need to type my CV. .....
- 3 It's OK if my CV is three pages long. .....
- 4 My CV should be complicated. .....
- 5 For an admin job, it is relevant to say I have computer skills. .....
- 6 I can put down a driving licence as one of my skills. .....
- 7 I can put down travelling abroad as a career aim. .....

## 96.5 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- 1 Do I have to complete this form? fill in .....
- 2 Monica gave me a useful piece of advice about shopping in America. .....
- 3 I shall be alone most of the time. .....
- 4 They sent the form back to me because I didn't write my signature at the bottom. .....
- 5 Please contact us if you need any more help. .....
- 6 I think I'm good at working as part of a group of people. .....

## 96.6 Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Have you ever written a CV? If so, what information did it include?
- 2 Have you had to write a personal statement? If so, why?
- 3 On a CV, what would you put as your interests, your skills, and your career aims?

## A

**The basis of a discursive essay\***

In a discursive essay you have to express your own ideas and **point of view** [opinion]. It is also important to show that you understand **both sides of an argument** [reasons **for** something and reasons **against** something]. This means you need to understand and use different link words and phrases such as **in addition**, **however**, etc. (See Unit 93.)

\* an essay that discusses a subject

## B

**Expressing a point of view**

**Some people believe** [Some people think] that no one should be sent to prison under the age of 18.

There is **an argument** [a reason to think] that everyone should have a university education.

## Language help

You can express a personal point of view with phrases such as **I believe / think that ...** or **It seems to me that ...** but you can also use less personal and direct ways of expressing a point of view, as in the phrases on the left. Many people think it is better not to use *In my opinion* in written essays.

## C

**Giving both sides of an argument**

**One of the advantages of** being an only child is that you have more attention from your parents. **However**, it can be lonely without the company of brothers and sisters.

**On the one hand**, computers can do so many things faster than human beings. **On the other (hand)**, some people are becoming dependent on them, which is not a good thing.

## D

**Comparing and contrasting\***

We often **make comparisons** between groups of people, or between the past and the present. **Compared with / to** my grandparents, I have had much more opportunity to travel abroad.

**In the past** people didn't have computers, **but nowadays** there is one in almost every home.

Most parts of the developed world have become richer in the last thirty years. **In contrast**, many countries in Africa have become much poorer.

\* saying how two things are similar and how they are different

## E

**Making generalisations**

Sometimes a simple statement is not accurate, e.g. *Young people prefer to watch American films*.

This is not true for *all* young people, so we use certain words and phrases to show that we are **making a generalisation** [saying that something is true most of the time or in most situations].

**In general**, Japanese society is more focused on groups than individuals. (*syn on the whole*) Teenagers **tend to** have [usually have] more freedom than in the past.

## F

**Cause and effect\***

Poor diet and lack of exercise are the main **causes of obesity** [reasons for being very fat].

Obesity is often the **result of** a bad diet and not enough exercise.

People don't eat the right food or get enough exercise, and **consequently** [because of this; *syn as a result*] they put on weight.

Poor diet can cause obesity, and this can have a bad **effect on** people's health.

\* how something happens, and then makes something else happen

## Language help

Don't confuse the verb **affect** and the noun **effect**.

*Pollution can affect people's breathing.*

*Pollution can have an effect on people's breathing.*

# Exercises

## 97.1 Match the definitions on the left with the examples on the right.

- |                                      |                            |  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1 expressing a point of view         | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a Canada has a smaller population than the USA.  |
| 2 making a comparison                | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b People tend to retire at a later age.  |
| 3 describing the result of something | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c Some people believe we should never go to war.   |
| 4 showing both sides of an argument  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d Animals die because we're cutting down the forest.   |
| 5 making a generalisation            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e Television can make children lazy. However, there are many programmes with real educational value. |

## 97.2 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where should it go?

- 1 It seems ~~s~~ me that there is a problem. *to*
- 2 One of the advantages studying law is that it should lead to a good career.
- 3 It is important to give ~~sides~~ of the argument.
- 4 Too much time spent in front of a television can have a bad ~~eff ect~~ children.
- 5 People like to have freedom of choice. On the other, too much choice can be a bad thing.
- 6 Time tends go faster as you get older.

## 97.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 There is not enough food, and ~~consequently~~ / *on the other hand* people are dying.
- 2 Advertising is so powerful that it *causes* / *affects* people to buy things they don't want.  
*In addition* / *However*, it can help them make the right choice when they buy things.
- 3 *In general* / *On the whole* people have more access to education than fifty years ago.
- 4 Supermarkets are very convenient because you can buy almost everything you want.  
*On the other side* / *hand*, they are putting small shops out of business.
- 5 The north of the country is much richer compared *with* / *to* the south.

## 97.4 Complete part of this essay on the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet for children.

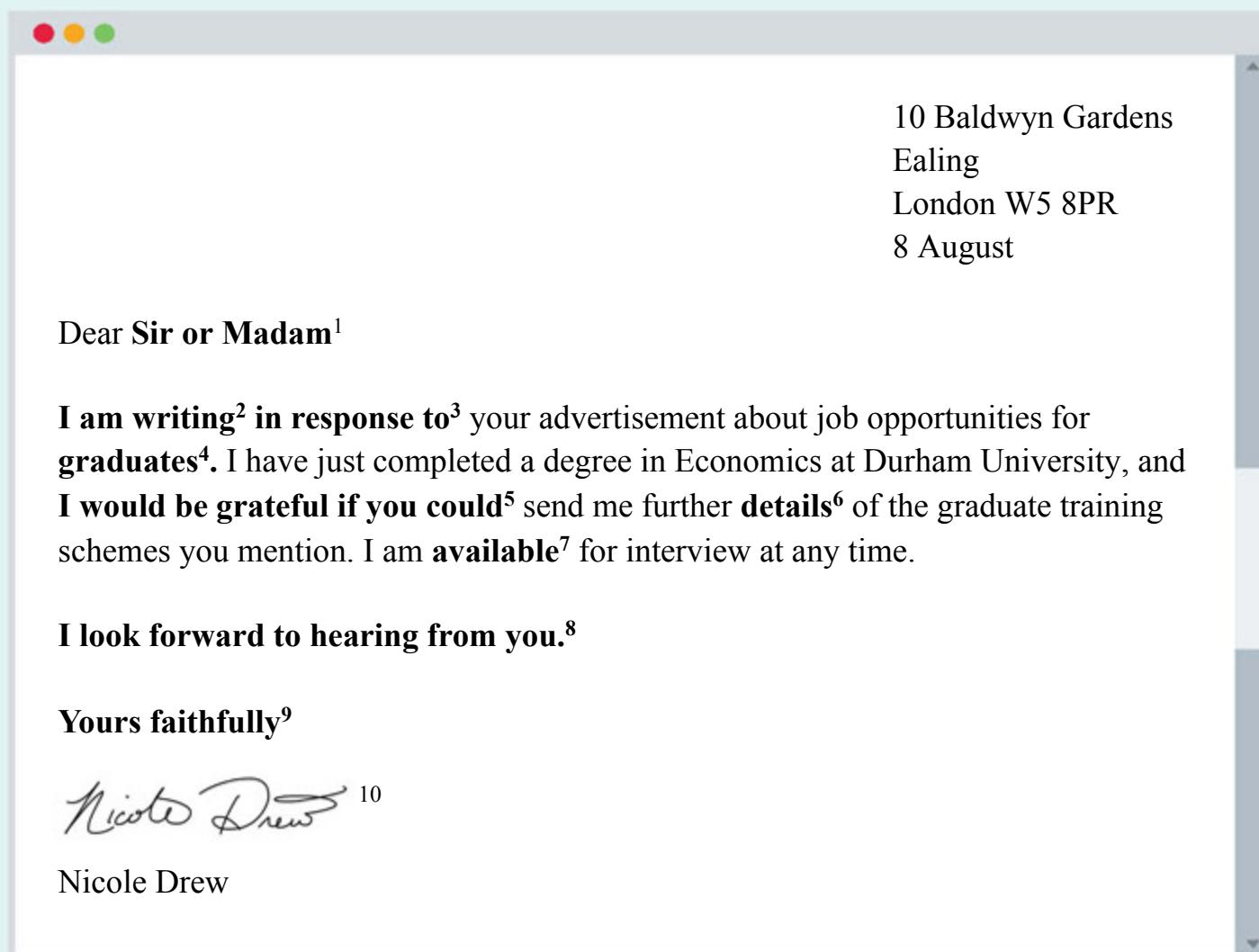
One of the<sup>1</sup> ..... of the Internet is that children have access to so much knowledge and information.<sup>2</sup> ....., many children can access this knowledge from their own homes; they don't have to go to libraries.<sup>3</sup> ....., some of the information on the Internet is unreliable and out-of-date, and there are some websites we would not want our children to look at. <sup>4</sup> ....., we need to control the way that our children use the Internet, and there is certainly an <sup>5</sup> ..... for much stricter controls on the websites that people are allowed to create. If we don't do this, the Internet could have a bad <sup>6</sup> ..... on children.

## 97.5 Rewrite the sentences following the instructions in (brackets).

- 1 People who drink and drive should go to prison. (*Show that this is a personal opinion.*)  
.....  
*I believe that people who drink and drive should go to prison.*.....
- 2 People are conservative. (*Make this statement a generalisation.*)  
.....
- 3 Cars should not be allowed in town centres. (*Make this opinion less personal.*)  
.....
- 4 Children played on their bikes. Children spend most of their time in front of a computer. (*Make this a comparison between the past and the present in one sentence.*)  
.....
- 5 Many people work longer and longer hours. They don't have time for hobbies. (*Show the connection between these two statements in one sentence.*)  
.....

## A

## A formal letter



<sup>1</sup> use this beginning if you don't know the person's name

<sup>2</sup> This is a common way to start a letter.

<sup>3</sup> in reply to

<sup>4</sup> people with a university degree

<sup>5</sup> this is slightly more polite/formal than Please could you ...

<sup>6</sup> information about something (plural noun)

<sup>7</sup> free

<sup>8</sup> This sentence is often used to close a letter when you expect a reply.

<sup>9</sup> Use this ending if you don't know the name of the person you are writing to. If you know the name, end the letter with Yours sincerely, or Kind regards.

<sup>10</sup> Writing your name like this in a particular way is a signature. It is normal at the end of a formal letter to sign your name first [write your signature], and then print it, e.g. Nicole Drew.

## B

## Useful words and phrases

Thank you for your letter regarding [about] the damage to your vehicle.

I regret to inform you [I am sorry to say] that your application [official request for something] has not been successful.

I am pleased to inform you that your application has been successful. [I am happy to say]

I am writing to enquire about English courses at your school. [ask about]

You will need to confirm the booking in writing [write to say that the booking is certain].

We would like to thank you for offering your support [say thank you for offering your help].

We would like to apologise for [say sorry for] the delay [when something arrives later than expected]. OR Please accept our apologies for the delay.

I enclose a cheque for £100. [I am sending a cheque for £ 100 in the same envelope as this letter.]

# Exercises

## 98.1 Correct seven more mistakes in the email.

From Michael Ridley 7:03 AM (3 hours ago)

Sir  
Dear sir or Madame

I write with response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be greatful if you could send me further detail.

I look forward to hear from you.

Kind regards,

Michael Ridley

## 98.2 Finish the sentences.

- 1 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you start *Dear Sir or Madam* .....
- 2 If you would like more information, you ask for further .....
- 3 A common way of closing a letter is *I look forward* .....
- 4 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you end *Yours* .....
- 5 If you know the name of the person, you can end *Yours* .....
- 6 Another way of ending a letter is *Kind* .....
- 7 At the end of the letter you also write your .....

## 98.3 Rewrite the phrases and sentences in more formal English, starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Thanks for the letter about the fire.        | Thank you for your letter <i>regarding the fire</i> . |
| 2 I'm sorry to tell you ...                    | I .....   |
| 3 I'm happy to tell you ...                    | I am .....  |
| 4 Are you free on Wednesday?                   | Are you .....   |
| 5 I want to ask about the dates of the course. | I would like to .....                                 |
| 6 We want to say sorry for the delay.          | Please accept .....                                   |
| 7 Please send me the details.                  | I would be .....                                      |
| 8 Could you say that's definite in a letter?   | Could you .....                                       |
| 9 I'm sending a copy of my CV.                 | I .....   |

## 98.4 Complete the letter.

1 *Dear* ..... Mr Wilkinson,  
I am 2 ..... in 3 ..... to your letter of 10 February  
4 ..... the delivery of the Maxwell dining table and four chairs that you ordered.

In the middle of January there was a fire at the factory and it had to close down for almost a week. The recent heavy snow has caused further problems, and coming so soon after the busy Christmas period, we 5 ..... to inform you that there are 6 ..... of up to four weeks on most orders.

We promise to do everything we can to speed up deliveries, but in the meantime we would like to 7 ..... for the obvious inconvenience this has caused.

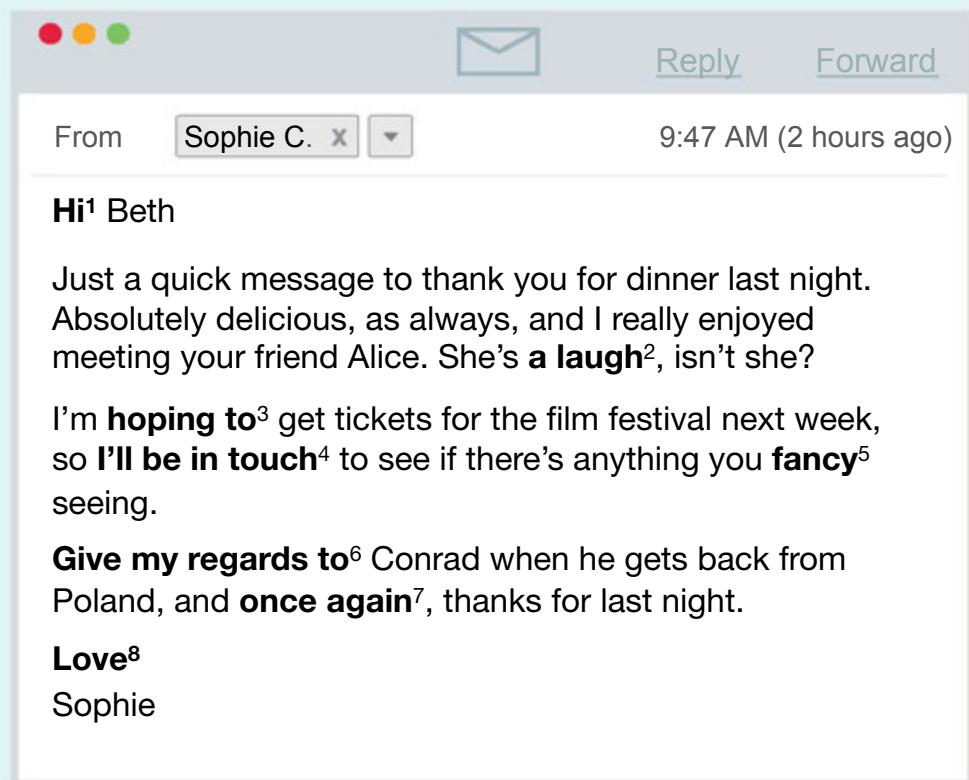
Yours 8 .....

James Porter  
Customer services manager

## A

## An email

- <sup>1</sup> We can begin an informal email or letter with **Hi** Beth, **Hello** Beth, or **Dear** Beth.
- <sup>2</sup> a funny person
- <sup>3</sup> planning or intending to
- <sup>4</sup> make contact, e.g. by phone, email or text
- <sup>5</sup> want (to see) *infml*
- <sup>6</sup> say hello to Conrad from me; also **send my regards to** Conrad. With family members and very close friends we also say **give / send my love to**.
- <sup>7</sup> again, as before (here it is used to say thank you one more time)
- <sup>8</sup> We can end an informal email/letter to a close friend or family member with **Love** or **Lots of love**. We also often use **Best wishes** or **All the best** when we end a letter or email to a friend.



## B

## Messaging

Hi Emma  
Sorry it's been **ages<sup>1</sup> since<sup>2</sup>** I last got in touch, but I just wanted to **let you know<sup>3</sup>** that I'm coming to Birmingham **in two weeks' time<sup>4</sup> – actually<sup>5</sup>** just before your birthday.

Sounds great, when exactly?

12 March. Could we get **together<sup>6</sup>** and go out for a meal? Maybe Mark could **join us<sup>7</sup>** as well?

That's perfect. Can you contact Mark and I'll book a restaurant?

Great! **Anyway<sup>8</sup>**, better get back to work. See you soon!

## Language help

We can use **actually** to give more exact information, as in the letter (*syn in fact*). We also use it a great deal in spoken English to say something which is surprising or different from what you expect, e.g. He looks Italian, but **actually** he's not. (*Syn in fact*) **Actually** does not mean *at the moment*, e.g. *The land is currently for sale* (NOT The land is **actually** for sale).

<sup>1</sup> a long time

<sup>2</sup> from a time in the past until now

<sup>3</sup> tell you

<sup>4</sup> two weeks from now

<sup>5</sup> (see Language help)

<sup>6</sup> meet for a social reason

<sup>7</sup> come with us

<sup>8</sup> used to change the subject or end a conversation/letter

# Exercises

## 99.1 Find five more phrases using words from the box.

in give be once best let in to again you  
week's touch my a regards time wishes know

be in touch

.....  
.....  
.....

## 99.2 Write these phrases in different ways. The phrases can be similar but don't repeat exactly the same words.

- |                            |          |          |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|
| 1 Hello Julie              | Hi ..... | Julie    |
| 2 Hello Mark               | .....    | Mark     |
| 3 Give my love to Patricia | .....    | Patricia |
| 4 Love, Evelyn             | .....    | , Evelyn |
| 5 Best wishes, Sam         | .....    | , Sam    |

## 99.3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |       |                                 |
|--|-------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Do you want to come with us?         | JOIN  | Do you want to <i>join us</i> ? |
| 2 Do you want to go?                   | FANCY | Do you .....                    |
| 3 I'll write soon.                     | TOUCH | I'll .....                      |
| 4 It looks new, but actually it isn't. | FACT  | It looks new, but .....         |
| 5 I'll tell you as soon as possible.   | LET   | I'll .....                      |
| 6 I'm going three weeks from now.      | IN    | I'm going .....                 |
| 7 Jamie is very funny.                 | LAUGH | Jamie is .....                  |
| 8 Let's meet for lunch.                | GET   | Let's .....                     |
| 9 I haven't written for ages.          | SINCE | It's .....                      |

## 99.4 Complete the email with words from the box.

touch join fact together hoping in  
let since give ages actually anyway

● ● ●

Reply Forward

From Jonny M. 4:42 AM (5 hours ago)

Dear Gilberto

I haven't been in <sup>1</sup> **touch** for <sup>2</sup>  – I'm sorry about that. In <sup>3</sup> , I've been really busy <sup>4</sup>  I last wrote because I've got a new job in TV – <sup>5</sup>  it's with the BBC. I'm doing research for various documentary programmes and I'm <sup>6</sup>  to go to Brazil <sup>7</sup>  three months' time. If so, I'll obviously get in touch. It would be great if we could get <sup>8</sup> , and maybe Filipe could <sup>9</sup>  us if he's free. <sup>10</sup> , I'll write again soon. I hope things are going well with you, and <sup>11</sup>  me know when the baby arrives. And, of course, <sup>12</sup>  my love to Teresa.

All the best,  
Jonny

## A

**Letters or words?**

Most abbreviations are spoken as individual letters.

<b>EU</b>	European Union
<b>UN</b>	United Nations
<b>PM</b>	Prime Minister
<b>MP</b>	Member of Parliament
<b>BBC</b>	British Broadcasting Corporation
<b>ID</b>	identification, e.g. Do you have an ID card?
<b>PC</b>	personal computer
<b>CV</b>	curriculum vitae [a history of your job experience]
<b>ISP</b>	Internet Service Provider



Occasionally abbreviations are spoken as words, e.g. **AIDS** /eɪdz/ and **PIN** /pɪn/ [personal identification number, especially used with a bank/credit card]

## Language help

We use the verb **stand for** to ask about the meaning of an abbreviation.

A: **What does EU stand for?**

B: European Union.

## B

**Written forms only**

Some abbreviations are written forms only, but pronounced as full words.

**Mr** Scott (mister Scott)

**St** Mark's Church (Saint Mark's Church)

**Mrs** Bryant (misses Bryant)

Dean **St** (Dean Street)

**Dr** Chapman (doctor Chapman)

## C

**Abbreviations as part of the language**

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

Latin	abbreviation	pronunciation	meaning
<b>et cetera</b>	<b>etc.</b>	/et 'setərə/	<b>and so on</b>
<b>exempli gratia</b>	<b>e.g.</b>	/i:'dʒi:/	<b>for example</b>
<b>id est</b>	<b>i.e.</b>	/aɪ'i:/	<b>that's to say / in other words</b>

## D

**Shortened words**

Some common English words can be shortened, especially in spoken English. In some cases, the shorter form is more common and the full form sounds quite formal, e.g. refrigerator, influenza, gymnasium and veterinary surgeon.

<b>phone</b> (telephone)	<b>fridge</b> (refrigerator)
<b>maths</b> (mathematics)	<b>exam</b> (examination)
<b>board</b> (whiteboard/smartboard/blackboard)	<b>plane</b> (aeroplane)
<b>case</b> (suitcase)	<b>photo</b> (photograph)
<b>ad/advert</b> (advertisement)	<b>flu</b> (influenza) [illness like a cold but more serious]
<b>gym</b> (gymnasium)	<b>lab</b> (laboratory) [special room where scientists work]
<b>bike</b> (bicycle)	<b>sales rep</b> (sales representative; syn <b>salesperson</b> )
<b>TV/telly</b> (television)	<b>vet</b> (veterinary surgeon)
<b>paper</b> (newspaper)	

# Exercises

## 100.1 Are these sentences correct or incorrect? If a sentence is incorrect, change it to make it correct.

- 1 ISP stands for Internet Service Player. *Incorrect. It's Internet Service Provider.* .....
- 2 BBC stands for British Broadcasting Company. .....
- 3 MP stands for Minister of Parliament. .....
- 4 PC stands for personal computer. .....
- 5 UN stands for Unified Nations. .....
- 6 ID stands for identification. .....
- 7 CV stands for curricular vitae. .....

## 100.2 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

- |               |                 |                  |       |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|-------|
| 1 Mister      | <i>Mr</i> ..... | 5 in other words | ..... |
| 2 for example | .....           | 6 Saint          | ..... |
| 3 and so on   | .....           | 7 Doctor         | ..... |
| 4 Street      | .....           |                  |       |

## 100.3 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

Luke

*maths*

Olly had a **mathematics** examination this afternoon and then had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem — for example, if Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination, my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.

Pam (Olly's mum)

## 100.4 Complete the sentences with suitable words, shortened words or abbreviations.

- 1 It was a warm day, so I put the milk and butter in the ..... *fridge* .....
- 2 He didn't want to walk, so he went on his .....
- 3 If you go to Mediterranean islands, ..... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
- 4 If you want to apply for the job, you'll need to send your ..... with a letter of application.
- 5 The dog was sick, so we had to take her to the .....
- 6 In that shop on the corner you can get books, pens, writing paper, .....
- 7 I took my large bag with me on the plane, but I didn't have a .....
- 8 When I sold my CDs, I put an ..... in the paper and had three replies the same day.
- 9 If you use the cashpoint, remember you'll need your ..... number.
- 10 What does MP ..... for?
- 11 We did some experiments in the chemistry .....
- 12 My uncle is a sales .....

## 100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

- |           |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| PTO ..... | RSVP ..... | asap ..... |
| IMO ..... | DOB .....  | PS .....   |

# Answer key

## Unit 1

- 1.1** Your own answers  
**1.2** Your own answers  
**1.3** Your own answers  
**1.4** 2 temporary    3 cruel/unkind    4 rough    5 exit/way out    6 alive    7 refuse  
**1.5** 2 argument                          4 choose                          6 difference; differ  
3 revision                                5 expansion                              7 communication; communicative  
**1.6** Your own answers

## Unit 2

2.1	food	garden	numbers
	<i>diet, lay the table, flour, raw, butcher, frozen, e.g. frozen peas</i>	<i>branch, dig, ground, leaf, butterfly, frozen, e.g. the ground is frozen</i>	<i>count, add up, minus, thousand, zero</i>

- 2.2** Possible answers:  
2 translation  
3 a person who sells meat  
4   
5 translation  
6 put plates, knives, forks, etc. on a table before a meal  
7 translation is probably the easiest way  
8 six minus four is two ( $6-4 = 2$ )  
**2.3** 2 (synonym) A synonym for *awful* is dreadful.  
3 (opposite) The opposite of *necessary* is unnecessary.  
4 (word partner and part of speech) You *translate* something *into* another language; the noun is *translation*.  
5 (meanings) *Tip* has two meanings: a piece of advice, and money you give a waiter for serving you.  
6 (grammar and part of speech) *Enjoy* is followed by an *-ing* form; the noun is *enjoyment*, the adjective is *enjoyable*.  
**2.4** Your own answers

## Unit 3

- 3.1** 2 really                                5 clothes                                8 beautiful  
3 unfortunately                            6 comfortable                        9 unbelievable  
4 especially                                7 accommodation                    10 necessary
- 3.2** 1 knee (k)    2 comb (b)    3 castle (t)    4 salmon (l)    5 receipt (p)
- 3.3** 2 amount    3 behave    4 official    5 emphasise    6 relating to
- 3.4** 2 The 'z' spelling is usual in American English, but both are possible in British English.  
3 an adverb  
4 uncountable  
5 on  
6 She's an **old** friend; he's my **best** friend; you **make** friends with people. You may also have found these common word partners (a **close** friend, a friend **of mine**)

**3.5** 1 definition 3    2 definition 1    3 definition 4    4 definition 2

## Unit 4

4.1	parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation	
	<i>noun</i> , adjective, adverb, preposition	comma, question mark, full stop	phonemic symbol, stress, syllable	
<b>4.2</b>	2 <b>in</b> Seville (preposition) 3 <b>took/got</b> a train (verb) 4 <b>a</b> beautiful city (indefinite article) 5 <b>expensive</b> hotel (adjective) 6 <b>of</b> money (preposition)	7 wonderful <b>hotel/place</b> (noun) 8 <b>to</b> Spain (preposition) 9 <b>never</b> stays (adverb) 10 <b>if I have</b> (pronoun)		
<b>4.3</b>	2 a capital letter 3 a full stop 4 a question mark 5 a comma 6 uncountable noun	7 phrasal verbs 8 punctuation 9 with (phonemic) symbols 10 <u>late</u>		
<b>4.4</b>	in'formal 3 'adjective 3	'opposite 3 edu'cation 4	'syllable 3 pronunci'ation 5	de'cide 2
<b>4.5</b>	2 cheaply; dangerously	3 find	4 un-	5 -ness

## Unit 5

<b>5.1</b>	2 Thai 3 Spanish 4 Israel 5 China 6 Portuguese	7 Arabic 8 German 9 England/the UK, the USA, Australia 10 (Swiss) German, French, Italian	
<b>5.2</b>	2 Asia / the Far East 3 the Middle East 4 Europe	5 the Caribbean 6 South America	
<b>5.3</b>	Chinese; Japan; Portuguese; Egyptian; Australia; Arabic; Saudi Arabia; Scandinavia		
<b>5.4</b>	2 Turkey    3 South Korea	4 Russia    5 Argentina    6 Greece	
<b>5.5</b>	2 Germans 3 the Japanese 4 Israelis	5 Brazilians 6 the British	7 The Swiss 8 Russians
<b>5.6</b>	Possible answers:  1 I'm French. 2 The capital of France is Paris. I think the population of France is about 60 million. 3 French. 4 I can speak Italian and English. 5 I have visited Germany, Spain, Italy and the UK. 6 I don't know the Far East, so I would like to visit China and Japan.		

## Unit 6

<b>6.1</b>	2 in the west 3 in the south-west	4 in the north-east 5 in the north-west	6 in the north-east 7 in the south
<b>6.2</b>	2 coldest place on Earth / in the world 3 hottest place on Earth / in the world 4 Cave 5 Canal		6 waterfall 7 rainforest in the world 8 ocean 9 planet

- |     |               |                       |
|-----|---------------|-----------------------|
| 6.3 | 2 covered     | 8 consists            |
|     | 3 regions     | 9 Earth               |
|     | 4 contrasts   | 10 climate            |
|     | 5 covers      | 11 distance; distance |
|     | 6 landscape   | 12 minus; degrees     |
|     | 7 temperature |                       |

## **6.4** Possible answers:

- 1 In England, 30°C is about the highest; minus 5 degrees is about the lowest during the day.
  - 2 I like the fact it isn't too hot or too cold, but I would like more sun and less rain.
  - 3 It's flatter in the east, and there are more hills in the west. There is also an area in the north of England with some large lakes. There are more mountains in Scotland.
  - 4 We have a number of long canals, and lots of caves. We don't have any famous waterfalls.
  - 5 It's very hilly, with several large rivers nearby.
  - 6 I live in a medium-sized town which is ten miles from Bristol.

## Unit 7

- 7.1** 2 f    3 g    4 c    5 a    6 b    7 d

**7.2** 2 It's snowing.    3 It's cloudy.    4 It's raining.    5 It's icy.    6 It's sunny.

**7.3** 2 False. It's not nice to sit outside when it's freezing. / It's nice to sit outside when it's warm.  
3 True  
4 False. A shower is a short period of rain.  
5 True  
6 False. If it's humid, the air will feel warm and wet.  
7 False. A mild winter means it is warmer than usual.  
8 True

<b>7.4</b>	2 cold	5
	3 shower	6
	4 pouring	7

We sometimes get humid weather in the summer. We occasionally get thick fog in the winter, especially in the morning. We sometimes get storms in winter. Thunderstorms sometimes occur in the summer at the end of a period of hot weather. Temperatures below zero are not common during the day, but do occur at night in the winter. We sometimes get strong winds in the autumn and winter, and showers can be frequent at any time of the year, but especially in the spring.

## Unit 8

8.1	<b>farm animals</b>	<b>wild animals</b>	<b>insects</b>
	horse, goat, bull, pig, donkey	monkey, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard	fly, bee, mosquito, ant, butterfly

- 8.2** 3 different                    6 different                    9 different  
        4 different                    7 same                        10 different  
        5 same                        8 different

**8.3** 2 wild    3 cage    4 insects    5 rare    6 protect

**8.4** 2 Monkeys                    4 Whales                    6 Snakes                    8 Parrots  
        3 Camels                    5 Giraffes                    7 Elephants

## **8.5** Possible answers:

- 1 Yes. I've got a dog called Max.
  - 2 No.
  - 3 I don't like seeing birds in cages, but I can understand why we need to keep some wild animals in zoos.
  - 4 I'm not frightened of animals, but I don't like it when birds get inside the house and fly around the rooms; it's scary!

## Unit 9

## **9.1 DOWN:** heel, knee, chest, ankle, chin

**ACROSS:** cheek, hip, elbow, lip(s), skin

9.2 2c 3a 4f 5b 6d

**9.3** 2 lips 3 chin 4 shoulder 5 waist 6 cheek 7 neck 8 chest

## 9.4 Possible answers:

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 2 running   | 6 when they mean ‘no’  |
| 3 when someone says something funny                         | 7 when they mean ‘yes’ |
| 4 when they see someone they know or say goodbye to someone | 8 when they’re sad     |
| 5 when they have a cold                                     | 9 when they’re tired   |

Unit 10

**10.1** 2 looking 3 hair 4 shoulders 5 smart 6 height 7 dark

## **10.2** Your **height** is how **tall** you are.

Your **weight** is how much you **weigh**.

**Roughly** and **approximately** are similar in meaning.

**Medium** and **average** are similar in meaning.

**Broad** and **narrow** are opposite in meaning.

**Wavy** and **curly** are similar in meaning, and describe hair.

**10.3** 2 gorgeous                    5 pretty                    8 roughly/approximately  
3 attractive/handsome        6 overweight                9 tallish  
4 athletic                      7 ordinary

#### **10.4** Possible answers from a man:

- 1 I'm about one metre 78.
  - 2 It's dark brown and quite wavy.
  - 3 My girlfriend is about one metre 68. She's very attractive in my opinion, and she's got short blonde hair, which is straight. I don't know how much she weighs; I wouldn't ask her that.

Unit 11

11.1

positive	negative
<i>nice</i>	unpleasant
generous	mean
sensible	silly
hard-working	lazy
calm	nervous

**11.2** 2 **unfriendly**    3 **unpleasant**    4 **impatient**    5 **dishonest**    6 **unreliable**

11.3

- |              |            |             |
|--------------|------------|-------------|
| 2 mean       | 5 shy      | 8 calm      |
| 3 unreliable | 6 sensible | 9 creative  |
| 4 patient    | 7 serious  | 10 talented |

<b>11.4</b>	2 nervous 3 wish 4 lazy	5 humour 6 clever/intelligent 7 trust	8 character 9 stupid 10 kind
-------------	-------------------------------	---	------------------------------------

### 11.5 Possible answers:

I think I am quite positive (2), very reliable (1), not very confident (3), a bit lazy (4), have quite a good sense of humour (2) and am quite impatient (5).  
I would like to be creative and more patient; I would hate to be mean.

## Unit 12

**12.1** Nouns: jealousy, confusion, disappointment, anxiety

Adjectives: proud, curious, emotional

**12.2** 2 f    3 d    4 b    5 a    6 e

**12.3** scared 6    cheerful 5    upset 3    confused 2    depressed 4

<b>12.4</b> 2 feelings/emotions 3 energetic 4 effect 5 stress	6 mood 7 hopeful 8 frightened/scared
--	--

### 12.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm not sure that colour does, but the weather certainly affects me. I feel more positive when the sun is shining, and rain makes me depressed.
- 2 I think I suffer from stress sometimes at work, or if I have too many things on my mind.
- 3 I don't think my mood changes much from day to day.
- 4 I feel more energetic in the evening.

## Unit 13

**13.1** 2 niece                         5 brother-in-law                 8 only  
3 nephew                         6 elder                             9  
4 sister-in-law                 7 cousin

<b>13.2</b> 2 Remarry 3 Relatives/Relations 4 best 5 old	6 Twins 7 Mate 8 Friendship 9 stepfather
---	---

**13.3** 2 married    3 altogether    4 since    5 get on (well)    6 ex

### 13.4 Possible answers for Laura, aged 20:

- 1 I have an elder sister called Rosie.
- 2 Yes, very well.
- 3 No, not especially close, but we all get on well.
- 4 My cousin Daniel; he got married last year.
- 5 Anita.
- 6 I've known her for nine years.
- 7 We started secondary school at the same time.

## Unit 14

**14.1** 2 early twenties                 5 middle-aged                 8 an adult  
3 mid-thirties                     6 elderly                         9 teens  
4 teenager                         7 retired                         10 toddler

<b>14.2</b> 2 True 3 False. Her parents were very strict. 4 True	5 False. At first life wasn't easy. 6 False. She managed to get a job in Cardiff.
--	--

- 14.3**
- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2 in the end I did it             | 8 managed to pass my exams  |
| 3 roughly/about my age            | 9 stayed out late           |
| 4 nearly thirty now               | 10 let me wear what I liked |
| 5 strict                          | 11 childhood                |
| 6 allowed to stay up and watch TV | 12 retired                  |
| 7 brought up in Scotland          |                             |

**14.4** Possible answers:

- 1 I was brought up in a town called Dartmouth.
- 2 It's on the coast and I remember going to the beach a lot with my family and friends.
- 3 My mum was quite strict, but not my dad. They didn't let me swim in certain places because they thought it was dangerous.
- 4 Up to the age of 17, I had to be home on the last bus, which was about 11:15. When I learnt to drive, I stayed out later than that.

## Unit 15

- 15.1**
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I went out with Gabriel.                           | 3 |
| We got married.                                    | 5 |
| I got pregnant three months later.                 | 8 |
| We got engaged.                                    | 4 |
| I got to know Gabriel.                             | 2 |
| Our son was born just after our first anniversary. | 9 |
| We went on our honeymoon.                          | 7 |
| I met Gabriel at a party.                          | 1 |
| We had a big reception.                            | 6 |
- 15.2**
- |            |               |                        |
|------------|---------------|------------------------|
| 2 date     | 4 pregnant    | 6 bride; (bride) groom |
| 3 marriage | 5 anniversary | 7 give                 |

- 15.3**
- |  |
|--|
| 1 couple                                     |
| 2 to know; wedding                           |
| 3 ceremony; honeymoon                        |
| 4 left; wrong; his own; divorced / a divorce |

**15.4** Possible answers:

- 1 I was 14 or 15 and I went to a party with a girl called Yvonne.
- 2 Yes, it was at university when I was about 20. Her name was Liz and we were together for almost three years.
- 3 The last wedding I went to was my cousin's, who got married to a man I had never met.
- 4 I went to a friend's 30<sup>th</sup> birthday party.

## Unit 16

- 16.1** Possible answers:  
 have a late night / an early night / a sleep / a wash / a shower / a bath / a snack / a light lunch  
 do the washing / the ironing / the housework / the shopping

- 16.2** 2 h    3 e    4 c    5 f    6 b    7 a    8 d

- 16.3**
- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 usually wakes me up           | 7 don't bother with a full meal                   |
| 3 have a snack in the afternoon | 8 have cereal for breakfast                       |
| 4 go out on Friday              | 9 housework; fortunately/luckily I have a husband |
| 5 friends come round            | 10 I try to reply to them straight away           |
| 6 eat out at the weekend        |   |

- 16.4**
- |           |              |            |
|-----------|--------------|------------|
| 2 instead | 4 early      | 6 takeaway |
| 3 stay in | 5 come round | 7 chat     |

## 16.5 Possible answers:

*Similar*

- 1 I usually have a light lunch.
- 2 I have my main meal in the evening.
- 3 I sometimes have a bath instead of a shower in the winter.

*Different*

- 1 I usually wake up before 7.00 am.
- 2 I have a shower in the morning.
- 3 I do my own washing because I don't have a cleaner.

## Unit 17

### 17.1

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2 False. They used to live in the centre of town. | 7 False. A French couple live upstairs. |
| 3 False. They rent their flat.                    | 8 False. The parents own a cottage.     |
| 4 True  | 9 True                                  |
| 5 False. They live on the second floor.           | 10 True                                 |
| 6 True  |   |

### 17.2

Positive: air conditioning, character, charming  
Negative: dark, no central heating

### 17.3

- 2 a lift    3 a balcony    4 a cottage    5 front door    6 steps

### 17.4

- |                  |             |               |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2 on; downstairs | 5 outskirts | 8 floor; lift |
| 3 space          | 6 balcony   | 9 moved       |
| 4 location       | 7 heat      | 10 light      |

### 17.5

Possible answers:

I live in a house, which I own, and it's near the centre of town. I've lived here for seven years now. I used to live in a house in London, but I moved because I didn't need to be in London for my job. I've got central heating where I live, but I haven't got air conditioning or a balcony.

## Unit 18

### 18.1

- |                    |                               |                  |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|
| 2 in the microwave | 4 in the washing machine      | 6 in a cupboard  |
| 3 in the oven      | 5 in the dishwasher (or sink) | 7 in the freezer |

### 18.2

- 2 sink, in the kitchen
- 3 curtains, in the living room or the bedroom
- 4 cushions, in the living room
- 5 kettle, in the kitchen
- 6 washbasin, in the bathroom
- 7 carpet, in the living room or the bedrooms
- 8 pillow, in the bedroom
- 9 washing machine, in the utility room or the kitchen
- 10 cooker, in the kitchen
- 11 armchair, in the living room
- 12 tiles, in any room, though more likely in the kitchen or bathroom

### 18.3

- |          |              |                  |
|----------|--------------|------------------|
| 2 wooden | 5 share; own | 8 blanket; duvet |
| 3 choice | 6 spare      | 9 en suite       |
| 4 study  | 7 tap(s)     | 10 utility       |

### 18.4

Possible answers:

- 1 tiles    2 tiles    3 carpet and a couple of rugs    4 curtains    5 a duvet

### 18.5

Possible answers:

I like big sofas with lots of cushions.  
I prefer a wooden floor with rugs.  
I have no preference – it depends on the blinds and the curtains.  
I prefer a duvet.  
I must have two pillows. I can't stand only one pillow.

## Unit 19

**19.1** 2 No 3 No 4 No 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes

**19.2** 2 a bank loan 3 fee(s) 4 cash 5 rent 6 cashpoint 7 currency

**19.3** 2 She **wasted** the money. 5 He **charged** us £25.

3 I **can't afford** to go. 6 I **owe** a lot of money.

4 We could **hire** a car. 7 I always **check** my account carefully.

**19.4** 2 account 3 amount 4 earn 5 owe 6 pay (them) back 7 accommodation

**19.5** Possible answers:

1 Yes, I've had an account for about fifteen years.

2 I don't check my account very often. (see next answer)

3 I get money from a cashpoint about once a week, and I always ask for a receipt so that I know how much is in my account.

4 I had a bank loan to buy my first car – that's all.

5 Yes, I'm saving up for a holiday.

6 Yes, I rent a flat with a friend. We had to pay a deposit of one month's rent.

## Unit 20

**20.1** 3 different 4 different 5 same 6 different 7 same 8 different

**20.2** 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 – 7 – 8 a 9 – 10 a

**20.3** 2 sick 5 bleeding 8 serious

3 hurts 6 suffer

4 bandage 7 aches

**20.4** people have **heart attacks**

**surgeons perform operations**

**tablets/pills** are common forms of **medicine**

**hepatitis** affects the **liver**

people have **sore throats**

**20.5** Possible answers:

1 I take tablets such as aspirin.

2 I hardly ever get a cough or sore throat.

3 No, I haven't been a patient.

4 I had to go into hospital for a minor operation, but I didn't have to stay overnight.

5 We have various tablets for pain, e.g. paracetamol or Ibuprofen. We usually have different medicines for colds and flu, or for stomach problems.

## Unit 21

21.1	items of clothing	jewellery	parts of clothing
	boots, top, jumper, scarf, cap, tights	earrings, ring, bracelet, necklace	button, zip, pocket, sleeve, collar

**21.2** 2 The first woman is wearing a necklace; the second isn't.

3 The first woman has four pockets on her jacket; the second has two.

4 The first woman has two buttons on her jacket sleeve; the second has one.

5 The second woman is wearing earrings; the first isn't.

6 The second woman is wearing a bracelet; the first isn't.

**21.3** 2 in 5 suit 8 undid

3 dressed 6 up 9 rucksack

4 on 7 into 10 dressed

## **21.4** Possible answers for an English woman:

- 1 I always wear earrings, and I sometimes wear a ring and a necklace. I don't wear a bracelet very often.
  - 2 I think dark colours suit me best.
  - 3 I prefer to wear casual clothes, but I have to wear smart clothes for work.
  - 4 I hope I look quite stylish, but I'm not sure I do.
  - 5 I never wear a cap, but I sometimes wear a hat.
  - 6 I often wear T-shirts, but I never wear trainers.

## **21.5** Possible answers for an English boy:

- 1 I hardly ever wear a suit.
  - 2 I don't like wearing ties – but I have to wear one for school.
  - 3 I almost always undo the top button of my shirt – unless I'm cold.
  - 4 I always change into jeans after school.
  - 5 I don't wear a cap or a hat.
  - 6 I wear T-shirts a lot, and I always wear trainers.

## Unit 22



## **22.5** Possible answers for a young man:

I occasionally shop with a friend but usually on my own.

I always try on shoes and trousers before I buy them, but not shirts.

I sometimes buy clothes that don't suit me, but that's just a mistake. I never buy clothes just because they're fashionable.

If I buy trousers, I don't usually buy a shirt to go with it. But if I buy a jacket, I might buy a shirt to go with it.

My wardrobe does have quite a few things that I hardly ever wear.

I don't buy designer labels unless they're reduced in the sales; the price has to be reasonable.

I like casual clothes. I don't really care whether they're fashionable.

I'm not always happy with what I've got on, but if I'm honest, I don't think about it much.

## Unit 23

- 23.1**

  - 2 True
  - 3 True
  - 4 False. Expensive items are on the middle shelves.
  - 5 True
  - 6 True
  - 7 True
  - 8 False. Sometimes you buy more than you need and throw some of it away.

- 23.2** con'venient      'checkout      'entrance      a 'refund      re'place      'item

- 23.3** 2 shopping centres                    5 shopping centres  
3 street markets                            6 both, but probably more true of shopping centres  
4 street markets

<b>23.4</b>	2 makes; replace 3 throw 4 queue	5 offer 6 entrance 7 range	8 atmosphere 9 likely
-------------	--	----------------------------------	--------------------------

**23.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I go to a supermarket once a week. I don't like shopping there, but it is convenient.
- 2 I hardly ever go to shopping centres. I don't like them very much.
- 3 I go to a small food market once a week. I really like it because you get to know the people who have the stalls and they often sell things which are a bit different.
- 4 I don't often haggle for things; I'm not very good at it.
- 5 I take things back to shops if there is something wrong with them, and usually I get a refund.

## Unit 24

<b>24.1</b>	1 vegetable: <i>pea(s)</i> 2 vegetable: <i>garlic</i> 3 vegetable: <i>mushroom</i> 4 vegetable: <i>spinach</i> 5 vegetable: <i>onion</i>	fruit: <i>peach, pear, pineapple</i> fruit: <i>grapes</i> fruit: <i>melon</i> fruit: <i>strawberry</i> fruit: <i>olive</i>
-------------	--	--

**24.2** *lettuce/chicken, aubergine/tomato, onion/mushroom, prawn/pork, salmon/lamb*

- 24.3** 2 cabbage, the others are all used in salad  
3 crab, the others are all meat  
4 peach, the others are all vegetables  
5 broccoli, the others are all types of seafood  
6 chicken, the others are all vegetables

**24.4** These are the most likely answers:

melon: NO	grapes: YES	peaches: YES or SOMETIMES
pears: YES or SOMETIMES		lemon: NO

- 24.5** 1 lamb; veal; pork  
2 lettuce  
3 oil and vinegar (oil and lemon is also possible)

**24.6** Possible answers for the UK:

- 1 Strawberries and pears are more common than pineapple.
- 2 Lamb and beef are more expensive than pork or chicken.
- 3 lettuce, tomato and cucumber; sometimes onion and red pepper as well
- 4 aubergine, red pepper, pineapple, melons, grapes or peaches
- 5 veal
- 6 Peaches are my favourite fruit. / Lamb is my favourite meat.

## Unit 25

**25.1** fry, grill, roast, bake, barbecue

**25.2** raw – door; sour – hour; oven – love; pie – lie; saucepan – four

- 25.3** 2 ~~cooker~~ cook  
3 ~~fry pan~~ frying pan  
4 ~~sour~~ bitter

5 ~~good in~~ good at  
6 ~~tastes~~ flavours

- 25.4** 2 chef  
3 tasty  
4 cooker

5 sour  
6 raw  
7 delicious; horrible/terrible/unpleasant

- 25.5** 2 ingredients  
3 peeled  
4 boiled

5 chopped  
6 fried  
7 added

## **25.6** Possible answers for a British person:

- 1 We eat a lot of roast beef, baked potatoes and barbecued chicken in the UK. We sometimes eat fried rice but we don't usually eat raw fish unless we go to a Japanese restaurant.
- 2 I like bitter chocolate, I like spicy food, and I like the taste of garlic. I don't like chocolate-flavoured ice cream very much – I prefer vanilla.
- 3 The weather isn't good enough in the UK to cook outside on a barbecue very often.
- 4 I'm not a great cook but I'm quite good at making desserts.

## **Unit 26**

**26.1** 2 f 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 h 8 e

**26.2** 2 It was quiet. 5 There are disadvantages.  
3 It's very dirty. 6 There's nowhere to park.  
4 It was very dull/boring.

**26.3** 2 cultural 3 variety 4 night 5 stuck 6 value

**26.4** 2 exhausted 5 pollution 8 going on  
3 stressed 6 hurry 9 get poverty  
4 lively 7 park

## **26.5** Possible answers for a town in the south of England:

- 1 It's quite bad from 8.00 to 9.00 in the morning, and then again from 4.30 to 6.00 pm.
- 2 It's very good for a medium-sized town: lots of restaurants and bars, a few nightclubs, two or three cinemas, two or three theatres, several concert halls, etc.
- 3 Yes it is. As well as cinema, theatre and concerts, we have a number of festivals: a literature festival, a jazz festival, a food festival, and lots of cultural talks and lectures you can go to.
- 4 There is pollution in the town centre because it's between two hills.
- 5 The crime rate isn't bad because it is quite a rich town, and I feel safe at night.
- 6 Living in my town has lots of advantages. There are lots of things to do, like go to the cinema, theatre, etc. There are plenty of shops too, and a train station. But some of the disadvantages are that there are too many cars and traffic jams and this means there is pollution too.

## **Unit 27**

**27.1** 2 grass 3 leaves 4 woods 5 plants 6 roots 7 branches 8 crops

**27.2** 2 countryside (also country) 4 own 6 ground/grass  
3 up 5 season 7 keep

**27.3** 2 gate 3 tractor 4 footpath 5 field 6 valley 7 woods 8 farmhouse

**27.4** 2 spaces 5 surrounded 8 public 11 away  
3 air 6 worst 9 hopeless  
4 pick 7 get 10 much

## **27.5** Possible answers:

I agree with most of the ideas in the text. I also think that life in the country is probably less stressful than in a big city, and probably healthier too. One of the disadvantages of living in the country is that you become totally dependent on having a car.

## **Unit 28**

**28.1** 2 ride 5 run 8 fares  
3 get in 6 fly 9 driver  
4 journey 7 missed 10 off; stop

**28.2** 2 van 4 lorry (also truck) 6 bicycle/bike  
3 motorbike 5 coach

<b>28.3</b>	2 journey 3 convenient; away 4 corner	5 reliable 6 queue 7 return	8 complaining 9 season 10 platform
-------------	---	-----------------------------------	--

**28.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Generally yes.
- 2 Prices vary a great deal in England. Sometimes a return is twice the price of a single, but sometimes it is not much more than a single.
- 3 Where I live is very convenient for the train station if I need to travel out of town.
- 4 I don't take taxis very often; only if I need to get home late at night.
- 5 I usually ride my bike once a week.

## Unit 29

<b>29.1</b>	2 pedestrians 3 pavement	4 pedestrian crossing 5 (road) junction	6 brake 7 road sign
<b>29.2</b>	2 lane 3 traffic light(s) 4 overtaking	5 motorway 6 bridge 7 bend	8 (road) junction
<b>29.3</b>	2 lost 3 direct	4 via 5 way	6 ended 7 turning
<b>29.4</b>	2 accident 3 approaching 4 overtake	5 speed 6 swerve 7 crashed	8 damaged 9 injuries

**29.5** *Possible answers for England:*

- 1 Yes, it's 70 mph. (about 115 kph)
- 2 There are usually three lanes.
- 3 Yes, they do.
- 4 Not very often, but it sometimes happens if the road is very narrow.

## Unit 30

<b>30.1</b>	2 Mind the step 3 Admission free 4 Out of order 5 No vacancies/entry/exit 6 Do not lean out of the window / leave bags unattended 7 Please queue other side 8 Mind your head 9 Please do not disturb / Please do not feed the animals 10 Keep off the grass 11 Keep right/left 12 Silence examination in progress
<b>30.2</b>	2 In a hotel window 3 In a bank or post office 4 On a vending machine (a machine selling drinks and snacks) 5 At a theatre 6 On a parcel 7 In a zoo

- 30.3** 2 Do not leave bags unattended      6 Mind your head  
 3 Please do not disturb      7 Admission free  
 4 No parking      8 SILENCE – examination in progress  
 5 Do not lean out of the window

**30.4** No exit, Silence – examination in progress, out of order, keep right, mind the step, no entry

**30.5** *Possible signs in English you might see are:*

English spoken here  
 Entrance [you go in here]  
 Flat to let [advertising a flat that you can rent]  
 Cyclists dismount here [people on bicycles must get off their bikes here]  
 No through road [there is no way out for cars at the other end of this road]

### Unit 31

**31.1** 2 c    3 h    4 a    5 f    6 d    7 e    8 b

- 31.2** 2 to look up the meaning of words  
 3 a plug  
 4 to rub something out  
 5 because you haven't got one (or someone else hasn't got one)  
 6 to highlight something  
 7 to sharpen a pencil  
 8 to measure something, or perhaps to underline something

**31.3** 2 How do you pronounce 'swap'?      4 How do you use the word 'swap' in a sentence?  
 3 How do you spell 'swap'?

- 31.4** 2 Could you turn up the DVD player?  
 3 Could you lend me a dictionary?  
 4 Could you repeat that, please?  
 5 Could you explain the difference between lend and borrow?  
 6 Could I borrow your ruler?  
 7 Could we swap places?

**31.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 32

**32.1** 2 f    3 g    4 b    5 h    6 d    7 c    8 a

**32.2** 2 primary    3 secondary    4 take; vocational training    5 stay    6 go (on)

**32.3** 2 timetable    3 into    4 both are correct    5 break    6 break up  
 7 get    8 dress (you can wear what you want = you can dress the way you want)

**32.4** 2 wear    3 male; female    4 trouble    5 punished    6 atmosphere

**32.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 33

**33.1** 2 both are correct    3 up    4 revise for    5 do    6 both are correct    7 failed

**33.2** 2 grade                                5 work                                8 hard work  
 3 candidates                                6 increase; basic                    9 willing  
 4 essay                                        7 vowels; consonants

**33.3** 2 revision    3 my best    4 exam preparation    5 things wrong    6 ear for language



### 35.5 Possible answers:

My father is an accountant.

I have an uncle who is a doctor, and another who is retired. (He is 63 and no longer works.)

The man next door is a police officer, and his wife is a teacher.

I have another neighbour who is a journalist.

I have a friend in the army, another friend who is training to be a doctor, and a third friend who is an electrician.

## Unit 36

### 36.1 Words which are connected with money: earn, wages, salary, income

36.2 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 c 6 a

36.3 2 I work in marketing.

7 What do you do for a living?

3 I work for the government.

8 My job involves reading government reports.

4 My income is £34,000.

9 I give advice to clients.

5 What does your job involve?

10 I made a complaint about the service.

6 I'm in charge of the reception area.

36.4 2 runs / is in charge of

7 overtime

12 off

3 responsible

8 earn/make

13 advises

4 involves

9 conditions

14 dealing

5 day

10 tax

15 fixed

6 five

11 a

16 do/work

### 36.5 Your own answers

## Unit 37

37.1 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 b

### 37.2

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	(un)employed
promote	promotion	
retire	retirement	retired
resign	resignation	
succeed	success	successful
own	owner	

37.3 2 abroad

6 work

10 own

3 part time

7 succeed

11 own; success

4 quit; rise

8 apply

12 application

5 experience; courses

9 sack

### 37.4 Possible answers:

1 Yes, I was promoted to hotel manager last year.

2 I get a pay rise, but not always a good one.

3 Yes, I went on a computer course last year.

4 I would like to do a course on financial planning to help me with my current job.

5 I have never been given the sack, but I resigned from my last job when I was given the opportunity to work for my present employer.

## Unit 38

38.1 2 rubbish bin 3 filing cabinet 4 paperwork 5 noticeboard

38.2 2 colleagues 3 calendar 4 diary 5 invoice 6 calculator 7 loads

## 38.5 Possible answer:

In my job as a dentist, I have to do quite a lot of paperwork, I send a few emails, I attend a few meetings, and I never use a photocopier. I don't show people round, I don't have to organise events or type letters, and I don't send out invoices. The only things I repair are people's teeth.

Unit 39

- 39.1** Words which refer to people: *expert, accountant, client, contacts*

**39.2**

2 demand	5 employees	8 job
3 aim	6 set up	9 expanding
4 firm/business	7 headquarters	10 a great deal

**39.3**

2 take up	5 set up	8 take over
3 clients	6 customer	9 a former
4 ex-	7 currently	

**39.4**

  - 2 They achieved a lot /a great deal.
  - 3 I have a lot of contacts in banking.
  - 4 They were formerly (called) BMG.
  - 5 It's always been my ambition to fly a plane.
  - 6 She's an expert in finance.
  - 7 The adverts attracted (a lot of) attention.

Unit 40

- 40.1** 2 by 3 from 4 of 5 in 6 in 7 of

**40.2** 2 a loan 3 interest 4 inflation 5 profit 6 trade 7 trend

**40.3** 1 loan; charges; interest; pay back. ANSWER €600  
2 rate; % (per cent); pay back. ANSWER €575.

**40.4**

2 figures	6 sharp	10 quarters
3 increased / went up / rose	7 fall/decrease	11 risen / gone up
4 made	8 loss	12 sharply
5 raise/increase	9 stayed	

## 40.5 Possible answers:

- <sup>1</sup> About 2%    <sup>2</sup> 7-8%    <sup>3</sup> Badly    <sup>4</sup> 2010-1    <sup>5</sup> One British pound is 1.4 US dollars.

Unit 41

41.1	sport	person	place	verb	equipment
	<i>swimming, motor racing, basketball, skiing</i>	golfer, athlete, goalkeeper, racing driver	court, track, pitch, rink	jump, box, race, sail	net, stick, skis, swimming costume

- 41.2** 2 do 3 play 4 ski 5 did 6 go 7 do 8 keep 9 work out

- 41.3** 2 swimming/swimmer 3 boxing/boxer 4 sailing/sailor 5 athletics/athlete

- 41.4** 2 hockey                    5 costumes                    8 climbing  
       3 courses                    6 racing                    9 tent  
       4 fun/pleasure              7 fit                      10 jogging

**41.5** Possible answers:

- 1 In the winter I play football, and in the summer I play tennis and go swimming. It's not serious; I just do it for fun.
- 2 I watch a lot of sport on the TV: football, tennis, ice hockey, motor racing. In fact, I'll watch almost any sport if I have nothing else to do.

## Unit 42

- 42.1** 2 lose / lost / have lost  
       3 beat / beat / have beaten  
       4 draw / drew / have drawn  
       5 break / broke / have broken  
       6 give up / gave up / have given up

- 42.2** 2 both are correct            4 tournament            6 beat  
       3 score                      5 both are correct    7 competition

- 42.3** 2 score; result (score is also possible)            7 league  
       3 beat/defeated              8 took  
       4 drew                        9 leading  
       5 championship/tournament    10 against  
       6 record



**42.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I've taken part in lots of competitions: football, cricket, rugby, swimming and athletics.
- 2 I won a cup competition at secondary school in football.
- 3 I was captain of the rugby team at secondary school.
- 4 I came first in a backstroke (swimming) race when I was at primary school, and at secondary school I won the 100 and 200 metres (athletics) on several occasions.
- 5 I've watched lots of finals on TV: the FA Cup, the World Cup, the UEFA Cup, Wimbledon, the French Open, the Olympics, and so on. I also went to Twickenham to see the rugby team I support in an important final of a cup competition. Unfortunately we lost.

## Unit 43

- 43.1** across: literature, author, actor, fiction, novel, poetry, comedy  
       down: poem, thriller, star, film, review

- 43.2** 2 year century              5 article review  
       3 past future                6 autobiography biography  
       4 happening on              7 frightened laugh; or Comedies Horror films

<b>43.3</b>	2 entertainment 3 actors 4 poem	5 acting 6 entertainer 7 reviewer	8 director
-------------	---------------------------------------	---	------------

<b>43.4</b>	2 latest 3 directed	4 (film) director 5 complicated	6 on 7 comedies	8 novel 9 fancy
-------------	------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------

**43.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I don't read poetry but I read lots of novels. I enjoy thrillers and I like the English writer William Boyd.
- 2 Yes, I go to the cinema quite a lot. There are certain directors whose films I always see, but usually I go and see films that have had good reviews, or films that friends recommend.
- 3 I read reviews in the Sunday paper.
- 4 My favourite films are Godfather 1 and 2, and part of the reason I like them is that they have three of my favourite actors: Robert De Niro, Al Pacino and Marlon Brando.

## Unit 44

**44.1** 2 e    3 a    4 f    5 b    6 d

**44.2** 2 single    3 album; comes    4 live    5 recorded    6 advertised

**44.3** Suggested answers:

**Ballet** is a form of **dancing** that tells a story to music.

**Audiences** listen to **concerts**.

**Albums** are made in a **recording studio**.

The **conductor** stands in front of an **orchestra**.

A **composer** is someone who writes **classical music**.

<b>44.4</b>	2 orchestra; conductor 3 opera singers (tenors) 4 single	5 album 6 guitarist 7 cellist	8 composer 9 operas 10 solo; Michael Jackson
-------------	--	-------------------------------------	--

- 1 I like rock music, pop and R&B. My taste in music is very different from my parents – they hate rock music!
- 2 My favourite artist is Beyoncé. I really like her song, *Formation*.
- 3 I bought Iggy Azalea's latest album earlier this year.
- 4 The last time I saw someone perform live was last year.
- 5 I'm interested in both the tune and the lyrics.
- 6 I play the guitar, but very badly!

## Unit 45

**45.1** 2 included    3 maximum    4 exciting    5 ships/boats    6 move/walk

- 2 The children dress up.
- 3 People come from all over Japan.
- 4 The event is held every year.
- 5 Do you celebrate your birthday? OR Do you do anything (special) to celebrate your birthday?
- 6 The festival is an annual event. OR The festival happens annually.

<b>45.3</b>	2 festival 3 lasts 4 takes	5 celebrates 6 consists 7 spectacular	8 gather 9 Firework
-------------	----------------------------------	---	------------------------

**45.4** Your own answers

## Unit 46



## Unit 47

- |             |  |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| <b>47.1</b> | 2 excess baggage<br>3 check-in desk<br>4 hand luggage<br>5 terminal building | 6 duty free<br>7 flight number<br>8 overhead locker<br>9 boarding card | 10 cabin crew<br>11 baggage reclaim<br>12 passport control |
| <b>47.2</b> | 2 passengers<br>3 luggage/suitcases<br>4 boarding card                       | 5 destination<br>6 check your passport<br>7 gate                       | 8 hand luggage<br>9 runway                                 |
| <b>47.3</b> | 2 announcement<br>3 delay<br>4 boarded                                       | 5 take off<br>6 fasten<br>7 crew                                       | 8 landed<br>9 terminal<br>10 flight                        |

## 47.4 Possible answers:

- 1 The worst part of the flight for me is the take-off, and the best part is the landing because I'm just pleased when it's over. I don't like flying much.
  - 2 There are often delays in the winter when the weather is bad.
  - 3 I often think about the place I'm going to or the place I've just been to. Other than that, I read a book or watch a film. Occasionally I talk to the person sitting next to me.
  - 4 I try to get through customs quickly, so I can go home or start to enjoy my holiday!
  - 5 I never have anything to declare because I rarely buy things when I travel.

Unit 48

- |             |   |  |                                  |   |
|-------------|---|--|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>48.1</b> | <i>steak</i>                                  | <i>facilities</i>                      | <i>courses</i>                   | <i>water</i>  |
|             | rare, medium,<br>well-done                    | mini-bar, room<br>service, safe        | starter, main<br>course, dessert | still, sparkling                                    |
| <b>48.2</b> | 2 e    3 a    4 c    5 h    6 b    7 d    8 f |  |                                  |   |
| <b>48.3</b> | 2 reception<br>3 double/twin<br>4 service     | 5 'll have<br>6 facilities<br>7 tip    |                                  | 8 heart/centre<br>9 mixed; course<br>10 stay; check |
| <b>48.4</b> | 2 reservation<br>3 available                  | 4 included (in the price)<br>5 advance | 6 parking<br>7 to order          |   |

## **48.5** Possible answers:

If I go to a hotel in my own country, I usually drive, so parking is very important. I also like to have satellite TV.  
A restaurant is only important if there are no other good restaurants in the area.  
A mini-bar and air conditioning are great if it's in the summer and it is quite hot.  
I usually carry my money and credit cards with me, so I don't need a safe.  
I never use room service or need internet access, so they're not important at all.

## Unit 49

**49.1** 1 latte, milkshake, hot chocolate, smoothie

2 bagel, panini, toastie, baguette, wrap

3 cupcake, muffin, waffle

**49.2** 2 cappuccino 3 croissants 4 decaf  
5 milkshake 6 smoothie 7 vegetarian

**49.3** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 d

**49.4** 2 large 3 panini 4 muffin 5 take away

**49.5** Your own answers

## Unit 50

**50.1** Religious places are: temple, cathedral, mosque

**50.2** 2 sightseeing 4 packed 6 lost 8 go out  
3 attractions/sights 5 explore/visit 7 market

**50.3** 2 packed 4 great/lovely time 6 guidebook 8 magnificent  
3 plenty to do 5 worth seeing/visiting 7 monuments 9 look round

**50.4** Your own answers

## Unit 51

**51.1** Any four of these: sunbathe, suntan, sunburn, sunscreen, sunblock, sun cream

**51.2** 2 c 3 e 4 a 5 f 6 b

**51.3** 2 sunbathing 3 surfing 4 diving 5 windsurfing

**51.4** 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 b

**51.5** 2 recommend 4 protection/shade 6 stroll/walk 8 go for / have  
3 risk 5 breeze 7 shade

**51.6** Possible answers:

- 1 I go to seaside resorts in the south-west of England, and sometimes the south of France, or the coast of Spain near Barcelona. I usually go once or twice a year.
- 2 I go for a swim; that's all.
- 3 No, I don't like sunbathing. It's boring and I get sunburn easily.
- 4 No, I don't get a suntan easily and I have had sunburn in the past. I might use sunscreen on my face. I usually wear a T-shirt or sit in the shade if it is very hot.
- 5 I like to go for a drink and then have a meal.

## Unit 52

**52.1** Types of TV programme: documentary, soap opera, chat show, series

**52.2** 2 comes out /is published 4 Channel

3 regional 5 celebrities /well-known

**52.3**

<sup>1</sup> C	E	L	E	B	R	I	T	Y		
<sup>2</sup> S	E	R	I	E	S					
<sup>3</sup> R	E	P	O	R	T					
<sup>4</sup> S	O	A	P	O	P	E	R	A		
	D	A	I	L	Y					
<sup>6</sup> D	O	C	U	M	E	N	T	A	R	Y
<sup>7</sup> N	A	T	I	O	N	A	L			
<sup>8</sup> C	H	A	T	S	H	O	W			
<sup>9</sup> A	R	T	I	C	L	E				

<b>52.4</b>	2 reporters/journalists 3 headline 4 station	5 says/said 6 review 7 adverts/advertisements	8 According; forecast 9 soap 10 reality
-------------	--	---	---

### 52.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I think there are about ten national newspapers in England.
- 2 At least two only come out on Sunday: *The Observer* and *The People*.
- 3 I read the front-page stories, the sports pages, the reviews, and anything that looks interesting.
- 4 I watch the news and the weather forecast every day. Programmes I enjoy are documentaries and some drama series. I never watch soap operas.

## Unit 53

### 53.1

- 1 I gave him a ring; I rang him
- 2 *Possible answers:* the line was engaged, you rang the wrong number, Tom was out / wasn't in
- 3 Any three of these: a mobile number, an emergency number, the wrong number, a home phone / landline number

### 53.2

- |              |                               |            |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| 2 calling    | 7 message                     | 12 It's    |
| 3 My name is | 8 answerphone                 | 13 through |
| 4 putting    | 9 out /not in                 | 14 engaged |
| 5 Is that    | 10 phone/ring/call (you) back | 15 on      |
| 6 Speaking   | 11 Is that                    |            |

### 53.3

- |                 |                        |             |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 2 kiss          | 5 as soon as possible  | 8 thanks    |
| 3 see you       | 6 for your information | 9 boyfriend |
| 4 in my opinion | 7 laughing out loud    | 10 you      |

### 53.4 Your own answers

## Unit 54

### 54.1

- 2 h    3 a    4 g    5 b    6 d    7 f    8 c

### 54.2

- 2 laptop    3 keyboard    4 spacebar    5 username    6 password

### 54.3

- |         |        |         |       |                             |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|-----------------------------|
| 2 paste | 3 copy | 4 print | 5 cut | 6 open an existing document |
| 7 save  |        |         |       |                             |

### 54.4

- 2 hard drive/disk    3 virus    4 laptop    5 password

### 54.5

- 2 back up    3 stored; backup/copy    4 install    5 create/open; menu    6 virus; anti-virus

### 54.6

*Possible answer:*

I have a PC and I use the operating system Windows 10 on it. My computer has a 500GB hard drive so I can store lots of data, particularly photos. I've recently installed software that will help me make my family tree. I have anti-virus software too, which is very important. I'm currently running Microsoft Word.

## Unit 55

### 55.1

- 2 e    3 a    4 c    5 f    6 d

### 55.2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2 Internet Service Provider                    | 6 Emails that you do not want, usually advertisements         |
| 3 Access to email and other services           | 7 Zac at hotmail dot com                                      |
| 4 Browsers                                     | 8 They discuss things and share information about themselves. |
| 5 A particular subject or their everyday lives |   |

### 55.3

- |                          |                             |             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 2 immediately; essential | 5 attachment; checked       | 8 regularly |
| 3 click; link            | 6 download; download; clips |             |
| 4 access                 | 7 anti-virus                |             |

## 55.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I use the Internet a lot for my work. I use the BBC website a lot, and I read newspapers online.
  - 2 I don't have a blog, but I occasionally read other people's.
  - 3 I don't download much stuff from the Internet.
  - 4 I watch video clips on YouTube: sporting events, comedy clips, etc. I also watch TV on the Internet.
  - 5 I don't use social networking sites at all.

## Unit 56

56.1	noun	person	verb
	crime	<i>criminal</i>	commit a crime
	murder	murderer	murder
	theft	thief	steal/take
	robbery	robber	rob
	burglary	burglar	burgle

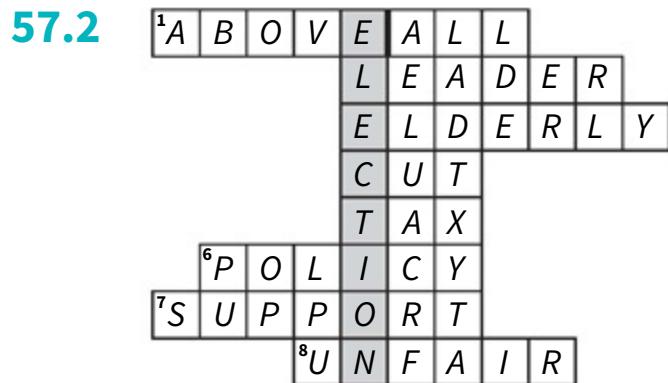
**56.2** theft/steal; crime/offence; jail/prison; get away/escape; hit/attack

**56.3** 2 arrest 3 innocent 4 murder 5 offence 6 fine 7 crime 8 punished

<b>56.4</b>	2 stealing	6 worth	10 robbery
	3 broke	7 escape / get away	11 court
	4 attacked/hit	8 arrested	12 guilty
	5 stole	9 detectives / the police	13 prison/jail

## Unit 57

**57.1** 2 political    3 beliefs    4 powerful    5 reduction    6 politicians



**57.3** 2 They voted for her.  
3 Elections are held every five years.  
4 They will provide hospitals with more money. OR They will provide more money for hospitals.  
5 It's a secret ballot.  
6 The system treats everyone equally / fairly / the same way.  
7 Our policy is to provide care for old people / the elderly.

**57.4** 2 constituencies                    5 vote                    8 government  
3 political                                6 parliament            9 Prime  
4 Elections                              7 party

## **57.5** Your own answers

## 57.6 Your own answers

## Unit 58

**58.1** 2 fun 3 few 4 now 5 son 6 comfortable

**58.2** 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

**58.3** 2 recycle 5 Save 8 reduce  
3 waste 6 switching/turning 9 Take  
4 tap 7 Plant

**58.4** 2 create 7 environment  
3 result 8 destroy  
4 effects 9 efficient  
5 flood 10 Energy  
6 drought; occurring/happening

verb	noun
recycle	<i>recycling</i>
waste	waste
destroy	destruction
exist	existence

verb	noun
solve	solution
reduce	reduction
support	support
suffer	suffering

**58.6** Possible answers:

- 1 You can certainly see changes in the climate. The weather seems more extreme: more hot weather, more wet weather, etc.
- 2 We have to put our household rubbish in different containers every week so that more things are recycled, e.g. one container for newspapers; one for bottles, tins and plastic; one for garden rubbish, etc.
- 3 Yes, I waste energy. I leave lights on and taps running; but I only use the car for essential journeys.
- 4 I could turn off taps and lights, drive a smaller car, and do things to the house to make it more energy-efficient. Climate change worries me when I think about it.

## Unit 59

**59.1** die is a verb war is a noun  
attack is a noun and verb defend is a verb  
death is a noun escape is a noun and verb  
shoot is a verb hide is a verb

**59.2** 2 shot 5 exploded; killed 8 defend (protect is also possible)  
3 hide 6 searching 9 carrying  
4 escape / get away 7 destroyed

**59.3** 2 battle 5 dead 8 carry  
3 both are correct 6 both are correct 9 shot  
4 destroyed 7 died

**59.4** 2 soldiers (army is possible) 6 killed  
3 enemy 7 army  
4 bomb 8 took place  
5 violent

**59.5** destruction, e.g. The bomb caused a huge amount of destruction.  
explosion, e.g. The explosion happened outside the main gates.  
defence, e.g. The army are responsible for the defence of the nation.

## Unit 60

- 60.1** 2 in 3 on 4 have 5 for 6 same  
**60.2** 2 by 3 until 4 since 5 for 6 during 7 for 8 in 9 since  
**60.3** 2 a long time ago / ages ago 4 recently/lately 6 for the time being  
3 the other day 5 for ages  
**60.4** 2 fortnight 4 1963; 50 6 10  
3 19; 20 5 7 7 1960s

**60.5** Possible answers (*from a Spanish man*):

- 1 I've been in my present job for a year.
- 2 It takes me half an hour to get to work.
- 3 A typical working day for me lasts about seven hours. I work from 9.30 am to 1.30 pm, then I have a long lunch break (siesta) and work again from 5 pm to 8 pm.
- 4 I've been studying English since 2009, but I stopped for three years during 2011–2014.
- 5 I haven't spoken English since 11 o'clock this morning.
- 6 I saw my cousin Rafa the other day.
- 7 Nowadays I don't go to the gym as much as I used to.
- 8 One day I hope to be a very successful architect.

## Unit 61

- 61.1** 2 two and a half  
3 two thousand, three hundred and forty-five  
4 nought point two five  
5 one million, two hundred and fifty thousand  
6 ten point nought/oh four  
7 forty-seven per cent  
8 the tenth of September (OR September the tenth)  
9 nine four oh/zero, double three eight  
10 minus five degrees Celsius (OR five degrees below zero)  
11 in nineteen ninety-six  
12 twenty twelve (OR two thousand and twelve)
- 61.2** 2 twenty thousand 5 the thirty-first of August / August the thirty-first  
3 the seventh of June / June the seventh 6 seven two three, six oh/zero nine  
4 two hundred and twenty
- 61.3** 2 majority 3 minority 4 calculator 5 up; work 6 stuck
- 61.4** 2 seventy-two 3 sixty 4 five 5 three 6 fifteen

**61.5** Possible answers:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Nineteen eighty eight  | 4 June the sixth                           |
| 2 One metre eighty   | 5 About eighty thousand                    |
| 3 My building is number twenty-one,<br>and I live in flat three. | 6 I think it's about thirty-seven degrees. |

## Unit 62

- 62.1** 2 it's (quite) shallow. 5 it's huge/enormous.  
3 it's (quite) narrow. 6 it's tiny.  
4 he's (quite) tall.
- 62.2** 2 What's the depth of the lake? 6 What's her height?  
3 How high is the mountain? 7 How long/wide is the pitch?  
4 What's the height of the mountain? 8 What's the length/width of the pitch?  
5 How tall is she?

### 62.3 Possible answers:

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 It's just round the corner. | 5 No, it isn't far.                                  |
| 2 It's about a mile away.     | 6 Yes, (it's) quite a long way – about twenty miles. |
| 3 It's just down the road.    | 7 About fifteen minutes' walk.                       |
| 4 No, not far.                | 8 About ten minutes' walk.                           |

## Unit 63

### 63.1

objects	materials	shapes	colours
bell, flag, bucket, ladder	silk, cotton, plastic, fur	circle, square	pink, grey, purple, navy blue

### 63.2

- 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 c

### 63.3

- |                  |                  |                   |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 2 a red chair    | 4 a purple shirt | 6 a navy blue hat |
| 3 a round mirror | 5 a square table |                   |

### 63.4

- 2 a prawn 3 a bucket 4 a ladder 5 the moon 6 bones

### 63.5

#### Possible answers:

- 1 No. I don't think they look nice.
- 2 I have a pink top, a purple skirt, a navy blue jumper and navy blue jeans.
- 3 I've got a T-shirt with different-coloured stripes and a skirt with thin blue and black stripes.
- 4 I've got nothing made from fur, but I have got two silk dresses.
- 5 I've got several pairs of leather shoes and some leather bags.

## Unit 64

### 64.1

- 2 care 3 far 4 new 5 cup 6 run 7 want

### 64.2

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 2 a packet of spaghetti | 6 a jug of water   |
| 3 a bowl of fruit       | 7 a box of matches |
| 4 a jar of coffee       | 8 a bar of soap    |
| 5 a carton of milk      | 9 a bag of apples  |

### 64.3

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 2 a jar of jam                           | 6 a tube of toothpaste |
| 3 a packet of cigarettes                 | 7 a vase of flowers    |
| 4 a can of cola                          | 8 a packet of biscuits |
| 5 a carton of milk (or a bottle of milk) |                        |

### 64.4

- |                      |                   |            |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------|
| 2 bunch              | 5 sheet/piece/bit | 8 couple   |
| 3 slices/pieces/bits | 6 drop/spoonful   | 9 contents |
| 4 dozen              | 7 plenty/lots     | 10 several |

### 64.5

- 2 apples 3 a pair of 4 biscuit 5 crisps 6 shirts 7 bunch

## Unit 65

### 65.1

I'm terribly sorry / I beg your pardon  
I was held up / there was a delay  
don't worry / never mind

### 65.2

- |                     |                           |                    |
|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 2 Not               | 4 I'm; cancelled; problem | 6 apologise; Never |
| 3 keep; long; right | 5 kind                    | 7 beg              |

### 65.3

#### Possible answers:

- 2 I'm sorry I'm late but I overslept.
- 3 Oh, thank you very much. That's very kind of you.
- 4 I'm sorry to disturb you.
- 5 Excuse me, I have to take an important phone call.
- 6 I'm sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long.
- 7 I'm sorry I'm late but I got held up / delayed in traffic.
- 8 I must apologise for not sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately....

- 65.4**
- 1 I'm sometimes late for class. I have to apologise to my teacher and say why I'm late. Ususally it's because I miss the bus.
  - 2 I apologised to my friend as I spilt water on one of her books. I said that I was sorry and offered to buy her a new one. I didn't give an excuse.

## Unit 66

- 66.1**
- A: Do you like to go out this evening? *Would*  
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.  
A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about *go* to see a film? *going*  
B: No, I think I'd rather *to* stay in. I have to do some homework.  
A: Why *you don't* do your homework this afternoon? *don't you*  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: Well, we could *to* go tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, *it's* a great idea. *that's*
- 66.2**
- 2 d    3 a    4 e    5 f    6 b
- 66.3**
- |                    |                            |                                     |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 mind             | 3 wondering; problem       | 5 mind; ahead                       |
| 2 possibly; course | 4 fancy; mind; don't; idea | 6 shall; about; could; rather; like |
- 66.4**
- Possible answers:
- 2 Yes, of course.
  - 3 No, I'm afraid I haven't.
  - 4 No, help yourself / go ahead.
  - 5 Yeah, (that's a) great idea.
  - 6 No, I don't fancy that. OR Yes, if you like. / Yeah, I don't mind.
  - 7 I'd rather go out somewhere. OR Yes, if you like.

## Unit 67

- 67.1**
- 2 What do you think of    3 How do you feel about
- 67.2**
- |                  |                        |                            |                 |
|------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 2 of; personally | 4 strongly; right      | 6 true                     | 8 mean; opinion |
| 3 extent         | 5 Personally; disagree | 7 view/feeling; point/idea |                 |
- 67.3**
- 2 In my opinion the club needs new players.
  - 3 I don't agree with you at all.
  - 4 According to the newspaper, the fire was started on purpose.
  - 5 I agree with her to some extent.
  - 6 I take your point / I think that's a good point, but I'm not sure I agree.
- 67.4**
- Possible answers:
- 1 I completely disagree. Lots of women want to have a career *and* children.
  - 2 Yes, I agree to a certain extent, but most people want to work. It's not their fault they haven't got a job.
  - 3 Yes, that's true, but you have to remember there are lots of poor people in *our* country.
  - 4 Yes, I take your point, but what about people who need cars for their work but don't have a lot of money?

## Unit 68

- 68.1**
- |                              |                               |                                   |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2 so do I                    | 4 to living                   | 6 prefer rugby <i>to</i> football |
| 3 I like <i>it</i> very much | 5 Me neither. / Neither do I. | 7 not interested in music         |
- 68.2**
- 2 common    3 all    4 interest    5 into    6 used    7 rather    8 getting
- 68.3**
- |                             |                              |                             |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2 So do I. Me too.          | 4 Neither can I. Me neither. | 6 Neither am I. Me neither. |
| 3 Neither do I. Me neither. | 5 So am I. Me too.           | 7 So have I. Me too.        |

## 68.4

- 2 I can't stand these new shoes.
- 3 She'd rather go home.
- 4 I'm not very keen on James Bond films.
- 5 I don't mind the new building.
- 6 I used to go riding a lot.
- 7 We have a lot (of things) in common.
- 8 I'm getting used to this new computer.
- 9 I don't have the same attitude to work now. OR My attitude to work has changed.

## 68.5

Possible answers:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I really like Italian food.                | I prefer classical music to pop music.    |
| I don't mind getting up early.             | Opera doesn't interest me.                |
| I can't stand waiting for buses or trains. | I used to have a beard, but not any more. |

## Unit 69

### 69.1

take care; excuse me; bless you; thank goodness; not bad

### 69.2

- |              |                  |                   |
|--------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 2 going; bad | 4 thank goodness | 6 Congratulations |
| 3 same to    | 5 take           | 7 how about       |

### 69.3

- |                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| 2 Goodbye. Nice to meet you.          | 5 Good luck. |
| 3 Excuse me. (Could I just get past?) | 6 Cheers.    |
| 4 Congratulations.                    | 7 Bless you. |

### 69.4

- 2 introduced; shake    3 greet    4 cheek; cheeks    5 care

### 69.5

Your own answers

## Unit 70

### 70.1

- |                     |                        |                     |
|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 2 <b>unable</b>     | 6 <b>uncomfortable</b> | 10 <b>dishonest</b> |
| 3 <b>incorrect</b>  | 7 <b>disagree</b>      | 11 <b>unfair</b>    |
| 4 <b>unusual</b>    | 8 <b>unnecessary</b>   | 12 <b>unlucky</b>   |
| 5 <b>impossible</b> | 9 <b>irregular</b>     |                     |

### 70.2

- 2 e    3 h    4 f    5 c    6 g    7 a    8 d

### 70.3

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 2 illegal   | 5 incorrect  | 8 dishonest |
| 3 undressed | 6 unfit      | 9 unlucky   |
| 4 unlikely  | 7 unexpected | 10 unfair   |

### 70.4

unkind; impatient; unsuitable; dislike; undo; unfashionable; unreliable; unfriendly; untidy; inability; unsociable

## Unit 71

### 71.1

verb	noun	adjective	noun
im'prove	im'provement	'stupid	stu'pidity
in'vent	in'vention	'happy	'happiness
re'lax	relax'ation	'similar	simi'larity
'hesitate	hesi'tation	'popular	popu'ularity
ar'ranging	ar'rangement	sad	'sadness
		'active	ac'tivity

### 71.2

- |             |               |                  |              |
|-------------|---------------|------------------|--------------|
| 2 actors    | 4 translators | 6 ballet dancers | 8 scientists |
| 3 directors | 5 footballers | 7 artists        |              |

<b>71.3</b>	2 management 3 government	4 inability 5 discussions	6 economists 7 improvement
-------------	------------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------

<b>71.4</b>	2 similarity 3 invention	4 translation 5 artist	6 fitness 7 development
-------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------

## Unit 72

<b>72.1</b>	2 careful 3 reliable 4 peaceful	5 comfortable 6 annual 7 unforgettable	8 correct 9 unbelievable
-------------	---------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

**72.2** 2 f 3 a 4 g 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 c

<b>72.3</b>	2 attractive 3 personal 4 cloudy 5 colourful 6 famous	7 electrical 8 political 9 enjoyable 10 national 11 windy	12 dangerous 13 creative 14 emotional 15 foggy
-------------	---	---	---

**72.4** Words with an opposite with the suffix *-less*: useful/useless; careful/careless; painful/painless

<b>72.5</b>	2 unbelievable 3 helpful 4 annual 5 painful	6 useless 7 reliable 8 reasonable 9 personal	10 unforgettable 11 traditional 12 suitable
-------------	--	---	---

**72.6** Possible answers:

- 2 a jacket: (un) comfortable, (un) fashionable, useful, attractive, (un) suitable
- 3 an event: annual, enjoyable, traditional, political, cultural, famous
- 4 a person you know: (un) reliable, sociable, helpful, attractive, famous, normal
- 5 an opinion: political, personal, (un) reasonable
- 6 a room: (un) comfortable, peaceful, colourful, attractive

## Unit 73

**73.1** Roads: *public transport*, traffic lights, crossroads, bus stop, bus station

Money: income tax, cashpoint, credit card

Hair: haircut, hairdresser, hairdryer

Jobs: hairdresser, travel agent, film-maker, DJ, bus driver, (babysitter)

Things we wear: earrings, T-shirt, sunglasses

Air travel: airport, airline, aircraft

<b>73.2</b>	2 travel agent 3 campsite 4 wheelchair	5 birthday card 6 babysitter 7 sunglasses	8 income tax 9 hairdryer
-------------	--	---	-----------------------------

<b>73.3</b>	2 chest of drawers 3 DJ (disc jockey)	4 ID/identity card 5 mother tongue	6 ice hockey 7 full stop	8 credit card
-------------	--	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------

**73.4** Possible answers:

- 2 bus stop
- 3 hairdryer
- 4 birthday card, ID card
- 5 toothbrush
- 6 bus station
- 7 dining room
- 8 sister-in-law, mother-in-law, father-in-law
- 9 suntan, sunshine, sunblock, sunburn, sunscreen
- 10 traffic jam
- 11 armchair
- 12 film director

## Unit 74



# Unit 75

- 75.1** sooner or later; one or two; peace and quiet; day after day; now and again; up and down; so far; right away

**75.2**

2 <u>By the way</u>	5 <u>get rid of</u>	8 <u>For instance</u>
3 <u>out of the blue</u>	6 <u>In general</u>	9 <u>I'm just about to</u>
4 <u>to be honest</u>	7 <u>make up my mind</u>	10 <u>If I were you</u>

**75.3**

2 One or two	6 sooner or later	10 so far
3 burst into tears	7 Once or twice	11 ring a bell
4 the week before last	8 at once	12 apart from
5 if I were you	9 In two weeks' time	

**75.4**

2 cost a fortune = cost a lot of money  
3 keep an eye on = watch (and make sure something is safe)  
4 on the tip of my tongue = I know it but I can't remember it at the moment  
5 a night on the town = a night out  
6 could do with = need

## Unit 76

76.1	positive	negative	not sure or either
	why not; I suppose so	no way; not really	you're kidding; that depends; I don't believe it
76.2	2 see 3 both are correct	4 help 5 What	6 pay 7 both are correct
76.3	2 pays attention 3 had a word with her	4 felt bad about that/it 5 no idea	6 changed my mind
76.4	2 <i>Kind of blue</i> 3 <i>Well, in that case ...</i> 4 <i>You must be joking.</i> That's ten miles!		5 <i>Yeah. Why not?</i> 6 <i>Oh, burgers, pizzas, that sort of thing.</i> 7 <i>Yes. I couldn't believe my eyes.</i>

# Unit 77

- 77.1** 2 h    3 e    4 b    5 g    6 d    7 a    8 f

**77.2**

2 at; e.g. maths and history	7 on; e.g. my parents, the time
3 to; e.g. me, Carl	8 at; e.g. the children, I don't know
4 on; e.g. clothes, himself	9 on; e.g. all of them, none of them
5 of; e.g. heights, nothing	10 into; e.g. German
6 in; e.g. thrillers, serious films	

- 77.3** 2 similar                    5 wrong                    8 aware  
 3 complain                    6 with                    9 short  
 4 mad                        7 concentrate            10 depend

**77.4** keen on; suffer from; succeed in; get married to; apply for; apologise for

**77.5** Possible answers:

- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 at languages | 4 on food, clothes, rent and my car |
| 2 in sport     | 5 of going to Turkey                |
| 3 of flying    |                                     |

## Unit 78

**78.1**

on	in	by
board, display, fire, strike	detail, future, tears	hand, accident, mistake

**78.2**

- |              |               |                 |             |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 2 on purpose | 4 out-of-date | 6 at the moment | 8 in future |
| 3 by chance  | 5 on business | 7 in a hurry    |             |

**78.3**

- |                 |          |                  |
|-----------------|----------|------------------|
| 2 strike        | 6 hurry  | 10 display       |
| 3 hand          | 7 future | 11 moment; phone |
| 4 minute/moment | 8 date   | 12 end           |
| 5 purpose       | 9 detail |                  |

**78.4**

- |           |              |                 |                      |              |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|
| 2 in time | 4 in the end | 6 at the moment | 8 in a minute/moment | 10 in detail |
| 3 on fire | 5 at the end | 7 by chance     | 9 out-of-date        |              |

## Unit 79

**79.1**

- |        |       |        |      |      |      |      |
|--------|-------|--------|------|------|------|------|
| 2 away | 3 out | 4 back | 5 up | 6 up | 7 up | 8 on |
|--------|-------|--------|------|------|------|------|

**79.2**

- |             |            |                 |
|-------------|------------|-----------------|
| 2 go back   | 5 give up  | 8 get on (well) |
| 3 picked up | 6 carry on | 9 take on       |
| 4 put up    | 7 go away  |                 |

**79.3**

- |             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| b meaning 5 | c meaning 2 | d meaning 4 | e meaning 1 |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|

**79.4**

- |                 |             |                       |            |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------|
| 2 sort (it) out | 4 lie down  | 6 look (it) up        | 8 Hurry up |
| 3 put them back | 5 fell over | 7 putting on / put on |            |

## Unit 80

**80.1**

- |               |                 |                              |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| 2 put them on | 4 take them off | 6 turn it down               |
| 3 correct     | 5 correct       | 7 hanging around the station |

**80.2**

- |           |           |            |               |          |
|-----------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------|
| 2 put off | 3 make up | 4 left out | 5 turned down | 6 get in |
|-----------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------|

**80.3**

- 1 ALSO: He's putting his jacket on.
- 2 She's turning the light on. / She's turning on the light.
- 3 The car has broken down.
- 4 He's breaking into a shop.
- 5 They're hanging around (a street corner).
- 6 The teacher is handing out books. / The teacher is handing books out.

**80.4**

- |       |      |       |       |        |
|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|
| 2 out | 3 up | 4 off | 5 for | 6 down |
|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|

**80.5**

Possible answers:

- |                   |                 |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 2 a cold/flu      | 4 the light/TV  | 6 her children/dog |
| 3 stories/excuses | 5 the shop/flat |                    |

## Unit 81

- 81.1** 2 do                          4 do                          6 take                          8 made  
3 both are correct                5 both are correct              7 do

**81.2** 2 She's having/taking a shower.  
3 She's taking it/things easy.  
4 She's taking something out of her pocket.

**81.3** 2 made us go                    4 take a break                    6 make up their minds  
3 doing my best                    5 making an effort                7 take things/it easy

**81.4** 2 take                            5 take                            8 take  
3 made                                6 look                            9 do (take is also possible)  
4 done                                7 made                            10 made

**81.5** Your own answers

## Unit 82

- 82.1** give: a speech; someone a hug; someone a hand  
miss: an opportunity; a person; what someone says  
keep: in touch; on doing something; a secret

**82.2** 2 dry    3 laughing    4 fit    5 forgetting    6 quiet    7 thinking    8 waking

**82.3** 2 gave her a ring                  4 keep in touch                  6 missed his opportunity  
3 gave her a big hug                  5 give you a hand                  7 given me an appetite

**82.4** 2 miss all the fun                  5 miss the rush hour                  8 miss my dog  
3 keep it up                              6 keeps getting headaches      9 keep a secret  
4 gave me a push                        7 gave me the idea

Unit 83

- 83.1** 2 buy/obtain    3 fetch    4 arrive    5 became    6 obtain/find    7 answer    8 received

**83.2** 2 getting hungry                  4 getting dark                  6 getting worse  
3 getting hot                          5 getting late

**83.3** 2 get together and have a meal.                  6 get in before 10 o'clock.  
3 get to know people in this country?                  7 get out.  
4 get in touch with the travel company.                  8 get to sleep for hours last night.  
5 get rid of these old magazines.

**83.4** 2 need to get it cut.                  4 need to get it fixed/repaired.  
3 need to get it finished.                  5 need to get them back.

**83.5** Your own answers

Unit 84

## Unit 85

- 85.1** hearing; taste; smell; touch
- 85.2** 2 listening to; heard      5 look at      8 touch  
3 hear      6 watched      9 look; see  
4 seen      7 feel      10 seems
- 85.3** 2 felt like silk      6 seem/appear very nice  
3 looked like a church      7 feels/looks damp  
4 sounded like an alarm      8 seemed/appeared/looked calm and relaxed  
5 taste like/of coconut
- 85.4** 2 sounds as if/though      5 tastes as if  
3 feel as if/though      6 looks as if/though  
4 sounds as if      7 seemed/appeared as if/though (*also* looked as if/though)
- 85.5** *Your own answers*

## Unit 86

- 86.1** 2 a news news / some news / a bit of news  
3 advices advice  
4 are is  
5 homeworks homework  
6 furnitures were furniture was  
7 experiences experience these equipments this equipment  
8 knowledges knowledge
- 86.2** 2 a useful piece/bit of equipment.  
3 a good piece/bit of advice.  
4 another piece/bit of toast?  
5 a bit of progress. (piece is not possible here)  
6 a bit of rubbish on the floor. (piece is not possible here)  
7 a bit of pocket money. (piece is not possible here)  
8 a bit/piece of news this morning.
- 86.3** 2 experience    3 room/space    4 advice    5 furniture    6 progress
- 86.4** 2 experiences                  4 rubbish                  6 behaviour                  8 knowledge  
3 chance                              5 scenery                      7 experience
- 86.5** transport U    luggage U    suitcase C    pasta U    traffic U    accident C

## Unit 87

- 87.1** 2 to help      5 on      8 to speak      11 waiting  
3 staying      6 to get      9 him for help      12 travelling  
4 going      7 working      10 for
- 87.2** 2 thinking      5 blamed      8 considered  
3 imagine      6 hoping; intended/planned      9 insisted; hates  
4 avoid      7 enjoyed/liked      10 demanded
- 87.3** fancy + -ing  
decide + infinitive or decide + (that)  
pretend + infinitive or pretend + (that)  
accuse + (obj) + of
- 87.4** *Possible answers:*

I like reading. I dislike sport. I don't mind doing homework. I'm thinking of going to the mountains this weekend to ski. I can't imagine living without my two dogs. I hope to go to university next year. I intend to buy myself a motorbike when I go to university.

## Unit 88

### 88.1

- 2 He told me it's /it was impossible.
- 3 I asked Chloe to stay with me.
- 4 She suggested that we go to an Italian restaurant. OR She suggested going to ...
- 5 I warned them not to go.
- 6 He helped me to buy my suit.
- 7 She allowed us to go.
- 8 He said the film was terrible. OR He told me ...
- 9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.
- 10 I recommended that they stay there. OR I recommend staying there.
- 11 He reminded me to go to the bank.
- 12 I want him to leave.

### 88.2

- |             |               |              |           |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|-----------|
| 2 noticed   | 5 convinced   | 8 encouraged | 11 expect |
| 3 warn      | 6 recommended | 9 reminded   | 12 hope   |
| 4 persuaded | 7 mentioned   | 10 help      |           |

### 88.3

Possible answers:

- 2 (that) we have something to eat.
- 3 her to ring the police.
- 4 (that) something was wrong / she looked ill / she was smiling, etc.
- 5 me to stay up late / watch TV, etc.
- 6 (that) it wasn't mine.
- 7 them to go.
- 8 (that) she'll be late.
- 9 them not to drink it.
- 10 I would look after it / bring it back tomorrow, etc.

### 88.4

Your own answers

## Unit 89

### 89.1

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
bad, important, small, tired, frightened	dreadful, essential, tiny, exhausted, terrified

### 89.2

- very pleased (really/absolutely) delighted  
very big (really/absolutely) huge/enormous  
food is very nice (really/absolutely) delicious  
last three days have been very nice (really/absolutely) wonderful/marvellous/terrific  
very important (absolutely/really) essential  
very interesting (absolutely/really) fascinating

### 89.3

- |              |   |           |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| 2 terrifying | 4 amazing/terrific/wonderful/marvellous | 6 annoyed |
| 3 shocked    | 5 delighted                             |           |

### 89.4

- 2 disappointed/annoyed 3 embarrassed 4 confused 5 amazed/surprised 6 delighted

## Unit 90

### 90.1

- 2 in 3 at 4 on 5 at 6 in 7 on 8 on 9 at 10 on 11 in 12 at

### 90.2

- 2 among 3 into 4 beside 5 out of 6 towards 7 up 8 underneath

### 90.3

- |                      |                    |                   |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 2 under the fence    | 4 after the bridge | 6 (right) against |
| 3 get out of the car | 5 below/beneath me |                   |

## 90.4 Possible answers:

- 1 No, because it will be noisy at night due to the ambulances.
- 2 No, because of the smell and the noise.
- 3 No, because it's dangerous.
- 4 No. I like one or two things on the wall, but not lots of things because it looks untidy.
- 5 No. I prefer the aisle seat because I can move around easily without disturbing anyone else.
- 6 Well, that sounds nice, but it really depends who the people are.

## Unit 91

### 91.1

- 2 She hardly ever phones me.
- 3 I have never broken my leg.
- 4 I frequently visit them at weekends. OR I visit them frequently at weekends.
- 5 My brother quite often calls me on Sunday.
- 6 I rarely saw him during the summer.
- 7 She is always in the office before eight.

### 91.2

- |                        |                       |              |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 2 rarely/seldom        | 4 completely          | 6 incredibly |
| 3 fairly/pretty/rather | 5 a little / slightly | 7 frequently |

### 91.3

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2 I must speak to her urgently.         | 5 He suddenly ran out of the room.     |
| 3 I asked him politely to move his car. | 6 I spoke to her briefly this morning. |
| 4 I spoke to her secretly.              |  |

### 91.4

- |                        |                              |                               |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 2 extremely/incredibly | 4 very                       | 6 a bit / a little / slightly |
| 3 very                 | 5 quite/fairly/pretty/rather | 7 quite/fairly/pretty/rather  |

### 91.5

#### Possible answers:

- 2 I sometimes buy clothes I don't like. I buy them because they are fashionable. I think that's fairly typical.
- 3 I hardly ever lose things; I'm very careful. I think that's slightly unusual.
- 4 I often forget things – my glasses, people's names, etc. I expect that's fairly typical.
- 5 For some reason, I hardly ever remember my dreams. I think that's quite unusual.
- 6 I often speak to strangers on buses and trains. That's probably quite unusual.
- 7 I sometimes give money to people in the street; it depends how I feel. That's fairly typical, I think.

## Unit 92

### 92.1

for one thing / for a start  
when / as soon as  
besides/anyway  
finally / in the end  
at first / to begin with

### 92.2

- |           |                    |                    |
|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 2 get     | 5 both are correct | 8 while            |
| 3 while   | 6 just as          | 9 both are correct |
| 4 leaving | 7 both are correct | 10 cleaning        |

### 92.3

- 1 besides/anyway/secondly
- 2 first of all; Then / After that; finally
- 3 at first / to begin with; while
- 4 firstly / for a start / for one thing; secondly/besides/anyway
- 5 at first / to begin with; while; Eventually / In the end

### 92.4

#### Possible answers:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2 you finish / you've finished               | 6 he/she looked up the other half             |
| 3 I get there/home                           | 7 we got there                                |
| 4 leaving                                    | 8 it's not important / we can phone him later |
| 5 he opened the door / he got out of the car |   |

## Unit 93

93.1	words that add more information <i>in addition, as well, also, what's more</i>	words that introduce surprising information although, in spite of, however, despite	
93.2	2 however 3 both are correct 4 even though	5 However 6 both are correct 7 both are correct	8 despite
93.3		She always worked hard in class, whereas most of her classmates were lazy. She has the ability to do the job. What's more, she is very experienced. She didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave her. She worked there for ten years. However, she was never happy in the job.	
93.4	2 In spite of / Despite; still 3 However 4 although / even though 5 In addition to / As well as / Besides	6 as well / too 7 though 8 yet; still	
93.5	Possible answers: 2 I get up much later 3 the bad weather 4 it's cheaper (with a season ticket)	5 I think I'll pass 6 she spoke very quickly 7 goes jogging / plays tennis / works, etc.	

## Unit 94

94.1	2 Teresa got the job because of her good exam results. 3 We couldn't eat outside because of the terrible weather. 4 She didn't go to school because of her cold. 5 The referee stopped the game because of the bad light. 6 I was late because of the terrible traffic. 7 He can't vote because of his age.		
94.2	2 in case 3 as long as 4 in order to / so that I would	5 As a result / Therefore 6 Unless 7 as long as	8 otherwise 9 whether/if 10 reason
94.3	2 As/Since    3 so that    4 as a result / therefore    5 unless    6 whether		
94.4	Possible answers: I want to improve my English because <i>I need good English for my job</i> . I don't know whether my English <i>is good enough</i> . I often need to write words down, otherwise I <i>forget them</i> . I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore <i>my speaking is not very good</i> . Speaking English may be important in order to <i>get a better job in the future</i> .		

## Unit 95

95.1	formal	informal		
	depart, regarding, purchase, proceed to, commence	cheers, mate, terrific, bloke, kids		
95.2	depart	leave	mate	<b>friend</b>
	cheers	<b>thanks</b>	commence	<b>start</b>
	regarding	<b>about</b>	terrific	<b>fantastic</b> (marvellous, wonderful, etc.)
	purchase	<b>buy</b>	bloke	<b>man</b>
	proceed to	<b>go to</b>	kids	<b>children</b>

- 95.3** 2 thing                            5 I'm dying for                    8 quite a bit  
3 a load of rubbish                    6 make it                            9 that stuff  
4 up to                                7 mate                              10 40 or so

**95.4** 2 We regret to inform you    3 grant    4 require further assistance

**95.5** 1 a drag *informal* = boring; it can also mean unpleasant, e.g. Housework is a drag.  
2 permit *formal* = allow  
3 scary *informal* = frightening  
4 quid *informal* = pounds (£)

Unit 96

- 96.1** 2 a registration form or an enrolment form  
3 an entry form  
4 a visa application form

**96.2** 2 When were you born? 4 Are you single or married?  
3 Where do you come from? 5 When are you leaving?

**96.3** 2 g 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 e

**96.4** 2 correct 3 incorrect 4 incorrect 5 correct 6 correct 7 incorrect

**96.5** 2 tip 3 on my own 4 sign it 5 require 6 team

**96.6** *Your own answers*

Unit 97

- 97.1** 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

**97.2** 2 advantages of studying 4 effect on children 6 tends to go  
3 give both sides 5 On the other hand, too

**97.3** 2 causes; However 3 both are correct 4 hand 5 both are correct

**97.4** 2 In addition 3 However 4 Consequently 5 argument 6 effect

**97.5** 2 People tend to be conservative. OR In general / On the whole people are conservative.  
3 There is an argument that cars should not be allowed in town centres. OR Some people believe that cars should not be allowed in town centres.  
4 In the past children played on their bikes, but nowadays they spend most of their time in front of a computer.  
5 Many people work longer and longer hours, and consequently / as a result they don't have time for hobbies.

Unit 98

- 98.1** *Dear Sir or Madam*  
**I am writing in** response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be **grateful** if you could send me further **details**.  
I look forward to **hearing** from you.  
**Yours faithfully**

- 98.2** 2 details                          4 faithfully                          6 regards  
3 to hearing from you                5 sincerely                          7 signature

**98.3** 2 I regret to inform you ...  
3 I am pleased to inform you ...  
4 Are you available on Wednesday?  
5 I would like to enquire about the dates of the course.  
6 Please accept our apologies for the delay.  
7 I would be grateful if you could send me the details.  
8 Could you confirm that in writing?  
9 I enclose a copy of my CV.

<b>98.4</b>	2 writing 3 response reply	4 regarding/about 5 regret	6 delays 7 apologise	8 sincerely
-------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------

## Unit 99

**99.1** in a week's time; once again; let you know; best wishes; give my regards to

**99.2** 2 Dear Mark  
3 Send/Give my regards/love to Patricia

4 Lots of love, Evelyn  
5 All the best, Sam

**99.3** 2 Do you fancy going?  
3 I'll be/get in touch soon.  
4 It looks new, but in fact it isn't.  
5 I'll let you know as soon as possible.

6 I'm going in three weeks' time.  
7 Jamie is a laugh.  
8 Let's get together for lunch.  
9 It's ages since I wrote.

**99.4** 2 ages  
3 fact  
4 since  
5 actually

6 hoping  
7 in  
8 together  
9 join

10 Anyway  
11 let  
12 give

## Unit 100

**100.1** 2 British Broadcasting Corporation  
3 Member of Parliament

4 correct

6 correct

7 curriculum vitae

**100.2** 2 e.g.    3 etc.    4 St    5 i.e.    6 St    7 Dr

**100.3** Luke

Olly had a **maths exam** this afternoon and then had to take his **bike** to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch **TV/telly** while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the **fridge**. If there's a problem, **e.g.** if **Dr** Brown rings about the **flu** vaccination, my **phone** number is next to the **photos** on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.

Pam (Olly's mum)

**100.4** 2 bike  
3 e.g. / for example  
4 CV

5 vet  
6 etc. / and so on  
7 case

8 ad/advert  
9 PIN  
10 stand

11 lab  
12 rep

**100.5** PTO = Please turn over (you see it at the bottom of a page)

RSVP = Répondez s'il vous plaît, which is French for 'please reply' (you see it on letters of invitation, which means they want a reply to the invitation)

asap = as soon as possible (in emails and text messages)

IMO = in my opinion (also in emails and text messages)

DOB = date of birth (on forms)

PS = postscript. It is used at the end of a letter (after you have signed your name) to add extra information, or something you have forgotten to say in the letter.

# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples
/i/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ʊ/	pin dinner
/ə/	foot could pull
/ɔ:/	casual
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ʌ/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɒ/	sort thought walk
/ə/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ə/	part heart laugh
/e/	name late aim
/a/	my idea time
/ə/	boy noise
/e/	pair where bear
/ə/	hear cheers
/ə/	go home show
/a/	out cow
/ə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/θ/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/h/	thick path
/θ/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/θ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

‘ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

‘ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers not page numbers.  
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- a bit [slightly] *ə bit* 91  
 a great deal *ə greit di:l* 39  
 a laugh *ə la:f* 99  
 a little (bit) *ə 'lɪ:təl* 91  
 a load of rubbish *ə ləud ɒv 'rʌbɪʃ* 60  
 a long time ago *ə lɒŋ taim ə'gəʊ* 59  
 a paper *ə 'peɪpə* 100  
 a piece of sth *ə pi:s ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ* 86  
 a return *ə ri:t'rn* 28  
 a week/month/year (etc.) [every] *ə wi:k mʌnθ jɪə* 36  
 abbreviation *ə,bri:vɪ'eɪʃən* 53  
 ability *ə'bɪləti* 71  
 able *'eɪbəl* 71  
 above *ə'bʌv* 90  
 above all *ə'bʌv ɔ:l* 57  
 abroad *ə'brɔ:d* 37  
 absent *ə'bsənt* 38  
 absolutely *ə'bsə'lju:tli* 89  
 accent *ə'ksənt* 33  
 accept *ək'sept* 1  
 access (to sth) *'əkses* 48, 55  
 accident *'əksɪdənt* 29  
 accommodation *ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən* 46  
 according to *ə'kɔ:dɪŋ tu:* 52, 67  
 accountant *ə'kaʊntənt* 35  
 accurate(ly) *'əkjərət* 33  
 ache n, v *eɪk* 20  
 achieve *ə'tʃi:v* 39  
 achievement *ə'tʃi:vment* 39  
 act [do sth] *ə kt* 58  
 act [perform] *ə kt* 43  
 acting *'ə ktɪŋ* 43  
 active *'ə ktɪv* 1  
 actor *'ə ktə* 43, 71  
 actually *'ə ktʃuəli* 99  
 ad/advert *ə d ə:d'vɜ:t* 100  
 add *ə d* 25  
 add sth up *ə d 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp* 61  
 add to basket/bag *ə d tu: 'ba:skɪt/ bʌg* 55  
 addition *ə'dɪʃən* 61  
 adjective *'ədʒɪktɪv* 4  
 admin *'ə dmin* 36  
 admission *əd'miʃən* 30  
 adult *'ə dʌlt* 14  
 advantage *əd've:nɪtɪdʒ* 26  
 adventure holiday *əd'ventʃə 'hɒlədei* 46  
 adverb *'ə dvɜ:b* 4  
 advert *'ə dvɜ:t* 44, 52, 100  
 advertisement *əd've:tɪsmənt* 52  
 advice *əd'vers* 1, 86  
 advise *əd'veɪz* 36, 88  
 afford *əf'fɔ:d* 19  
 afraid (of) *ə'freɪd* 77  
 Africa *'ə frɪkə* 5  
 after [follow sb/sth] *'a:ftə* 90  
 after [time/event] *'a:ftə* 92  
 after that *'a:ftə ðət* 92  
 afterwards *'a:ftəwədz* 92  
 against [compete] *ə'genst* 42  
 against [touching] *ə'genst* 90  
 ages *'eɪdʒɪz* 99  
 ages ago *'eɪdʒɪz ə'gəʊ* 60  
 agree [have the same opinion] *ə'grɪ:* 67, 77  
 agree [say yes] *ə'grɪ:* 87  
 aim *eɪm* 39  
 air conditioning *əə*  
*kən'dɪsənɪŋ* 17  
 air force *əə fɔ:s* 35  
 aircraft *'eəkra:fɪt* 47, 73  
 airline *'eəlайн* 73  
 airport *'eəpɔ:rt* 73  
 alarm *ə'lə:m* 74  
 album *'əlbəm* 44  
 alive *ə'laɪv* 14  
 all over [everywhere] *ɔ:l 'əvə* 45  
 all the best *ɔ:l ðə best* 99  
 allow *ə'lau* 14  
 almost *'ɔ:lməust* 14  
 alone *ə'ləun* 15  
 aloud *ə'laud* 1  
 alphabet *'əlfəbət* 33  
 also *'ɔ:lsəʊ* 93  
 although *ɔ:l'ðəʊ* 93  
 altogether *ɔ:ltə'geðə* 13  
 amazed *ə'meɪzd* 89  
 amazing [very good] *ə'meɪziŋ* 89  
 amazing [very surprising] *ə'meɪziŋ* 89  
 ambition *'əm'bɪʃən* 39  
 American *ə'merɪkən* 5  
 among *ə'mʌŋ* 90  
 amount *ə'maʊnt* 3, 19  
 and so on *ənd səʊ ɒn* 100  
 anger *'əngə* 12  
 angrily *'əngrili* 91  
 ankle *'əŋkəl* 9  
 anniversary *'ənɪ'vɜ:səri* 15  
 announcement *ə'naʊntsment* 47  
 annoyed *ə'nɔɪd* 89  
 annoying *ə'nɔɪŋ* 89  
 annual *'ənjʊəl* 45, 72  
 answerphone *'a:nsefəʊn* 53  
 ant *ə nt* 8  
 antique n *ən'tɪ:k* 63  
 anti-virus software *'ənti-'vai'res 'softweə* 55, 54  
 anxiety *'ən'zaiəti* 12  
 anxious *'ən'kjəs* 11, 12  
 anyway [more importantly] *'eniwei* 92  
 anyway [returning to an earlier subject] *'eniwei* 99  
 apart from *ə'pa:t frəm* 75  
 apartment *ə'pa:tment* 17  
 apologise for sth *ə'pələdʒaɪz fɔ:*  
*'sʌmθɪŋ* 65, 98  
 apology *ə'pələdʒi* 65  
 appear [become visible] *ə'pɪə* 70  
 appear [seem] *ə'piə* 85  
 appearance *ə'piərəns* 10  
 application (computer) *,ə plɪ'keɪʃən* 54  
 application (job) *,ə plɪ'keɪʃən* 37, 98  
 apply for sth *ə'plai fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ* 37  
 appointment *ə'poɪntment* 38  
 approach *ə'prəʊtʃ* 29  
 approximately *ə'prəksimətlɪ* 10, 14  
 Arabic *'ərəbɪk* 5  
 architect *'a:kitekt* 34, 35  
 architecture *'a:kitektʃə* 34  
 Argentina *a:dʒən'ti:nə* 5  
 Argentinian *a:dʒən'ti:nɪən* 5  
 argue *'a:gju:* 1  
 argument [angry discussion] *'a:gjəmənt* 1  
 argument [reason to think] *'a:gjəmənt* 97  
 armchair *'a:mtʃeə* 18  
 army *'a:mi* 35, 59  
 arrange *ə'reɪndʒ* 38  
 arrangement *ə'reɪndʒment* 38  
 arrest *ə'rest* 56  
 arrival *ə'raɪvəl* 96  
 article *'a:tɪkl* 52  
 artist *'a:tidst* 71  
 arts *a:ts* 34  
 as [because] *ə z* 94  
 as [when] *ə z* 92  
 as a result *ə z ə ri:'zʌlt* 94, 97  
 as if/though *ə z ɪf/ðəʊ* 85  
 as long as *ə z lɒŋ ə z* 94  
 as soon as *ə z sun ə z* 92  
 as well (as) *ə z wel* 93  
 Asia *'eɪzə* 5  
 ask sb for sth *a:sk 'sʌmbədi fɔ:*  
*'sʌmθɪŋ* 87  
 ask sb the way *a:sk 'sʌmbədi ðə weɪ* 29  
 assistance *ə'sistəns* 95  
 at [place] *ə t* 90  
 at [@] *ə t* 55  
 at all *ə t ɔ:l* 67  
 at first *ə t 'fɜ:st* 14, 92  
 at home *ə t həʊm* 19  
 at least *ə t li:st* 1, 62

at night <i>ət naɪt</i> 27	be dying for sth <i>bi: 'daiŋ fɔ:</i> <i>'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 95	bone <i>bəʊn</i> 63
at once <i>ət wʌns</i> 75	be held up <i>bi: held ʌp</i> 65	book <i>v bʊk</i> 48
at risk of <i>ət 'rɪsk əv</i> 51	be in touch <i>bi: in tətʃ</i> 99	book online <i>bʊk ɒn'laɪn</i> 46
at the end <i>ət ði end</i> 78	be into sth [like sth] <i>bi: 'intə</i> <i>'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 68	boots <i>bʊts</i> 21
at the moment <i>ət ðə 'məʊmənt</i> 78	beach <i>bɪtʃ</i> 51	bored <i>bɔ:d</i> 89
at the same time <i>ət ðə seɪm</i> <i>taɪm</i> 60	beach holiday <i>bi:tʃ 'hɒlədeɪ</i> 46	boring <i>'bɔ:rɪŋ</i> 89
athlete <i>'θli:t</i> 41	beans <i>bɪ:nz</i> 24	borrow <i>'bɒrəʊ</i> 31
athletic <i>'θ'letɪk</i> 10	bear <i>beə</i> 8	both sides of an argument <i>bəuθ</i> <i>sайдз ɒv ən 'a:gjumənt</i> 97
athletics <i>'θ'letɪks</i> 41	beat <i>bi:t</i> 42	bother <i>'bɒðə</i> 16
atmosphere <i>'ætməsfɪə</i> 22, 32	beauty <i>'bjutɪ</i> 10	bottle <i>'bɒtəl</i> 64
attachment <i>ə'tətʃmənt</i> 55	because <i>bi:kɒz</i> 94	bottom <i>'bɒtəm</i> 9
attack <i>n ə'tæk</i> 59	because of <i>bi:kɒz ɒv</i> 94	bowl <i>bəʊl</i> 64
attack <i>v ə'tæk</i> 56	bee <i>bi:</i> 8	box <i>bɒks</i> 64
attempt <i>n, v ə'tempt</i> 87	beef <i>bi:f</i> 24	boxing <i>'bɒksɪŋ</i> 41
attend <i>ə'tend</i> 32, 38	before [place] <i>bi:fɔ:</i> 90	bracelet <i>'breɪslət</i> 21
attendance <i>ə'tendəns</i> 38	before [time] <i>bi:fɔ:</i> 92	brake <i>n, v breɪk</i> 29, 72
attitude <i>'ætɪtju:d</i> 68	behave <i>bi:hɛv</i> 3	branch (of a company) <i>bra:ntʃ</i> 39
attract attention <i>ə'trækt</i> <i>ə'tenʃən</i> 39	behaviour <i>br'heɪvɪə</i> 86	branch (of a tree) <i>bra:ntʃ</i> 27
attraction <i>ə'trækʃən</i> 50	belief <i>bi'lɪf</i> 57	Brazil <i>bræ'zil</i> 5
attractive <i>ə'trækktɪv</i> 10	believe [think] <i>bi'liv</i> 97	Brazilian <i>bræ'ziljən</i> 5
aubergine <i>'əubəzɪn</i> 24	believe in <i>bi'liv ɪn</i> 57	break [rest] <i>n breɪk</i> 32
audience <i>'ɔ:dʒəns</i> 44	bell <i>bel</i> 63	break a record <i>breɪk ə'rekɔ:d</i> 42
Australia <i>ə'streɪliə</i> 5	belong to <i>bi'lɔŋ tu:</i> 77	break down <i>breɪk daʊn</i> 38, 80
Australian <i>ə'streɪliən</i> 5	below <i>bi'ləʊ</i> 90	break in(to sth) <i>breɪk ɪn</i> 56, 80
author <i>'ɔ:θə</i> 43	bend <i>n, v bend</i> 29	break the rules <i>breɪk ðə ru:lz</i> 32
available <i>ə'veɪləbəl</i> 47, 98	beneath <i>bi'ni:θ</i> 90	break up [end a relationship] <i>breɪk</i> <i>ʌp</i> 15
average [typical] <i>'ævərɪdʒ</i> 10	beside [next to] <i>bi'said</i> 90	break up [end of term] <i>breɪk ʌp</i> 32
avoid <i>ə'veɪd</i> 87	besides [giving another reason] <i>bi'saidz</i> 92	breast <i>brest</i> 9
aware of <i>ə'weər ɒv</i> 77	besides [in addition] <i>bi'saidz</i> 93	breathe (in/out) <i>bri:ð</i> 9
away [distance] <i>ə'wei</i> 26, 28, 62	best friend <i>best frend</i> 13	breeze <i>bri:z</i> 51
awful <i>'ɔ:fəl</i> 2, 89	best wishes <i>best 'wɪʃɪz</i> 99	brick <i>brik</i> 35
B&B <i>bi: ənd bi:</i> 46	beyond <i>bi'jond</i> 90	bride <i>braid</i> 15
babysitter <i>'berbɪ,sɪtə</i> 73	bicycle <i>'baɪsɪkəl</i> 28	(bride) groom <i>grum</i> 15
back up sth <i>bæk ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 54	bike <i>baɪk</i> 28, 100	bridge <i>brɪdʒ</i> 29
backache <i>'bækkeɪk</i> 20	bilingual <i>baɪ'լɪŋgwɪl</i> 3	briefly <i>'bri:fli</i> 91
backpack <i>'bæk kpæk</i> 21	billion <i>'biljən</i> 61	bright <i>braɪt</i> 21
backup <i>'bæk kʌp</i> 54	bin <i>bm</i> 38, 86	bring sb luck <i>brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi</i> <i>lək</i> 45
bag <i>bæg</i> 64	biography <i>baɪ'ɒgrəfi</i> 43	bring sb up <i>brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp</i> 14
bagel <i>'beɪgl</i> 49	birth <i>bɜ:θ</i> 14	British <i>'brɪtɪʃ</i> 5
baggage reclaim <i>'bæg ɡɪdʒ</i> <i>rɪ'kleɪm</i> 47	birthday card <i>'bɜ:θdeɪ kɑ:d</i> 73	broad <i>brɔ:d</i> 10
baguette <i>bæg'et</i> 49	(a) bit of sth <i>bit ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 86	broadcast <i>'brɔ:dkɑ:st</i> 52
bakery <i>'beɪkəri</i> 39	bitter <i>'bɪtə</i> 24	broccoli <i>'brɒkəli</i> 24
balcony <i>'bælkəni</i> 17	black <i>blæk</i> 10	broken down <i>'brəukən daʊn</i> 38
bald <i>bɔ:ld</i> 84	black coffee <i>blæk 'kɔfi</i> 49	brown <i>braʊn</i> 10
ballet (dancer) <i>'bælət</i> 44	blame sb for sth <i>bleɪm sʌmbɒdy</i> <i>fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 87	browse <i>brauz</i> 55
ballot <i>'bælət</i> 57	blanket <i>'blæŋkit</i> 18	browser <i>'brauzə</i> 55
bandage <i>'bændɪdʒ</i> 20	bleed <i>blɪd</i> 20	brush your teeth <i>brʌʃ jɔ:t tɪ:θ</i> 16
bank (of a river) <i>bæŋk</i> 27	bless you <i>bles ju:</i> 69	bucket <i>'bʌkɪt</i> 63
bank account <i>bæŋk ə'kaʊnt</i> 19	blind <i>blaind</i> 84	build <i>bɪld</i> 35
bank loan <i>bæŋk ləʊn</i> 19	blinds <i>blaɪndz</i> 18	builder <i>'bɪldə</i> 35
bar (of chocolate) <i>ba:</i> 64	block of flats <i>blɒk ɒv flæts</i> 17	bull <i>bʊl</i> 8
barbecue <i>n, v 'ba:bɪkju:</i> 25	blog <i>blɒg</i> 55	bunch <i>bʌntʃ</i> 24, 64
basic <i>'beɪsɪk</i> 33	blogger <i>'blɒgə</i> 55	burglar <i>'bɜ:glə</i> 56
basket <i>'ba:skɪt</i> 23	bloke <i>bləʊk</i> 95	burglary <i>'bɜ:gləri</i> 56
bass guitar <i>beɪs gɪ'ta:</i> 44	blond(e) <i>blənd</i> 10	burn <i>v bɜ:n</i> 19
bass guitarist <i>beɪs gɪ'ta:rist</i> 44	blow (ing) <i>v bleu</i> 7	burst into tears <i>bɜ:st 'ɪntə tɪəz</i> 75
bath <i>ba:θ</i> 16	blow your nose <i>bleu ɟɔ: nəʊz</i> 9	bus <i>bʌs</i> 28
bathroom <i>'ba:θru:m</i> 18	board <i>n, v bɔ:d</i> 47	bus driver <i>bʌs 'draɪvə</i> 73
battle <i>'bætl</i> 59	board [blackboard] <i>n bɔ:d</i> 100	bus station <i>bʌs 'steɪʃən</i> 73
BBC <i>'bi:bɪ:sɪ</i> 100	boarding card <i>'bɔ:dɪŋ kɑ:d</i> 47	
be (just) about to <i>bi: ə'baut tu:</i> 75	boil <i>bɔɪl</i> 25	
be delayed <i>bi: dɪ'leɪd</i> 65	boiling <i>'bɔɪlin</i> 7	
	bomb <i>bɒm</i> 59	

- bus stop **bʌs stɒp** 28, 73  
 business studies **'bɪznɪs**  
     'stʌdɪz 34  
 businessman/woman  
     'bɪznɪsmən/'wʊmən
- butterfly **'bʌtəflaɪ** 8  
 button **'bʌtn** 21  
 by [how much] **bai** 40  
 by [near] **bai** 90  
 by [next to] **bai** 90  
 by [not later than] **bai** 60  
 by accident **bai 'əksɪdənt** 78  
 by chance **bai tʃa:ns** 78  
 by hand **bai hænd** 78  
 by mistake **bai mis'teɪk** 78  
 by the way **bai ðə weɪ** 75  
 cabbage **'kæbɪdʒ** 24  
 cabin crew **'kæbɪn kru:** 47  
 cage **keɪdʒ** 8  
 calculate **'kælkjuleɪt** 61  
 calculation **,kælkjə'leɪʃən** 61  
 calculator **'kælkjuleɪtə** 38, 61  
 calendar **'kælendə** 38  
 calf **kæf** 24  
 call [describe sb] **kɔ:l** 32  
 call [phone] **kɔ:l** 53  
 call for sb **kɔ:l fɔ:r səmbodi** 80  
 calm (person) **kɔ:m** 11  
 calm (sea) **kɔ:m** 51  
 camel **'kæməl** 8  
 camping **'kæmpɪŋ** 41  
 campsite **'kæmpsait** 73  
 can (of cola) **kæn** 63  
 can't afford (it) **19**  
 can't help it **kɑ:nt help it** 76  
 can't stand **kɑ:nt stænd** 67  
 canal **kə'næl** 6  
 cancel **'kænsəl** 64  
 cancer **'kænsə** 20  
 candidate **'kændɪdæt** 33  
 Cantonese **,kæntə'ni:z** 5  
 cap **kæp** 21  
 capital [city] **'kæpitəl** 5  
 capital letter **'kæpitəl 'letə** 4  
 cappuccino **,kæpu'tʃi:nəʊ** 49  
 captain **'kæptin** 42  
 car park **ka: pa:k** 25  
 cardinal number **'kɑ:dɪnəl**  
     'nʌmbə 61  
 care **keə** 57  
 career aim **kə'rɪər eɪm** 96  
 careful **'keəfəl** 72  
 careless **'keələs** 72  
 Caribbean **,kæri'biən** 5  
 caring **'keəriŋ** 12  
 carpenter **'ka:pɪntə** 35  
 carpet **'ka:pɪt** 18  
 carrot **'kærət** 24  
 carry guns **'kærɪ gʌnz** 59  
 carry on (with sth) **'kærɪ ðn** 79  
 carton **'ka:tən** 64  
 case **keɪs** 100  
 cash **kæʃ** 19  
 cashpoint **'kæʃpɔɪnt** 19, 73  
 castle **'kæslə** 50  
 casual **'kæzjuəl** 21  
 catch (a bus/train) **kætʃ** 28  
 catch (a criminal) **kætʃ** 56  
 cathedral **kæθ'edrəl** 50  
 cause **kɔ:z** 97  
 cave **keɪv** 6  
 CD player **sɪ:dɪ 'pleɪə** 31  
 celebrate **'selɪbreɪt** 15, 47  
 celebration **,selɪ'bretʃən** 15  
 celebrity **si'lɛbrəti** 52  
 cellist **'tʃelɪst** 44  
 cello **'tʃeləʊ** 44  
 central heating **'sentrəl 'hi:tɪŋ**  
     17  
 century **'sentʃəri** 42, 60  
 cereal **'sɪəriəl** 16  
 ceremony **'serɪməni** 15  
 certificate **sə'trifɪkət** 3, 34  
 champion **'tʃæmpiən** 42  
 championship **'tʃæmpiənʃɪp** 42  
 chance [opportunity] **tʃa:ns** 86  
 chance [possibility that sth will  
     happen] **tʃa:ns** 86  
 change into sth **tʃeindʒ 'ɪntə**  
     'səmθɪŋ 21  
 change your mind **tʃeindʒ jɔ:**  
     'mænd 76  
 changing room **'tʃeindʒɪŋ ru:m**  
     22  
 channel [TV] **'tʃænləl** 52  
 character [good  
     qualities] **'kærɪktə** 17  
 character [personality] **'kærɪktə**  
     11  
 charge v **tʃa:dʒ** 19, 40  
 charming **'tʃa:min** 17  
 chat n, v **tʃæt** 16, 72  
 chat show **tʃæt ʃəʊ** 52  
 check [examine] **tʃek** 20, 47  
 check out **tʃek aut** 48  
 checkout [online  
     shopping] **'tʃekaut** 55  
 checkout [supermarket]  
     'tʃekaut 23  
 check your email **tʃek jɔ:r**  
     'i:meil 55  
 check-in (desk) **'tʃekɪn** 47  
 cheek **tʃi:k** 9, 68  
 cheerful **'tʃi:rfəl** 12  
 cheers [a toast] **tʃi:əz** 69  
 cheers [goodbye] **tʃi:əz** 69  
 cheers [thanks] **tʃi:əz** 65, 95  
 chef **ʃef** 25  
 chest **tʃest** 9  
 chest of drawers **tʃest ðv**  
     'dro:z 73  
 childhood **'tʃa:ldhod** 14  
 chilly **'tʃili** 7  
 chin **tʃin** 9  
 China **'tʃainə** 5  
 Chinese **tʃaɪ'ni:z** 5  
 choice **tʃo:s** 1, 18  
 chop **tʃɒp** 25  
 circle **'sɜ:kəl** 63  
 city break **sɪti breɪk** 46  
 classical music **'klæsɪkəl**  
     'mju:zɪk 44  
 clean **kli:n** 1, 25  
 clean your teeth **kli:n jɔ: ti:θ** 16  
 cleaner **'kli:nə** 16  
 clear (sky) **kli:ə** 7  
 clever **'klevə** 11  
 click on (a link) **klik ðn** 55  
 client **'klaɪənt** 39  
 cliff **klif** 51  
 climate **'klaɪmət** 6  
 climate change **'klaɪmət tʃeindʒ** 58  
 close family **klaʊs 'fæməli** 13  
 clothes **klaʊðz** 22  
 cloud **klaud** 7  
 cloudy **'klaudi** 7  
 coach **kəʊtʃ** 28  
 coast **kəʊst** 51  
 coconut **'kəukənət** 24  
 coin **kɔ:n** 19  
 cold **kəuld** 7  
 collar **'kɒlə** 21  
 colleague **'kɒli:g** 38  
 colourful **'kʌləfəl** 71  
 comb your hair **kəʊm jɔ: heə** 9  
 come from **kʌm frəm** 5  
 come out [be available] **kʌm**  
     aut 44, 52  
 come out [sun] **kʌm aut** 7  
 come round [visit] **kʌm raund** 16  
 comedy **'kɒmədi** 43  
 comfortable **'kʌmftəbəl** 72  
 comma **'kɒmə** 4  
 commence **kə'mens** 95  
 commit a crime **kə'mit ə kraɪm**  
     56  
 communicate **kə'mjunɪkeɪt** 1  
 compare **kəm'peə** 97  
 compared with/to **kəm'peəd wið/**  
     tu: 97  
 comparison **kəm'pərɪsən** 97  
 competition **,kəmپri'tiʃən** 42  
 complain **kəm'plein** 28, 36  
 complaint **kəm'pleint** 28, 36  
 completely **kəm'pli:tli** 91  
 complicated **'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd**  
     43, 96  
 composer **kəm'pəuzə** 44  
 concentrate **'kɒnsəntreɪt** 77  
 conditions **kən'dɪʃənz** 36  
 conductor **kən'da:kə** 44  
 confident **'kɒnfɪdənt** 11  
 confirm **kən'fɜ:m** 98  
 confused **kən'fju:zd** 12, 89  
 confusing **kən'fju:zɪŋ** 89  
 confusion **kən'fju:zən** 12  
 congratulations **kən,gratʃə'tʃənəz** 69  
 conjunction **kən'dʒʌŋkʃən** 4  
 connect **kə'nekt** 55  
 connected to/with **kə'nektɪd tu:/**  
     wið 3  
 consequently **'kɒnsɪkwəntli** 97  
 consider **kən'sɪdə** 87  
 consist of **kən'sist ðv** 6, 45  
 consonant **'kɒnsənənt** 33  
 constituency **kən'stɪtjuənsi** 57  
 consultant **kən'saltənt** 36  
 contacts **'kɒntækts** 39

container **kən'teinə** 64  
 contents **'kɒntens** 52, 64  
 continent **'kɒntɪnənt** 5  
 contrast n **'kontrəst** 6  
 contrast v **'kontra:st** 97  
 convenient **kən'veniənt** 23, 28  
 convince **kən'veins** 88  
 cook n **kʊk** 25  
 cooker **'kʊkə** 18, 25  
 cool **kʊl** 7  
 copy **'kɒpi** 54  
 correct adj **kə'rekt** 70  
 correct v **kə'rekt** 31  
 cottage **'kɒtɪdʒ** 17  
 cotton **'kɒtən** 63  
 cough **kɒf** 20  
 Could I speak to ...? **kʊd aɪ spi:k tu:** 53  
 (I) could not believe my eyes  
**kʊd nɒt bɪ'lɪv mər aɪz** 76  
 Could you (possibly) ...?  
**kʊd ju:** 66  
 countable (noun) **'kaʊntəbəl** 4  
 country of origin **'kʌntri ov 'brɪdgɪn** 96  
 countryside **'kʌntrɪsaɪd** 27  
 couple [several] **'kʌpəl** 15, 62, 64  
 courgette **kɔ:'ʒet** 24  
 course [sport] **kɔ:s** 41  
 course (of a meal) **kɔ:s** 48  
 court (of law) **kɔ:t** 56  
 court [sport] **kɔ:t** 41  
 cousin **'kʌzən** 13  
 cover v **'kʌvə** 6  
 crab **kræb** 24  
 crash [computer] **kræʃ** 54  
 crash into sth **kræʃ 'intə 'sʌmθɪŋ** 29  
 create **kri'ueit** 54, 58  
 creative **kri'eitiv** 11, 12  
 creature **'kri:tʃə** 8  
 credit card **'kredit ka:d** 73  
 crime **kraim** 56  
 crime rate **kraim reit** 26  
 criminal **'kriminəl** 56  
 crisps **krisps** 49  
 croissant **'krwɑ:s.ə** 49  
 crop **krop** 27  
 crossroads **'krɒs'rəudz** 73  
 crowded **'kraʊdɪd** 26  
 cruise **kru:z** 46  
 cry **kraɪ** 9  
 cucumber **'kjʊ:kʌmbə** 24  
 cultural **'kʌltʃərəl** 26, 72  
 culture **'kʌltʃə** 26  
 cup [sport] **kʌp** 3  
 cupboard **'kʌpəd** 18  
 cupcake **'kʌpkɛik** 49  
 cure n, v **kju:e** 72  
 curiosity **kjuəri'ɒsəti** 12  
 curious **'kjuəriəs** 12  
 curly **'kɜ:li** 10  
 currency **'kʌrənsi** 19  
 current **'kʌrənt** 13  
 currently **'kʌrəntli** 39  
 curtains **'kɜ:tənz** 18  
 cushion **'ku:ʃən** 18

custom **'kʌstəm** 45  
 customary **'kʌstəməri** 45  
 customs **'kʌstəmz** 47  
 cut [computer] v **kʌt** 54  
 cut [injure] v **kʌt** 20  
 cut [reduce] v **kʌt** 57  
 CV **sir'vi:** 37, 96, 100  
 cycle **'saɪkl** 28  
 cyclist **'saɪklɪst** 28  
 daily **'deili** 1, 39, 52  
 damage n, v **'dæmɪdʒ** 29  
 dangerous **'deindʒərəs** 25  
 dancer **'da:ntsə** 71  
 dark **dɑ:k** 17  
 dark (hair) **dɑ:k** 10  
 date [day] **deit** 2  
 date [romantic meeting] **deit** 15  
 date of arrival/departure  
**deit ov ə'raɪvəl/dr'pa:tʃə** 96  
 date of birth **deit ov b3:θ** 96  
 day after day **dei 'a:f:tə dei** 75  
 day-to-day **,deitə'dei** 36  
 dead **ded** 1, 14, 59  
 deaf **def** 84  
 deal with **di:l wið** 36  
 Dear Sir/Madam **diə**  
**s3:/'mæ dəm** 98  
 death **deθ** 59  
 decade **'dekeɪd** 60  
 decaf **di:kæf** 49  
 decimal **'desɪməl** 61  
 decrease n **'di:kri:s** 40  
 decrease v **di:kri:s** 40  
 defeat n, v **dr'fi:t** 42  
 defend **dr'fend** 59  
 definite article **'definət 'a:tɪkəl**  
 4  
 definition **,defɪ'nɪʃən** 3  
 degree [amount] **dr'grɪ:** 91  
 degree [university] **dr'grɪ:** 34  
 degree(s) [temperature] **dr'grɪ:**  
 6, 7  
 delay **dr'leɪ** 47, 65, 98  
 delete **dr'list** 55  
 delicious **dr'liʃəs** 25, 89  
 delighted **dr'laɪtid** 89  
 deliver **dr'livə** 39  
 demand n **dr'ma:nd** 39  
 demand v **dr'ma:nd** 87  
 dentist **'dentɪst** 35  
 depart **dr'pa:t** 95  
 departure **dr'pa:tʃə** 47  
 departures board **dr'pa:tʃəz bɔ:d** 47  
 depend (on sth) [not sure about  
 sth] **dr'pend** 74, 77  
 depend on sb [need sb to support  
 you] **dr'pend on 'sʌmbodi** 77  
 deposit **dr'pozɪt** 19  
 depressed **dr'prest** 12, 89  
 depressing **dr'presɪŋ** 89  
 depth **depθ** 60  
 design **dr'zain** 35  
 designer label **dr'zainə**  
**'leɪbl** 22  
 despite **dr'spaɪt** 93  
 dessert **dr'zɜ:t** 48

destination **,destɪ'neɪʃən** 46, 47  
 destroy **drɪs'troi** 58, 59  
 details **'di:teɪlz** 98  
 detective **drɪ'tektɪv** 56  
 develop **drɪ'veləp** 71  
 development **drɪ'veləpmənt** 71  
 dial **'daɪəl** 53  
 dialling code **'darelinj kəud** 53  
 diary **'daɪəri** 38  
 die **dai** 59  
 different **'dɪfərənt** 1  
 different from **'dɪfərənt from** 77  
 direct (a film) **drɪ'rekt** 43  
 direct sb **drɪ'rekt 'sʌmbodi** 29  
 directing **drɪ'rektɪŋ** 43  
 director (of a company) **drɪ'rektə**  
 70  
 director (of a film) **drɪ'rektə** 43  
 dirty **'dɜ:ti** 1, 26  
 disadvantage **,dɪsəd'vəntɪdʒ**  
 26  
 disagree **,dɪsə'grɪ:** 67, 70  
 disappear **,dɪsə'piə** 70  
 disappointed **,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd**  
 12, 89  
 disappointing **,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ** 89  
 disappointment **,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt**  
 12  
 disc jockey (DJ) **dɪsk 'dʒɔ:kɪ** 73  
 discuss **dr'skʌs** 71  
 discussion **dr'skʌʃən** 71  
 disease **dr'zi:z** 20  
 dishonest **dr'sɒnɪst** 11, 70  
 dishwasher **'dɪʃwɒʃər** 18  
 dislike n, v **dr'slaɪk** 68  
 display **dr'spleɪ** 45  
 distance **'dɪstəns** 6, 62  
 disturb **dr'stɜ:b** 30  
 divide [maths] **dr'veid** 61  
 divide [separate] **dr'veid** 32  
 diving **'daɪvɪŋ** 51  
 division **di'vɪʒən** 61  
 divorce **dr've:s** 15  
 DJ (disc jockey) **,di:'dʒeɪ** 73  
 do [study] **du:** 32  
 do a bit/lot of (sightseeing/hiking  
 etc.) **du: ə bit/lot ov** 41, 50  
 do a course **du: ə kɔ:s** 81  
 do an Internet search **du: ən**  
**'ɪntənet sɜ:tʃ** 55  
 doesn't bother **'dʌzənt 'bɒðə** 16  
 do exercise **du: 'eksəsaɪz** 41, 81  
 do homework **du: 'həʊmwɜ:k**  
 81  
 do housework **du:**  
**'hauswɜ:k** 16, 81  
 do not leave bags unattended **du:**  
**nɒt li:v bægz ,ʌnə'tendɪd** 30  
 do research **du: ri'sɜ:tʃ** 34  
 do something/nothing **du:**  
**'sʌmθɪŋ 'nʌθɪŋ** 81  
 do sth up **du: 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 21  
 do the shopping **du: ðə**  
**'ʃɔ:pɪŋ** 16  
 do the washing/ironing (etc.) **du:**  
**ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/'aɪənɪŋ** 16  
 do well **du: wel** 33

- do your best **du: jɔ: best**  
     33, 81  
 do your hair/make-up **du: jɔ: heə/**  
     'meɪkʌp 81  
 do/work overtime **du:/wɜ:k**  
     'əʊvətaim 36  
 do/write an essay **du:/raɪt ə n**  
     'eſei 33  
 document **'dɒkjəmənt** 54  
 documentary **,dɒkjə'mentəri** 52  
 dollar **'dɒlə** 19  
 dolphin **'dɒlfɪn** 8  
 don't worry **dəʊnt 'wʌri** 65  
 donkey **'dəŋki** 8  
 dot (in an email address) **dɒt** 55  
 double (double four  
nine) **'dʌbəl** 61  
 double room **'dʌbəl ru:m** 48  
 double-click **'dʌbəl'klik** 54  
 down [further along] **daʊn** 62  
 down [to a lower place] **daʊn** 90  
 download **,daʊn'ləud** 44, 55  
 downstairs **,daʊn'steəz** 17  
 dozen **'dʌzən** 64  
 Dr **'drktə** 100  
 draw (a game) n, v **drɔ:** 42  
 draw (pictures) **drɔ:** 2  
 dreadful **'dredfəl** 2, 89  
 dream n, v **dri:m** 72  
 dress v **dres** 10, 22, 32  
 dresses (well) 10  
 dress in **dres in** 22  
 dress up **dres əp** 45  
 drop (of milk) **drop** 64  
 drought **draut** 58  
 drummer **'drʌmə** 44  
 drums **drʌmz** 44  
 due to **dju: tu:** 94  
 dull **dʌl** 26  
 during **'dju:ərɪŋ** 60  
 duty free **'dju:ti fri:** 47  
 duvet **'du:veɪ** 18  
 e.g. **i:'dʒi:** 100  
 early (20s/30s, etc.) **'ɔ:li** 14  
 earn **ɔ:n** 19, 36  
 earrings **'eəriŋz** 21, 73  
 east **eɪst** 6  
 Earth [planet] **ɜ:θ** 6  
 eat in/out **i:t in aʊt** 16  
 economics **,i:kə'nɒmɪks** 34  
 economist **i:kənəmɪst** 34, 71  
 economy **i:kənəmi** 40  
 effect **i'fekt** 12, 58, 97  
 efficient **i'fɪʃənt** 58  
 Egypt **'i:dʒɪpt** 5  
 Egyptian **i'dʒipʃən** 5  
 elbow **'elbəʊ** 9  
 elder **'eldə** 13  
 elderly **'eldəli** 14, 57  
 elect **i'lekt** 57  
 election **i'lekʃən** 57  
 electrical **i'lektrɪkəl** 72  
 electrician **,ilek'triʃən** 35  
 elephant **'elfənt** 8  
 embarrassed **im'bʌrəst** 89  
 embarrassing **im'bʌrəsɪŋ** 89  
 emergency **i'mɜ:dʒənsi** 53  
 emergency services **i'mɜ:dʒənsi**  
     'sɜ:vɪsɪz 35  
 emotion **i'məʊʃən** 12  
 emotional **i'məʊʃənəl** 12  
 emphasise **'emfəsaɪz** 3  
 employ sb **ɪm'plɔ:i 'sʌmbodi** 37  
 employee **ɪm'plɔ:i** 39  
 en suite **,ən' swi:t** 18  
 enclose **ɪn'kləʊz** 98  
 encourage **ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ** 88  
 endangered animals  
     ɪn'deindʒəd 'nɪməlz 8  
 end up **end əp** 29  
 enemy **'enəmi** 59  
 energetic **,enə'dʒetɪk** 12  
 energy **'enədʒi** 58  
 engaged [busy] **ɪn'geɪdʒd** 53  
 engagement **ɪn'geɪdʒmənt** 15  
 engineer **,endʒɪ'nɪə** 35  
 engineering **,endʒɪ'nɪəriŋ** 34  
 English **'ɪŋglɪʃ** 5  
 enjoy (+ -ing) **ɪn'dʒɔ:** 2, 87  
 enjoyable **ɪn'dʒɔ:ɪbəl** 72  
 enormous **i'no:məs** 62, 89  
 enquire about sth **ɪn'kwaɪə ə'baut**  
     'sʌmθɪŋ 98  
 enrolment form **ɪn'reoulmənt**  
     fɔ:m 96  
 enter (a password) **'entə** 54  
 entertain **,entə'tein** 43  
 entertainer **,entə'teinə** 43  
 entertainment **,entə'teinmənt**  
     43  
 entrance **'entrəns** 1, 23  
 entry form **'entrɪ fɔ:m** 96  
 environment **ɪn'veɪrənmənt** 58  
 e-paper **i:-peɪpə** 52  
 equal adj **i:kwəl** 57  
 equals v **i:kwəlz** 61  
 equipment **i'kwɪpmənt** 86  
 escape **i'skeɪp** 56  
 essay **'esei** 34  
 essential **i'senʃəl** 55, 89  
 etc. **et'setərə** 100  
 EU **i'ju:** 100  
 euro **'ju:ərəʊ** 19  
 Europe **'ju:ərəp** 5  
 even though **i:vnən ðəʊ** 93  
 eventually **i'ventʃuəli** 92  
 ever since **'evə sɪns** 13  
 exam **i:g'zə:m** 100  
 except for **i:k'sept fɔ:** 75  
 excess baggage **i:k'ses**  
     'bʌgɪdʒ 47  
 excessive **i:k'sesɪv** 58  
 excuse n **i:k'skjus** 65  
 excuse me [attract  
attention] **i:k'skjuz mi:** 69  
 excuse me [say sorry] **i:k'skjuz**  
     mi: 65  
 ex-girlfriend/wife (etc.) **eks**  
     'gɜ:lfrend/warf 13  
 exhausted **i:g'zɔ:stid** 26, 89  
 exist **i:g'zist** 58  
 existence **i:g'zistəns** 58  
 existing **i:g'zistɪŋ** 54  
 exit (stop using an application)
- v 'eksit 54  
 expand **i:k'spʌnd** 1, 39  
 expect **i:k'spekt** 88  
 expecting a baby **i:k'spektɪŋ ə**  
     'beɪbi 74  
 experience [knowledge]  
     i:k'spiəriəns 37, 86  
 experience [sth that happens to  
you] **i:k'spiəriəns** 86  
 experiment v **i:k'speriment** 34  
 expert **'ekspɜ:t** 41  
 explain **i:k'splein** 31  
 explain the difference between X  
and Y **i:k'splein ðə 'difərəns**  
     br'i:twi:n eks ənd wai 31  
 explanation **,eksplə'neɪʃən**  
     2, 31  
 explode **i:k'spləud** 59  
 explore **i:k'splɔ:** 50  
 extremely **i:k'stri:mli** 7, 91  
 facilities **fə'silɪtɪz** 48  
 fail (an exam) v **feil** 33  
 fair [equal] **feə** 57  
 fair [hair] **feə** 10  
 fairly **'feəli** 91  
 fall n, v **fɔ:l** 40  
 fall asleep **fɔ:l ə'sli:p** 16  
 fall in love **fɔ:l in lʌv** 74  
 fall over **fɔ:l 'əʊvə** 19, 79  
 family holiday **'fʌmli**  
     'hɒlədei 46  
 famous **feiməs** 72  
 fancy (doing) sth **'fʌnſi 'sʌmθɪŋ**  
     43, 66, 99  
 FAQs **,efer'kjuz** 54  
 Far East **,fa:r 'i:st** 5  
 fare **feə** 28  
 farewell **'feə'wel** 69  
 farmhouse **'fa:mhaus** 27  
 farming **'fa:mɪŋ** 27  
 fascinating **'fʌ ſineitɪŋ** 89  
 fashionable **'fʌ ſənəbəl** 72  
 fast asleep **fa:st ə'sli:p** 74  
 fasten **'fa:sən** 47  
 fear n **fiə** 40  
 fee(s) **fi:** 19  
 feed **fi:d** 16, 30  
 feel [believe] **fi:l** 67  
 feel [experience] n, v **fi:l** 85  
 feel bad about sth **fi:l bʌd ə'baut**  
     'sʌmθɪŋ 76  
 feel sick **fi:l sɪk** 20  
 feelings **'fi:lnɪz** 12  
 feet [measurement] **fi:t** 62  
 female **'fi:meil** 32, 69  
 fence **fens** 27  
 festival **'festɪvəl** 45  
 fiction **'fɪkʃən** 43  
 field **fi:ld** 27  
 fifty-pence piece **'fifti pens pi:s**  
     19  
 fight **faɪt** 59  
 figures (number) **'figəz** 40  
 file (computer) **faɪl** 54

file menu <b>fail</b> 'menju:	54
files <b>failz</b> 38	
filming cabinet <b>'failɪŋ 'kɔ:bɪnət</b> 38	
fill sth in <b>fil 'sʌmθɪŋ in</b> 96	
film director <b>film dr'rektə</b> 43	
film-maker <b>film 'meɪkə</b> 73	
filthy <b>'filθi</b> 1	
final n <b>'fainəl</b> 42	
finally <b>'fainəlɪ</b> 92	
find out <b>faind aut</b> 79	
fine n <b>fain</b> 56	
fire brigade <b>faɪə bri'geɪd</b> 35	
fireman/firefighter <b>'faɪəmən</b> <b>'faɪəfaɪtə</b> 35	
fireworks <b>'faɪəwɜ:ks</b> 45	
firm adj <b>fɜ:m</b> 18	
firm n <b>fɜ:m</b> 39	
first language <b>fɜ:st 'læŋgwɪdʒ</b> 5	
first of all <b>fɜ:stɒvɔ:l</b> 92	
first(ly) <b>fɜ:st</b> 92	
fit adj <b>fit</b> 71	
fit v <b>fit</b> 22	
fitness <b>'fitnəs</b> 71	
fix <b>fiks</b> 35	
fixed (hours) <b>fɪkst</b> 36	
flag <b>flæg</b> 63	
flat n <b>flæt</b> 17	
flautist <b>'flɔ:tɪst</b> 44	
flavour <b>'fleɪvə</b> 24	
flight <b>flait</b> 28	
flight number <b>flait 'nʌmbə</b> 47	
flood <b>flʌd</b> 58	
floor <b>flɔ:</b> 18	
flu <b>flu:</b> 20, 100	
fluent <b>'flu:ənt</b> 33	
flute <b>flut</b> 44	
fly n <b>flai</b> 8	
fly v <b>flai</b> 28	
fog <b>fɒg</b> 7	
foggy <b>'fɒgi</b> 7	
fold your arms <b>fəʊld jɔ:r ə:mz</b> 9	
folk music <b>fəʊk 'mju:zɪk</b> 44	
footballer <b>'fʊtbɔ:lə</b> 71	
footpath <b>'fʊtpa:θ</b> 27	
for <b>fɔ:</b> 60	
for a start <b>fɔ:r ə start</b> 92	
for ages <b>fɔ:r 'eɪdzɪz</b> 60	
for example <b>fɔ:r ɪg'zɑ:mpəl</b> 100	
for fun <b>fɔ:r fʌn</b> 42	
for instance <b>fɔ:r 'instəns</b> 75	
for one thing <b>fɔ:r wʌn θɪŋ</b> 92	
for pleasure <b>fɔ:r 'plezə</b> 41	
for the time being <b>fɔ:r ðə tam</b> <b>'bi:ŋ</b> 60	
forehead <b>'fɔ:hed</b> 9	
forget <b>fə'get</b> 2	
former <b>'fɔ:mrə</b> 39	
fortnight <b>'fɔ:tnaɪt</b> 60	
fortunately <b>'fɔ:tsənətlɪ</b> 16	
forum <b>'fɔ:rəm</b> 52	
fossil fuel <b>'fɔ:səl 'fju:əl</b> 58	
fountain <b>'faʊntɪn</b> 50	
fraction <b>'frækʃən</b> 61	
fragile <b>'frædʒail</b> 30	
France <b>'fra:n̩s</b> 5	
freezing <b>'fri:zɪŋ</b> 7	
French <b>frentʃ</b> 5	
frequency <b>'fri:kwəntsɪ</b> 91	
frequently <b>'fri:kwənlɪ</b> 91	
fresh <b>fref</b> 23	
fresh air <b>fref eə</b> 27	
fridge <b>frɪdʒ</b> 100	
fridge/freezer <b>frɪdʒ 'frizə</b> 18	
friendly <b>'frendli</b> 11	
friendship <b>'frendʃɪp</b> 13	
frightened <b>'fraitənd</b> 12	
frog <b>frɒg</b> 8	
front door <b>frʌnt dɔ:</b> 17	
fry <b>fraɪ</b> 25	
frying pan <b>'fraɪɪŋ pæn</b> 25	
full stop <b>ful stop</b> 4, 73	
full-time <b>,fʊl'taim</b> 37	
fully-booked <b>'foli bukt</b> 48	
fur <b>fɜ:</b> 63	
furniture <b>'fɜ:nɪtʃə</b> 86	
garlic <b>'ga:lik</b> 24	
gate <b>geɪt</b> 27	
gate (3/5/10, etc.) (airport) <b>geɪt</b> 47	
gather <b>'gæðə</b> 45	
general election <b>'dʒenərəl</b> <b>r'lekʃən</b> 57	
generalisation <b>'dʒenərəlɪz'eɪʃən</b> 97	
generation <b>'dʒenəreɪʃən</b> 39	
generous <b>'dʒenərəs</b> 11	
German <b>'dʒɜ:mən</b> 5	
Germany <b>'dʒɜ:məni</b> 5	
get [answer] <b>get</b> 83	
get [arrive] <b>get</b> 83	
get [become] <b>get</b> 83	
get [do a task] <b>get</b> 83	
get [fetch] <b>get</b> 83	
get a job <b>get ə dʒɒb</b> 32	
get away [escape] <b>get ə'wei</b> 56, 59	
get better <b>get 'betə</b> 83	
get divorced <b>get di've:st</b> 15	
get dressed <b>get drest</b> 21, 70	
get engaged <b>get in'geɪdʒd</b> 15	
get in [arrive] <b>get in</b> 80, 83	
get in [enter] <b>get in</b> 28, 83	
get in touch <b>get in tʌtʃ</b> 83	
get into trouble <b>get 'intə 'trʌblə</b> 32	
get lost <b>get lɒst</b> 29, 50	
get married to sb <b>get 'mærid tu:</b> <b>'sʌmbodi</b> 13, 15	
get off (a bus) <b>get of</b> 28	
get on (a bus) <b>get on</b> 28	
get on (with sb) <b>get on</b> 13, 79	
get out [leave] <b>get aut</b> 28, 83	
get over sth <b>get 'əvər 'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 80	
get rid of sth <b>get rɪd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 75, 83	
get sth back <b>get 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk</b> 83	
get sth done <b>get 'sʌmθɪŋ dʌn</b> 83	
get sth wrong <b>get 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ</b> 33, 83	
get stuck <b>get stʌk</b> 26, 61	
get through [make contact] <b>get əru:</b> 53	
get through sth [finish] <b>get əru: 'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 33	
get to know sb <b>get tu: nəʊ</b> <b>'sʌmbodi</b> 13, 15, 83	
get to sleep <b>get tu: slɪ:p</b> 83	
get together <b>get tə'geðə</b> 83, 99	
get undressed <b>get ʌn'drest</b> 70	
get up <b>get ʌp</b> 16	
get used to sth <b>get ju:st tu:</b> <b>'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 68	
get worse <b>get wɜ:s</b> 83	
giant <b>'dʒaɪənt</b> 62	
giraffe <b>dʒɪ'ræf</b> 8	
give [cause an effect] <b>giv</b> 82	
give a speech/lecture (etc.) <b>giv ə</b> <b>spi:tʃ/'lektʃə</b> 82	
give my regards/love to ... <b>giv mai</b> <b>rɪ'ga:dz/lav tu:</b> 99	
give sb advice <b>giv 'sʌmbodi</b> <b>əd'veɪs</b> 36	
give sb a hand <b>giv 'sʌmbodi ə</b> <b>hænd</b> 82	
give sb a hug <b>giv 'sʌmbodi ə hʌg</b> 72	
give sb a ring <b>giv 'sʌmbodi ə riŋ</b> 53, 82	
give sb a shock <b>giv 'sʌmbodi ə</b> <b>ʃɒk</b> 82	
give sb the sack <b>giv 'sʌmbodi ə</b> <b>sæk</b> 37	
give sth away <b>giv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'wei</b> 79	
give sth a push <b>giv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə pʊʃ</b> 82	
give up (sth) [stop doing an activity] <b>giv ʌp</b> 42, 79	
give up sth [leave a job] <b>giv ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 15	
global warming <b>'gləubəl 'wɜ:min</b> 58	
go [disappear] <b>gəʊ</b> 84	
go [lead somewhere] <b>gəʊ</b> 84	
go (out) for a walk/drive (etc.) <b>gəʊ fɔ:r ə wɔ:k/draɪv</b> 84	
go (swimming/shopping, etc.) <b>gəʊ</b> 16, 41, 84	
go and get [fetch] <b>gəʊ ənd get</b> 83, 84	
go away [go on holiday] <b>gəʊ ə'wei</b> 79, 84	
go away [leave] <b>gəʊ ə'wei</b> 79	
go back <b>gəʊ bæk</b> 79, 84	
go by bike/car (etc.) <b>gəʊ bai baik/ka:</b> 28	
go down <b>gəʊ daʊn</b> 40	
go for [choose] <b>gəʊ fɔ:</b> 84	
go for (a swim/drive, etc.) <b>gəʊ fɔ:</b> 51, 84	
go grey/bald/deaf (etc.) <b>gəʊ greɪ/</b> <b>bɔ:ld/def</b> 84	
go into business <b>gəʊ 'intə 'bɪznɪs</b> 34	
go mad [become angry] <b>gəʊ mæd</b> 84	
go off [electricity] <b>gəʊ of</b> 79	
go off [explode] <b>gəʊ of</b> 79	
go off [go bad] <b>gəʊ of</b> 79	

go off [ring] <i>gəʊ ɒf</i> 79	hand luggage <i>hænd 'lægiðz</i> 47	hide <i>haɪd</i> 59
go on [happen] <i>gəʊ ɒn</i> 26, 84	hand sth out <i>hænd 'sʌmθɪŋ əʊt</i> 80	high (mountain) <i>haɪ</i> 62
go on (to do sth) <i>gəʊ ɒn</i> 32, 34	handle v <i>'hændəl</i> 36	highlight <i>'haɪlaɪt</i> 31
go on a cruise <i>gəʊ ɒn ə kruːz</i> 46	handsome <i>'hænsəm</i> 10	highlighter pen <i>'haɪlaɪtə pen</i> 1, 31
go on a diet <i>gəʊ ɒn ə 'daɪət</i> 74	handwriting <i>'hænd,ræɪtɪŋ</i> 96	hill <i>hil</i> 27
go online <i>gəʊ ,ɒn'laɪn</i> 55	hang around <i>hæŋ ə'raʊnd</i> 80	hip <i>hip</i> 9
go out [social activity] <i>gəʊ əʊt</i> 16, 50	happiness <i>'hæpɪnɪs</i> 71	hire <i>'haɪr</i> 19
go out [stop working] <i>gəʊ əʊt</i> 84	harbour <i>'haʊbə</i> 45	historic monument <i>his'tɔːrik 'mɔːnjəmənt</i> 50
go out with sb <i>gəʊ əʊt wið</i> 'sʌmbədi 15	hard drive/disk <i>ha:d draɪv/dɪsk</i> 54	hit <i>hit</i> 56
go sightseeing <i>gəʊ 'saɪtsɪŋ</i> 50	hard work <i>ha:d wɜːk</i> 33	hold an election <i>həʊld ən r'leksən</i> 57
go through <i>gəʊ θruː</i> 47	hardly ever <i>'ha:dli 'eva</i> 91	hold on [wait] <i>həʊld ən</i> 80
go to bed <i>gəʊ tuː bɛd</i> 16	hard-working <i>'ha:d,wɜːkɪŋ</i> 11	hold-up <i>həʊld ʌp</i> 65
go to sleep <i>gəʊ tuː sli:p</i> 16	hate <i>heɪt</i> 68, 87	honest <i>'ɒnɪst</i> 11, 70
go up <i>gəʊ ʌp</i> 40	have a (swim/drink, etc.) <i>hæv ə</i> 51	honeymoon <i>'həʊmju:n</i> 15
go well/badly <i>gəʊ wel/'bɛ dlɪ</i> 84	have a bath <i>hæv ə ba:θ</i> 16	hope that... <i>həʊp ðə:t</i> 88
go with sth <i>gəʊ wið 'sʌmθɪŋ</i> 22	have a good ear for language <i>hæv ə gud ɪə fɔ: 'læŋgwɪdʒ</i> 33	hope to do sth <i>həʊp tuː du:</i> 'sʌmθɪŋ 87, 99
go wrong <i>gəʊ rɒŋ</i> 15, 84	have a great/nice/terrible time <i>hæv ə greɪt/nais/'terəbəl taɪm</i> 50	hopeful <i>'həʊpfəl</i> 12
goalkeeper <i>'gəʊl,kɪ:pə</i> 41	have a late night <i>hæv ə leɪt naɪt</i> 16	hopeless <i>'həʊpləs</i> 27
goat <i>gəʊt</i> 8	have a look <i>hæv ə lʊk</i> 81	horrible <i>'hɒrəbəl</i> 25
golf course <i>gɔlf kɔ:s</i> 41	have a look round <i>hæv ə lʊk raʊnd</i> 50	horror film <i>'hɒrə flɪm</i> 43
good luck <i>gʊd lʌk</i> 69	have a sleep <i>hæv ə slɪ:p</i> 16	hot chocolate <i>hɒt 'tʃɒklət</i> 49
good/bad at sth <i>gʊd/bɛ d ə t</i> 'sʌmθɪŋ 25, 77	have a wash/shower etc. <i>hæv ə wɒʃ/ʃaʊə</i> 16, 81	housework <i>'haʊswɜ:k</i> 16
good-looking <i>gʊd'lʊkɪŋ</i> 10	have a word with sb <i>hæv ə wɜ:d wið 'sʌmbədi</i> 76	How about ...? [making a suggestion] <i>haʊ ə'baut</i> 66, 69
gorgeous <i>'gɔ:dʒəs</i> 10	have an early night <i>hæv ən 'ɜːli naɪt</i> 16	How about you? [asking sb sth] <i>haʊ ə'baut ju:</i> 69
govern <i>'gʌvnən</i> 71	have children <i>hæv ə 'tʃɪldrən</i> 74	How are things? <i>haʊ ə:θɪŋz?</i> 69
government <i>'gʌvnənmənt</i> 57, 71	have got sth on <i>hæv ə gɒt 'sʌmθɪŋ</i> ən 22	How do you feel about ...? <i>haʊ du: ju: fi:l ə'baut</i> 67
GP <i>dʒi:'pi:</i> 35	have no idea <i>hæv ə nəʊ aɪ'dɪə</i> 76	How long/wide (etc.) is ...? <i>haʊ lɒŋ/waɪd x ɪz</i> 62
grade <i>greɪd</i> 33, 34	have something/nothing in common <i>hæv ə 'sʌmθɪŋ/ 'nʌθɪŋ</i> in 'kɒmən 68	How's it going? <i>haʊz ɪt</i> 'gəʊɪŋ? 69
gradual(ly) <i>'grɛdʒuəl</i> 40	have time for sth <i>hæv ə taim</i> fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 60	however <i>haʊ'evə</i> 93, 97
graduate n <i>'grɛdʒuət</i> 34, 98	headache <i>'hedeɪk</i> 20	hug <i>hʌg</i> 82
grant [allow] <i>gra:nt</i> 95	headline <i>'hedlайн</i> 52	huge <i>hju:dʒ</i> 62, 89
grapes <i>greɪps</i> 24	headquarters <i>'hed'kwo:təz</i> 39	humid <i>'hju:mɪd</i> 7
grass <i>gra:s</i> 27	hear <i>hiə</i> 85	hundred <i>'hʌndrəd</i> 61
great <i>greɪt</i> 95	heart [in the body] <i>ha:t</i> 20	hurry (up) <i>'hʌri</i> 79
great fun <i>greɪt fʌn</i> 74	heart of somewhere <i>ha:t əv 'sʌmweə</i> 48, 59	hurt v <i>hɜ:t</i> 20
great importance <i>greɪt im'pɔ:tənts</i> 74	heart attack <i>ha:t ə'tæk</i> 20	I am pleased to inform you ... <i>aɪ əm pli:zd tu: in'fɔ:m ju:</i> 98
Greece <i>grɪ:s</i> 5	heat v <i>hi:t</i> 17	I am writing in response to ... <i>aɪ əm 'raɪtɪŋ in rɪ'spons</i> tu: 98
Greek <i>grɪ:k</i> 5	heat up <i>hi:t ʌp</i> 49	I am writing to ... <i>aɪ əm 'raɪtɪŋ</i> tu: 98
greenhouse effect <i>'grɪ:nhaʊs ɪ'fekt</i> 58	heavy (rain) <i>'hevi</i> 7	I beg your pardon <i>aɪ beg jɔ: 'pɔ:dən</i> 65
greenhouse gases <i>'grɪ:nhaʊs 'gæsɪz</i> 58	heavy (traffic) <i>'hevi</i> 74	I bet <i>aɪ bet</i> 95
greet <i>gri:t</i> 69	Hebrew <i>'hi:bru:</i> 5	I don't believe it <i>aɪ dəʊnt bɪ'li:v</i> it 76
greeting <i>'grɪ:tɪŋ</i> 69	heel <i>hi:l</i> 9	I don't fancy that <i>aɪ dəʊnt 'fænseɪ</i> ðə:t 66
grey <i>greɪ</i> 63	height <i>ha:it</i> 10, 62	I don't mind <i>aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd</i> 66
grill n, v <i>gril</i> 25	held [organised] <i>held</i> 45	I look forward to hearing from you <i>aɪ lok 'fɔ:wəd tu: 'hiərɪŋ</i> fr̄om ju: 98
ground <i>graʊnd</i> 27	help <i>help</i> 88	I must apologise for ... <i>aɪ məst 'ə'pɔ:lədʒaɪz fɔ:</i> 65
growing <i>'grəʊɪŋ</i> 39, 40	helpful <i>'helpfəl</i> 71	I regret to inform you ... <i>aɪ ri'gret</i> tu: in'fɔ:m ju: 98
guess n, v <i>ges</i> 3, 72	hen <i>hen</i> 24	
guidebook <i>'gaɪdbʊk</i> 50	herbal tea <i>'hɜ:bl ti:</i> 49	
guilty <i>'gɪlti</i> 56	hi <i>hai</i> 99	
guitar <i>gɪ'ta:</i> 44		
guitarist <i>gɪ'ta:rist</i> 44		
gun <i>gʌn</i> 37, 59		
gym <i>dʒɪm</i> 41, 100		
haggle <i>'hægl</i> 23		
hair <i>heə</i> 10		
haircut <i>'heəkʌt</i> 73		
hairdresser <i>'heə,dresə</i> 73		
hairdryer <i>'heədrɔɪə</i> 73		
half <i>ha:f</i> 61		
half a dozen <i>ha:f ə 'dʌzən</i> 64		

- I see what you mean *ai si: wot ju:*  
*mi:n* 67
- I suppose so *ai sə'pəuz səʊ* 76
- I was wondering if you could ...  
*ai wɒz 'wʌndərɪŋ if ju: kʊd* 66
- I wonder if you could ... *ai 'wʌndər if ju: kʊd* 66
- I would be grateful if you could ...  
*ai wod bɪ: 'greɪtfəl if ju: kʊd* 98
- i.e. *ai'i:* 100
- I'd rather ... *aid 'ra:ðə* 66
- I'll have (chicken/fish, etc.)  
*ail hæv* 48
- I'll leave it *ail li:v it* 22
- I'll take it *ail teik it* 22
- I'm afraid I can't *aim ə'freid ai kɑ:nt* 66
- I'm being served *aim 'bi:ɪŋ sɜ:vd* 22
- I'm looking for ... *aim 'lʊkɪŋ fɔ:* 22
- I'm sorry *aim 'sori* 65
- I'm sorry I'm late *aim 'sori aim leit* 65
- ice *ais* 7
- ice hockey *ais 'hɔki* 41, 73
- icon *'aɪkɒn* 54
- icy *'aɪsi* 7
- ID *ai'di:* 100
- ID card *ai'di: kɑ:d* 73
- if I were you *if ai wɔ: ju:* 75
- if you like *if ju: laɪk* 66
- ill *ɪl* 70
- illegal *i'li:gəl* 70
- illness *'ɪlnəs* 20, 71
- image *'ɪmɪdʒ* 39
- imagine *i'mædʒɪn* 87
- immediately *i'mi:diətlɪ* 55
- impatient *im'peɪʃənt* 11
- improve *im'pru:v* 71
- improvement *im'pru:vment* 71
- in [place] *in* 90
- in a hurry *in ə 'hʌri* 26, 78
- in a moment *in ə 'məʊmənt* 78
- in a row *in ə rəʊ* 40
- in a week's/month's (etc.) time  
*in ə wi:ks/mʌnθs taim* 60, 75, 99
- in addition (to) *in ə'dɪʃən* 93
- in advance *in əd've:n:s* 48
- in black/blue/brown (etc.)  
*in blæk/blu:/braʊn* 21
- in business *in 'bɪznɪs* 78
- in case *in keɪs* 94
- in charge of *in tʃa:z ɒv* 36
- in contrast *in 'kɒntrə:st* 97
- in credit *in 'kredɪt* 19
- in detail *in 'dɪ:tɪl* 78
- in fact *in fækt* 99
- in fashion *in 'fæʃən* 22
- in future *in 'fju:tʃə* 78
- in general *in 'dʒenərəl* 75, 97
- in large quantities *in la:dʒ*  
*'kwɒntətɪz* 64
- in love *in lʌv* 15
- in my opinion *in mai ə'pinjən* 67
- in order to *in 'ɔ:rdə tu:* 94
- in other words *in 'ʌðər wɜ:dz* 100
- in progress *in 'prəugrəs* 30
- in response to *in rɪs'pɒns tu:* 98
- in spite of *in spait ɒv* 93
- in tears *in teəz* 78
- in that case *in ðæt keɪs* 76
- in the end *in ði end* 14, 78, 92
- in the past *in ðə pa:st* 32, 97
- in the south *in ðə sauθ* 6
- in the wild *in ðə waɪld* 8
- in the world *in ðə wɜ:ld* 6
- in time *in taim* 60, 78
- in writing *in 'raɪtɪŋ* 98
- in your teens *in jɔ: tɪnz* 14
- inability *in'e:bɪləti* 71
- inch *ɪnɪʃ* 62
- include *in'klu:d* 48
- income *'ɪnkʌm* 36
- income tax *'ɪnkʌm tæks* 36, 73
- incorrect *in'kər'ekt* 70
- increase *n* *'ɪnkrɪ:s* 33, 40
- increase *v* *'ɪn'kri:s* 40
- incredible *in'kredɪbəl* 42
- incredibly *in'kredɪbli* 91
- indefinite article *in'defɪnət 'a:tɪkəl* 4
- individual *indi'veɪdʒuəl* 42
- inflation *in'fleɪʃən* 40
- ingredients *in'grɪ:dɪənts* 25
- injure *ɪndʒə* 30
- injury *ɪndʒəri* 29
- innocent *inə'sənt* 56
- insect *'ɪnsekt* 8
- inside lane *'ɪnsaɪd leɪn* 29
- insist on doing sth *in'sist ɒn 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ* 87
- install *in'stɔ:l* 35, 54
- instant messaging  
*'ɪnstant 'mesɪdʒɪŋ* 55
- instead *in'sted* 16
- intelligent *in'telɪdʒənt* 11
- intend *in'tend* 87
- interest *n* *'ɪntrəst* 40
- interest *v* *'ɪntrəst* 68
- interest rate *'ɪntrəst reɪt* 40
- interested in *'ɪntrəstɪd ɪn* 68, 77
- interests *'ɪntrəsts* 68, 96
- Internet access *'ɪntənet 'kɔ:kses* 48
- interrupt *ɪntə'rapt* 65
- interview *'ɪntəvju:* 37
- into *'ɪntə:* 90
- introduce sb *'ɪntrə'dju:s*  
*'sʌmbədi* 69
- invent *ɪn'vent* 71, 80
- invention *ɪn'venʃən* 71
- invoice *'ɪnvəɪs* 38
- involve *ɪn'velv* 38, 45
- iron *aɪən* 46
- ironing *'aɪənɪŋ* 16
- irregular *i'regjələ* 70
- irregular (verb) *i'regjələ* 4
- Is that (Joe, Emma, etc ...)? *ɪz ðæt* 53
- ish *iʃ* 10
- ISP *aɪɛs'pi:* 55, 100
- Israel *'ɪzreɪl* 5
- Israeli *ɪz'reili* 5
- it/that depends *ɪt/ðæt dr'pendz* 76
- it said in *ɪt sed in* 52
- it seems to me *ɪt sɪ:mz tu:*  
*mi:* 97
- Italian *'ɪtæliən* 5
- Italy *'ɪtæli* 5
- item *'aɪtəm* 23, 55
- jail *dʒeɪl* 56
- jacket *'dʒækɪt* 21
- Japan *dʒæpən* 5
- Japanese *dʒæpə'nɪz* 5
- jar *dʒɑ:* 64
- jeans *dʒi:nz* 21
- jealous *'dʒeləs* 12
- jealousy *'dʒeləsi* 12
- jogging *'dʒɒgɪŋ* 41
- join [become a member] *dʒɔ:n* 35
- join [do sth with others] *dʒɔ:n* 99
- journalist *'dʒɜ:nəlist* 52
- journey *'dʒɜ:nɪ* 28
- judge *dʒʌdʒ* 56
- jug *dʒʌg* 64
- jumper *'dʒʌmpə* 21
- junction *'dʒʌŋkʃən* 31
- junk mail *dʒʌŋk meɪl* 55
- jury *'dʒʊəri* 56
- just as *dʒʌst əz* 92
- keen on *ki:n ɒn* 68
- keep [look after] *ki:p* 27
- keep [stay in a place/condition]  
*ki:p* 82
- keep (on) doing sth  
*ki:p 'dʊxiŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ* 82
- keep a secret *ki:p ə 'sɪ:kret* 82
- keep in touch *ki:p in tʌtʃ* 82
- keep off sth *ki:p ɒf 'sʌmθɪŋ* 30
- keep right/left *ki:p rait/left* 30
- keep sb fit *ki:p 'sʌmbədi fit* 41
- keep (pets) *ki:p* 8
- keep sth up *ki:p 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp* 82
- kettle *'ketəl* 18
- keyboard *'ki:bɔ:d* 38, 44, 54
- keyboard player *'ki:bɔ:d*  
*'pleɪə* 44
- (I'm/you're, etc.) kidding *'kɪdɪŋ* 76
- kids *kɪdз* 95
- kill *kɪl* 59
- kind *kaind* 1, 11
- kind of *kaind ɒf* 76
- Kind regards *kaind ri'ga:dz* 98
- kitten *'kɪtən* 2
- knee *ni:* 9
- knowledge (of sth) *'nɒlɪdʒ* 86
- Korean *kə'rɪən* 5
- lab *læb* 34, 100
- laboratory *læ'bɒrətəri* 34

- ladder 'lædər 63  
 lamb læm 24  
 land v lænd 47  
 landing 'lændɪŋ 47  
 landing card 'lændɪŋ ka:d 96  
 landline 'lændlайн 53  
 landscape 'lændskεip 6  
 lane (on a road) len 29  
 laptop 'læptɒp 54  
 large la:dʒ 49  
 large number/amount  
     la:dʒ 'nʌmbə/ə'maunt 19, 74  
 last v la:st 34, 45, 60  
 last long la:st loŋ 60  
 late (50s/60s, etc.) leit 14  
 lately 'leitli 60  
 latest 'leitist 43  
 latte læt̩i 49  
 laugh v la:f 9  
 law lɔ: 34  
 lawyer 'lɔ:yer 35  
 lazy 'leizi 11  
 lead [be in front] li:d 42  
 leader 'li:dər 57  
 league li:g 42  
 lean li:n 30  
 leather 'leðər 63  
 leave [end a relationship] liv 15  
 leave (a place) liv 32  
 leave a message liv ə  
     'mesidʒ 53  
 leave sb/sth out liv  
     'sambodi/'sʌmθɪŋ aut 80  
 leaves (on a tree) livz 27  
 lecturer 'lectʃər 34, 35  
 legal 'lɪ:gəl 70  
 lemon 'lemon 24  
 lend lend 31  
 length lenθ 62  
 leopard 'lepəd 8  
 let [allow] let 14  
 let you know let ju: nəʊ 99  
 lettuce 'letis 24  
 library 'laibrəri 34  
 lie down lai daun 79  
 lift n lift 17  
 light [not dark] lait 17  
 light [not much] lait 7, 74  
 light lunch lait ləntʃ 16  
 light (rain/shower) lait 7  
 lightning 'laɪtnɪŋ 7  
 like [similar to] laik 85  
 likely 'larkli 23  
 limited number/amount/choice  
     'limitid 'nʌmbə/ə'maunt/tʃis 74  
 limited vocabulary  
     'limitid və'kɒbjələri 74  
 link (computer) lɪŋk 55  
 link word lɪŋk wɜ:d 4  
 lion 'laɪən 8  
 lips lips 9  
 listen [pay attention] 'lisən 85  
 literature 'litəritʃə 43  
 live adj laiv 44  
 lively 'laivli 26, 50  
 liver 'livə 20  
 loads of sth ləudz ov 'sʌmθɪŋ 38  
 loan ləon 40  
 location ləu'keiʃən 17  
 lock v lk 70  
 log in/on loŋ in/on 54  
 log off/out loŋ of/aut 54  
 longish 'lɔ:ŋiʃ 10  
 look n, v lok 85  
 look after sb lok 'a:ftə  
     'sʌmbodi 80  
 look sth up lok 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 3,  
     31, 79  
 loose lu:s 22  
 lorry 'lɔ:ri 28  
 lose (a game) lu:z 42  
 lose weight lu:z weit 74  
 loser 'lu:zə 42  
 loss lbs 40  
 lots of character lɒts əv  
     'kɒrktə 17  
 loud noise laud nɔ:z 74  
 love v lav 68  
 Love (greeting) lav 99  
 luckily 'lʌkəli 16  
 luggage 'lʌgɪdʒ 47  
 lung cancer laj 'kʌnsə 20  
 lungs laŋz 20  
 lyrics 'lɪrɪks 44  
 mad about sb mæd ə'baut  
     'sʌmbodi 77  
 magnificent mæg'nifisənt 50  
 main course mein kɔ:s 48  
 main meal mein mi:l 16  
 main road mein rəud 29  
 mainly 'meinli 53  
 majority ma'dʒorəti 61  
 make [cause sb to do sth] meik  
     23, 81  
 make [force sb to do  
    sth] meik 81  
 make a comparison meik ə  
     kəm'pərisən 97  
 make a decision meik ə  
     di'si:zən 81  
 make a mistake meik ə mi'steik  
     81  
 make a noise meik ə nɔ:z 81  
 make a profit/loss  
     meik ə 'prfɪt/lbs 40  
 make an effort meik ə n'efət 81  
 make friends meik frendz 81  
 make generalisations  
     meik ,dʒenərələr'zeiʃənz 97  
 make it meik it 95  
 make (money) meik 36  
 make sth up meik 'sʌmθɪŋ  
     ʌp 80  
 make the bed meik ə bed 16  
 make up your mind  
     meik əp jɔ: mai:nd 75, 81  
 make yourself understood  
     meik jɔ:'self, ʌndə'stud 33  
 make-up 'meikʌp 16  
 male meil 32, 69  
 manage [run a business]  
     'mænidʒ 71  
 manage [succeed in doing sth]  
     'mænidʒ 14  
 management 'mænidʒment 71  
 Mandarin 'mændərɪn 5  
 marital status 'mæritəl  
     'steɪtəs 96  
 mark [grade] mark 33  
 market 'ma:kɪt 50  
 marry 'mæri 15  
 marvellous 'ma:vələs 89  
 match v mætʃ 22  
 mate meit 13, 95  
 material mæ'ti:əriəl 63  
 maths mæθs 100  
 me neither mi: 'naɪðə 68  
 me too mi: tu: 68  
 meal mi:l 16  
 mean adj mi:n 11  
 mean v mi:n 31  
 meaning 'mi:nɪŋ 31  
 measure 'meʒə 31  
 mechanic mi'kɒnɪk 37  
 media reporting  
     'mi:diə ri'pɔ:tɪŋ 52  
 medicine [the  
    subject] 'medsən 34  
 medicine [to treat an illness]  
     'medsən 20  
 medium [meat] 'mi:diəm 48  
 medium height 'mi:diəm hæt 10  
 melon 'melən 24  
 mend mend 35  
 mention 'menʃən 88  
 mess mes 2  
 metal 'metəl 62  
 mice mai:s 8  
 microwave 'maɪkrəweɪv 18  
 mid (30s/40s, etc.) mid 14  
 Middle East 'mɪdəl 'i:st 5  
 middle-aged 'mɪdəl'eɪdʒ 14  
 mild maild 7  
 mile mal 62  
 milkshake 'milkʃeɪk 49  
 million 'miljən 61  
 mind v mai:nd 68  
 mind (+ -ing) mai:nd 87  
 mind the step mai:nd ə step 30  
 mind your head mai:nd jo:  
     hed 30  
 minimum wage  
     'mɪniməm weɪdʒ 36  
 minor (offence) 'mainə 56  
 minority 'mai'nɔ:rəti 61  
 minus 'mainəs 6  
 minus adj 'mainəs 61  
 miserable 'mɪzərəbəl 12  
 mishear mis'hɪə 70  
 miss [avoid] mis 82  
 miss [not hear] mis 82  
 miss sb mis 'sʌmbodi 82  
 miss a chance/opportunity  
     mis ə tʃə:ns/, ɒpə'tju:nəti 82  
 miss the bus/train (etc.)  
     mis ə bʌs/træɪn 28, 74  
 missing 'misɪŋ 59  
 misunderstand ,misandə'stʌnd 70

mix n **miks** 26  
 mix sth up **miks 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 2  
 mobile edition **'məʊbaɪl ɪ'dɪʃən** 52  
 mobile number  
     **'məʊbaɪl 'nʌmbə** 53  
 monkey **'mʌŋki** 8  
 monthly **'mʌnθli** 52  
 mood **mu:d** 12  
 mosque **mɒsk** 50  
 mosquito **mə'ski:təʊ** 8  
 mostly **'məʊstli** 53  
 mother tongue **'mʌðə tʌŋ** 73  
 mother/brother/son-in-law  
     **'mʌðə/'brʌðə/'sʌn in lɔ:** 13  
 motorbike **'məʊtəbaɪk** 30  
 mouse (animal) **maʊs** 8  
 mouse (computer) **maus** 54  
 mouse mat **maus mæt** 54  
 move **mu:v** 17  
 MP **,em'pi:** 57, 100  
 Mr **'mɪstə** 100  
 Mrs **'mɪsɪz** 100  
 muffin **'mæfin** 49  
 multiplication **,mʌltipli'keɪʃən** 61  
 multiplied by **'mʌltiplaɪd bai** 61  
 murder n, v **'mɜ:də** 56  
 murderer **'mɜ:dərə** 56  
 mushroom **'mʌʃru:m** 24  
 musical **'mju:zɪkəl** 72  
 mussels **'mʌsəlz** 24  
 my view/feeling is  
     **mai vju:/'fi:lɪŋ iz** 67  
 napkins **'næpkɪns** 49  
 narrow **'nɔ:rəʊ** 10, 62  
 national **'næʃənl** 52, 63, 72  
 navy [army] **'neivɪ** 35  
 navy blue **'neivɪ blu:** 63  
 nearby **nɪə'bai** 46  
 nearest **nɪərist** 46, 62  
 nearly **nɪəli** 14  
 necessary **'nesəsəri** 2  
 neck **nek** 9  
 necklace **'neklis** 21  
 negative **'negətɪv** 11  
 neither do/am/can I **'naɪðə**  
     du:/θm/kæn ai 68  
 nephew **'nefju:** 13  
 nervous **'nɜ:vəs** 11  
 net **net** 41  
 never mind **'nevə maɪnd** 65  
 news **nju:z** 52, 86  
 next time **nekst taim** 60  
 nice **nais** 11  
 nice to meet you  
     **nais tu: mi:t ju:** 69  
 niece **ni:s** 13  
 night after night **naɪt 'a:fte**  
     naɪt 75  
 nightlife **'naɪtlایf** 26  
 nil **nil** 42  
 nine-to-five adj **nain-tu:**  
     faɪv 36  
 no entry **nəʊ 'entri** 30  
 no exit **nəʊ 'eksɪt** 30  
 no parking **nəʊ 'pa:kɪŋ** 30

no problem **nəʊ 'prɒbləm** 66, 65  
 no vacancies **nəʊ 'veɪkəntsiz** 30  
 no way/chance **nəʊ wei/**  
     tʃa:n:s 76  
 nod your head **nɒd jə: hed** 9  
 normal **'nɔ:ml** 72  
 north **nɔ:θ** 6  
 north-east **nɔ:θ'i:st** 6  
 north-west **nɔ:θ'west** 6  
 not at all **nɒt ə:t ɔ:l** 65  
 not (so) bad **nɒt bɒd** 69  
 not really **nɒt 'ri:li** 76  
 note [money] **nəʊt** 19  
 note down **nəʊt daʊn** 2  
 nothing to declare **'nʌθɪŋ tu:**  
     dr'kleə 47  
 notice n **'nəʊtɪs** 30  
 notice v **'nəʊtɪs** 88  
 noticeboard **nəʊtɪsbaʊd** 38  
 nought **nɔ:t** 61  
 noun **naʊn** 4  
 novel **'nəʊvəl** 43  
 now and again **naʊ ə:nd**  
     ə'gen 75  
 now and then **naʊ ə:nd ðen** 75  
 nowadays **'naʊðeɪz** 60, 97  
 nowhere to park  
     'bəʊweə tu: pa:k 26  
 nurse **nɜ:s** 35  
 nursery school **'nɜ:səri sku:l** 32  
 obesity **ə'bi:səti** 97  
 object n **'ɒbjekt** 63  
 occasionally **ə'keɪzənəli** 91  
 ocean **'əʊʃən** 6  
 octopus **'ɒktəpəs** 8  
 of course **ɒv kɔ:s** 66  
 off [absent] **ɒf** 36, 38  
 offence **ə'fens** 56  
 offer **'ɒfə** 87  
 official **ə'fɪʃəl** 3  
 oh [o] **əʊ** 61  
 oil [fuel] **ɔɪl** 58  
 oil [on food] **ɔɪl** 24  
 old friend **əuld frend** 13  
 olives **'ɒlivz** 24  
 omit **ə'mit** 80  
 on [place] **ɒn** 90  
 on and off **ɒn ə:nd ɒf** 75  
 on board **ɒn bɔ:d** 78  
 on business **ɒn 'bɪznɪs** 78  
 on display **ɒn dr'spleɪ** 78  
 on earth **ɒn ɜ:θ** 6  
 on fire **ɒn 'faɪə** 78  
 on my/your own **ɒn mai/jɔ:r əʊn**  
     15, 96  
 on purpose **ɒn 'pɜ:pəs** 78  
 on record **ɒn 'rekɔ:d** 58  
 on strike **ɒn straɪk** 78  
 on the first/second (etc.) floor  
     ɒn ðə fɜ:st/'sekənd flɔ: 17  
 on the Internet **ɒn ði 'ɪntənet** 55  
 on the one hand  
     ɒn ðə wʌn hænd 97  
 on the other hand  
     ɒn ði 'ʌðə hænd 97  
 on the outskirts  
     ɒn ði 'autskɔ:ts 17  
 on the phone **ɒn ðə fəʊn** 53, 78  
 on the way **ɒn ðə weɪ** 31  
 on the whole **ɒn ðə heʊl** 75, 97  
 on time **ɒn taim** 60, 78  
 once **wʌns** 69  
 once a week/month (etc.)  
     wʌns ə wi:k/mʌnθ 16  
 once again **wʌns ə'gen** 99  
 once or twice **wʌns ɔ: twaɪs** 75  
 one day **wʌn deɪ** 60  
 one pound coin **wʌn paʊnd**  
     kɔ:n 19  
 one of the advantages of ...  
     wʌn ɒv ði əd'ventɪdʒ ɒv 97  
 onion **'ʌnjən** 24  
 only child **'əʊnlɪ tsaɪld** 13  
 open space **'əʊpən speɪs** 27  
 opera (singer) **'ɒpərə** 44  
 operate on sb **'ɒpəreɪt ɒn**  
     'sʌmbɒdi 35  
 operating system  
     'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ 'sistəm 54  
 operation **'ɒpə'reɪʃən** 20  
 opposite **'ɒpəzɪt** 1  
 or so **ɔ: səʊ** 95  
 orchestra **'ɔ:kɪstrə** 44  
 ordinary **'ɔ:dnəri** 10  
 organisation **'ɔ:gənəɪzaɪ'seɪʃən** 38  
 organise **'ɔ:gənaɪz** 38  
 otherwise **'ʌðəwaɪz** 94  
 out [not there] **aut** 53  
 out of **aut ɒv** 90  
 out of order **aut ɒv 'ɔ:de** 19, 30  
 out of the blue **aut ɒv ðə blu:** 75  
 out of work **aut ɒv wɜ:k** 39  
 out-of-date **autəv'deɪt** 78  
 outside lane **'autsaɪd leɪn** 29  
 outstanding **aut'stʌndɪŋ** 42  
 oven **'ʌvn** 18, 25  
 over [more than] **'əʊvə** 6  
 over [movement] **'əʊvə** 90  
 overcharge **əʊvə'tʃa:ʒ** 70  
 overhead locker **'əʊvəhed 'lɒkə**  
     47  
 oversleep **əʊvə'e'sli:p** 65  
 overtake **əʊvə'e'teɪk** 29  
 overtime **'əʊvətaɪm** 36  
 overweight **'əʊvəweɪt** 10  
 owe **əʊ** 19  
 own adj **əʊn** 18, 37  
 own v **əʊn** 17, 26, 37  
 owner **əʊnə** 37  
 pack **pæk** 70  
 package holiday **'pækɪdʒ**  
     'hɒlədeɪ 46  
 packed **'pækɪt** 50  
 packet **'pækɪt** 64  
 pain **peɪn** 20  
 painful **'peɪnfəl** 20, 72  
 painless **'peɪnləs** 72  
 pair **peə** 64  
 palace **'pælis** 50  
 panini **pæ'nini** 49  
 paper [newspaper] **'peɪpə** 52  
 paperwork **'peɪpəwɜ:k** 38  
 parade **pə'reɪd** 45  
 parcel **'pa:səl** 29

- parked car **pa:kɪt kɑ:** 29  
 parrot **'pə:tɪt** 8  
 part of speech **pa:t ɒv spi:tʃ** 3  
 partly **'pa:tli** 67  
 partner **'pa:tner** 31  
 part-time **pa:t'taɪm** 37  
 pass an exam **pa:s ən ɪg'zə:m** 33  
 passenger **'pə:sɪŋgə** 47  
 password **'pa:swɔ:d** 54  
 paste **peɪst** 54  
 patient adj **'peɪsənt** 11  
 patient n **'peɪsənt** 20  
 pause **pəʊz** 4  
 pavement **'peɪvmənt** 29  
 pay n, v **pei** 36  
 pay attention **pei ə'tenʃən** 76  
 pay back **pei bæk** 19, 40  
 pay rise **pei raɪz** 37  
 PC **pi:'si:** 54, 100  
 peace and quiet **pi:s ənd 'kwaɪət** 75  
 peaceful **'pi:sfəl** 72  
 peach **pi:tʃ** 24  
 pear **peə** 24  
 peas **pi:z** 24  
 pedestrian **pi'destrɪən** 29  
 pedestrian crossing  
    **pə'destrɪən 'krɔ:sɪŋ** 29  
 peel **pi:l** 25  
 pencil sharpener  
    **'pensəl 'ʃa:pənə** 31  
 per cent **pɜ:sent** 40, 61  
 percentage **pə'sentɪdʒ** 40  
 perform **pe'fɔ:m** 44  
 performance **pe'fɔ:məns** 44  
 permanent **'pɜ:mənənt** 1  
 permission **pə'mɪʃən** 66  
 personal (opinion) **'pɜ:sənəl** 72  
 personal details  
    **'pɜ:sənəl 'da:i:təlz** 96  
 personal statement  
    **'pɜ:sənəl 'steɪtmənt** 96  
 personally **'pɜ:sənəli** 67  
 persuade **pə'sweɪd** 88  
 pet **pet** 8  
 phone **fəʊn** 100  
 phone sb back **fəʊn 'sʌmbədi bæk** 53  
 phonemic symbol  
    **fe'nɪ:mɪk 'sɪmbəl** 3, 4  
 photo **'fəʊtəʊ** 100  
 photocopier **'fəʊtəʊ,kɔ:pɪə** 38  
 phrasal verb **'freɪzəl vɜ:b** 4  
 phrase **freɪz** 3, 4  
 pianist **'pi:ənist** 44  
 piano **pi'ənəʊ** 44  
 pick **pɪk** 27  
 pick sb up [collect sb] **pɪk 'sʌmbədi ʌp** 79  
 pick sth up [learn] **pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 33  
 pick sth up [collect sth]  
    **pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 46  
 pick sth up [lift sth from the floor] **pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 79  
 pie **paɪ** 25  
 piece **pi:s** 64, 86  
 pill **pɪl** 20  
 pillow **'pɪləʊ** 18  
 pilot **'paɪlət** 35  
 pineapple **'paineplə** 24  
 pink **piŋk** 63  
 pipe **paɪp** 35  
 pitch **pɪtʃ** 41  
 place [town/building] **pleɪs** 50  
 plan **pλn** 35  
 plane **pleɪn** 100  
 planet **'plænɪt** 6  
 plant n **pla:nt** 27  
 plant v **pla:nt** 58  
 plastic **'plæstɪk** 63  
 platform **'plætfɔ:m** 28  
 play (a game) **pleɪ** 41  
 play against sb **pleɪ ə'genst 'sʌmbədi** 42  
 pleasant **'pleɪzənt** 11  
 Please accept our apologies  
    for ... **pliz ək'sept 'auər ə'pɒlədʒiz fɔ:** 98  
 Please could you ... **pliz kʊd ju:?** 98  
 plenty **'plenti** 51, 64  
 plug **plʌg** 31  
 plug sth in **plag 'sʌmθɪŋ in** 31  
 plumber **'plʌmə** 35  
 plus **plʌs** 61  
 PM **pi:'em** 100  
 pocket **'pɒkit** 21  
 pocket money **'pɒkit 'mʌni** 86  
 podcast **'pɒdka:sət** 52  
 poet **'pəʊɪt** 43  
 poetry **'pəʊɪtri** 43  
 point [decimal point] **pɔɪnt** 61  
 point [idea] **pɔɪnt** 67  
 point of view **pɔɪnt ɒv vju:** 97  
 pointed **'pɔɪntɪd** 63  
 Poland **'pəulənd** 5  
 police force **pə'lɪ:s fɔ:s** 35  
 police officer **pə'lɪ:s 'ɒfɪsə** 35  
 policy **'pɒlɪsi** 57  
 Polish **'pəʊliʃ** 5  
 polite **pə'lait** 66  
 politely **pə'laitli** 91  
 political **pə'lɪtɪkəl** 57  
 political party **pə'lɪtɪkəl 'pa:ti** 57  
 pollution **pə'lju:ʃən** 26  
 pop music **pɒp 'mju:zɪk** 44  
 popular **'pɒpjələ** 44, 71  
 popularity **,pɒpjə'lɪ:tɪ** 71  
 population **,pɒpjə'leɪʃən** 5  
 pork **pɔ:k** 24  
 Portuguese **pɔ:tʃə'gi:z** 5  
 positive **'pozətɪv** 11  
 post n [different meanings]  
    **pəʊst** 3  
 post [message] **pəʊst** 55  
 postgraduate **,pəʊst'grædʒuət** 34  
 postpone **pəʊst'pəʊn** 80  
 pour (with rain) **pɔ:** 7  
 powerful **'paʊəfəl** 57  
 prawns **prɔ:nz** 24  
 predict (the future) **pri'dikt** 74  
 prefer **pri'fɜ:** 68  
 prefix **'pri:fɪks** 4
- pregnancy **'pregnənsi** 15  
 pregnant **'pregnənt** 15  
 preparation **,prepə'reisən** 33  
 preposition **,prepə'zɪʃən** 4  
 pretty [attractive] **'prɪti** 10  
 pretty [rather] **'prɪti** 91  
 pride **praɪd** 12  
 primary school **'praiməri skul** 32  
 Prime Minister **praɪm 'ministe** 57  
 print **print** 54  
 print sth out **print 'sʌmθɪŋ aut** 54  
 printer **'printə** 54  
 prison **'prɪzən** 56  
 private **'praɪvət** 32  
 proceed **prə'si:d** 95  
 produce v **prə'dju:s** 36, 38  
 product **'prɒdʌkt** 36  
 production **prə'dʌlkʃən** 38  
 profession **prə'feʃən** 35  
 profit **'profɪt** 40  
 progress n **'prəʊgrəs** 86  
 promise (+ obj) that **'prɒmɪs ðət** 88  
 promise to do sth **'prɒmɪs tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ** 87  
 promote **prə'məut** 37  
 promotion **prə'meūʃən** 37  
 pronoun **'prəʊnaʊn** 4  
 pronounce **prə'naʊns** 31  
 pronunciation **prə,nʌnsi'eɪʃən** 31  
 properly **'prɒpəli** 19  
 protect **prə'tekt** 8, 59  
 protection **prə'tekʃən** 51  
 proud **praud** 12  
 proud (of) **12**  
 provide **prə'veɪd** 57  
 psychologist **sar'kɒlədʒɪst** 36  
 psychology **sar'kɒlədʒɪ** 36  
 public transport  
    **'pʌblɪk 'trænsپɔ:t** 27, 28, 73  
 publish **'pʌblɪʃ** 52  
 punctuation **,pʌŋktʃu'eɪʃən** 4  
 punish **'pʌniʃ** 32, 56  
 punishment **'pʌniʃmənt** 56  
 pupil **'pjʊ:pəl** 32  
 purchase **'pɜ:tʃəs** 95  
 purple **'pɜ:pəl** 63  
 purpose **'pɜ:pəs** 94  
 push **poʃ** 82  
 put on make-up **put ɒn 'meɪkʌp** 16  
 put on weight **put ɒn weɪt** 74  
 put sb through **put 'sʌmbədi əru:** 53  
 put sth back **put 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk** 79  
 put sth off **put 'sʌmθɪŋ of** 80  
 put sth on [make equipment work] **put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn** 79  
 put sth up [raise] **put 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 79  
 put sth on [put clothes on your body] **put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn** 21, 79, 80

- qualification *kwɒlfɪ'keɪʃən* 34, 96  
qualified *'kwɒlɪfaɪd* 34  
qualify *'kwɒlfai* 34  
quality *'kwɒlɪti* 39  
quantity *'kwɒntɪtɪ* 64  
quarter [one quarter] *'kwɔ:tə* 61  
quarter [three months] *'kwɔ:tə* 40  
question mark *'kwestʃən mɑ:k* 4  
queue n *kju:* 23, 28  
queue v *kju:* 30  
quiet *'kwaɪət* 26  
quietly *'kwaɪətlɪ* 91  
quit *kwɪt* 37  
quite *kwaɪt* 91  
quite a bit *kwaɪt ə bɪt* 95  
quite a long way *kwaɪt ə lɔ:y weɪ* 62  
quite likely *kwaɪt 'laɪklɪ* 74  
quite often *kwaɪt 'ɒfən* 91  
rabbit *'rʌbɪt* 8  
race n *reis* 42  
race v *reis* 41  
racing driver *'reisin 'draɪvə* 41  
rain n, v *rein* 7  
rainforest *'rein,fɔ:rɪst* 6  
raise *reɪz* 40  
range *reɪndʒ* 23  
rare [meat] *reə* 47  
rare [unusual] *reə* 8  
rarely *'reəli* 91  
rather *'ra:ðə* 91  
raw *rə:* 2, 25  
real *ri:əl* 63  
realise *'ri:əlaɪz* 88  
reality TV show  
*ri:'lætɪ,tɪ:vɪ:səʊ* 52  
really [very] *'ri:əli* 89  
really [to express surprise]  
*'ri:əli* 68  
reason *'ri:zən* 94  
reasonable *'ri:zənəbəl* 19, 22,  
reasonable (amount) 19  
recently *'ri:səntli* 60  
reception [in a hotel] *ri'sepʃən* 48  
reception [wedding party]  
*ri'sepʃən* 15  
recession *ri'seʃən* 40  
recipe *'resipi* 25  
recommend *rekə'mend* 46, 51  
recommend (+ing) *rekə'mend* 87  
recommend + that  
*rekə'mend ðət* 51, 88  
record n *'rekɔ:d* 42  
record v *ri'kɔ:d* 44  
recording studio  
*ri'kɔ:diŋ 'stju:drɪŋ* 44  
red pepper *red 'pepə* 24  
reduce *ri'dju:s* 57, 58  
reduction *ri'dʌkʃən* 57  
reference *'refərəns* 96  
refund n *'ri:fʌnd* 23  
regarding *ri'ga:dɪŋ* 95, 98  
region *'ri:dʒən* 6  
regional *'ri:dʒənəl* 52  
registration form  
*,redʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m* 96  
regret n, v *ri'gret* 98  
regular *'regjulə* 49  
regular (verb) *'regjulə* 4  
regularly *'regjuləli* 55  
reject v *ri'ժekt* 80  
relating to *ri'leɪtɪŋ tu:* 3  
relations *ri'leɪʃənz* 13  
relationship *ri'leɪʃənʃɪp* 15  
relatives *'relətɪvz* 13  
relax *ri'læks* 71  
relaxation *,ri'læk'seɪʃən* 71  
relaxed *ri'lækst* 32  
relevant *'reləvənt* 96  
reliable *ri'laɪəbəl* 11, 28, 72  
rely on *ri'laɪ ɒn* 77  
remarry *,ri'mæri* 13  
remind *ri'maɪnd* 88  
rent n, v *rent* 17, 19  
repair *ri'peə* 35  
repeat *ri'pi:t* 31  
repetition *,reptɪ'tɪʃən* 31  
replace *ri'pleɪs* 23  
reply n, v *ri'plai* 55, 66  
report *ri'pɔ:t* 52  
reporter *ri'pɔ:tə* 52  
represent *,reprɪ'zent* 35  
request n *ri'kwest* 66  
require *ri'kwaɪə* 95, 96  
research n *ri'sɜ:tʃ* 34  
reserve *ri'zɜ:v* 48  
resign *ri'zain* 37  
resignation *,rezɪg'nейʃən* 37  
responsible for *ri'spɒnsəbəl fɔ:* 36  
result [consequence] *ri'zʌlt* 58, 97  
result [in a competition] *ri'zʌlt* 42  
retake sth *ri'teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ* 33  
retire *ri'taɪə* 37  
retired *ri'taɪəd* 14  
retirement *ri'taɪəment* 14, 37  
review *ri'veju:* 46, 52  
reviewer *ri'vejuə* 43  
revise *ri'veɪz* 1, 33  
revision *ri'vezʃən* 33  
rewrite *'ri:raɪt* 70  
ride [a bike] *raɪd* 28  
right [exactly] *raɪt* 90  
right away *raɪt ə'weɪ* 75  
ring v *riŋ* 53  
ring [jewellery] n *riŋ* 21  
ring a bell *riŋ ə bel* 75  
rink *riŋk* 41  
rise n, v *raɪz* 40  
road sign *rəud sain* 29  
roast *rəʊst* 25  
rob *rob* 56  
robber *'robə* 56  
robbery *'robəri* 56  
rock *rok* 51  
rock climbing *rok 'klaimɪŋ* 41  
romantic comedy  
*rəʊ'mæntɪk 'kɒmədi* 43  
room [space] *ru:m* 86  
room service *ru:m 'sɜ:vɪs* 48  
roots *ru:ts* 27  
rough (sea) *rʌf* 51  
roughly *'rʌflɪ* 10, 14  
round [movement] *raund* 90  
round [shape] *raund* 63  
round the corner  
*raond ðə 'kɔ:nə* 28, 62  
routine *ru:tɪn* 1  
rub sth out *rʌb 'sʌmθɪŋ aut* 1, 31  
rubber *'rʌbə* 1, 31, 63  
rubbish *'rʌbɪʃ* 86  
rucksack *'rʌksæk* 21  
rug *rʌg* 18  
ruler *'ru:lə* 31  
run [manage] *rʌn* 36, 39  
run [use applications] *rʌn* 54  
run out of sth *rʌn aut ov*  
*'sʌmθɪŋ* 38  
runway *'rʌnweɪ* 47  
rush hour *rʌʃ 'auə* 26  
Russia *'rʌʃə* 5  
Russian *'rʌʃən* 5  
sack n, v *sæk* 37  
safe *seif* 26  
sail *seil* 41  
sailing *'seilɪŋ* 41  
sailor *'seilə* 35, 41  
salad *'sæləd* 24  
salad dressing *'sæləd 'dresɪŋ* 24  
salary *'sæləri* 36  
sales rep *seilz rep* 100  
salmon *'sælmən* 24  
same to you *seim tu: ju:* 69  
sand *sænd* 51  
sandy *'sændi* 51  
satisfied with *'sætɪsfaid wið* 77  
saucepan *'sɔ:spən* 25  
Saudi Arabia *'saudi ə'reibiə* 5  
Saudi Arabian *'saudi ə'reibiən* 5  
save [keep] *seiv* 54, 58  
save (up) *seiv* 19, 79  
saxophone *'sæksəfəʊn* 44  
saxophonist *sæk'safənist* 44  
say [give information in writing]  
*sei* 52, 67  
say + that *sei ðət* 88  
Scandinavia *,skændɪ'næviə* 5  
scared *skeəd* 12  
scarf *skɑ:f* 21  
scenery *'sɪnəri* 27, 86  
science *'saɪəns* 34  
science fiction *'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən* 43  
scientist *'saɪəntist* 71  
score a goal *skɔ:ər ə gəul* 74  
search n, v *sɜ:tʃ* 55, 59  
seaside resort *'sɪsайд ri'zɔ:t* 51  
season (in the year) *'si:zən* 27  
season ticket *'si:zən 'tɪkɪt* 28  
seat belt *si:t belt* 47  
second (time) *'sekənd* 60  
secondary school  
*'sekəndəri sku:l* 32  
secondly *'sekəndlɪ* 92  
secret *'si:kret* 57  
see [find out] *si:* 3

- see [use your eyes] **sī** 85  
 see the sights **sī ðə saits** 50  
 seem **sī:m** 85  
 seldom **'seldəm** 91  
 semi-circle **'semi'sɔ:kəl** 63  
 send my regards/love to  
**send mai rī'ga:dz/lʌv tu:** 99  
 sense of humour  
**sens ɒv 'hju:mə** 11  
 sensible **'sentsibəl** 11  
 series **'sɪəri:z** 52  
 serious [bad] **'sɪəri:əs** 20, 74  
 serious [important] **'sɪəri:əs** 15  
 serious [quiet] **'sɪəri:əs** 11  
 serve v **sɜ:v** 22  
 service **'sɜ:rvɪs** 48  
 set off **set ɒf** 80  
 set sth up **set 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 36, 39  
 several **'sevərəl** 64  
 shade **ʃeɪd** 51  
 shake hands **ʃeɪk hʌndz** 9, 69  
 shake your head **ʃeɪk jɔ: hed** 9  
 shall we ...? **ʃæl wi:** 66  
 share **ʃeə** 18, 31  
 shark **ʃɑ:k** 8  
 sharp (ly) **ʃa:p** 40  
 sharpen **'ʃa:pən** 31  
 shave **ʃeɪv** 16  
 sheet [of a bed] **ʃi:t** 18  
 sheet [of paper] **ʃi:t** 64  
 shelf **ʃelf** 23  
 shine **ʃin** 7  
 shining 7  
 shocked **ʃɒkt** 89  
 shocking **'ʃɒkɪŋ** 89  
 shoot **ʃʊt** 59  
 shop v **ʃɒp** 22  
 shop assistant **ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt** 22  
 shopping centre **'ʃɒpɪŋ**  
**'sentə** 23  
 shore **ʃɔ:** 51  
 short of sth **ʃɔ:t ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ** 77  
 shoulder **'ʃəuldə** 9  
 shout at/to sb **ʃaut ðt/tu:**  
**'sʌmbodi** 77  
 show sb around **ʃəu 'sʌmbodi**  
**ə'raʊnd** 38  
 shower [bath] **'ʃauə** 16  
 shower [of rain] **'ʃauə** 7  
 shy **ʃai** 11  
 sight **sait** 85  
 sights **saits** 50  
 sightseeing **'sartsɪŋ** 50  
 sign n **sain** 29  
 sign v **sain** 98  
 sign (of sth happening) **sain** 40  
 signature **'signɪtʃə** 96, 98  
 signed **saind** 96  
 significance **sig'nifikəns** 72  
 silence **'sailəns** 30  
 silently **'sailəntli** 1  
 silk **silk** 63  
 silly **'sili** 11  
 similar **'similə** 71, 77  
 similarity **'simi'læriti** 71  
 simple **'simpəl** 33  
 since [conjunction] **sins** 94, 99  
 since [preposition] **sins** 60  
 singer **'sɪŋə** 71  
 single [record] **'sɪngəl** 43  
 single room **'sɪngəl ru:m** 48  
 sink **sɪŋk** 18  
 sister-in-law **'sistərlə:** 13  
 situation **,sɪtju'eɪʃən** 69  
 size **saiz** 22, 62  
 ski v **ski:** 41  
 skiing holiday **'ski:ɪŋ 'hɒlədeɪ** 46  
 skills **skilz** 96  
 skin **skɪn** 9  
 skirt **skɜ:t** 21  
 skis **ski:z** 41  
 sky **skai** 7  
 sleep n **slɪ:p** 16  
 sleeping bag **'slɪ:pɪŋ bæg** 86  
 sleeve **slɪ:v** 21  
 slice **slaɪs** 64  
 slight **slæt** 40  
 slightly **'slælti** 40, 91  
 smart [well-dressed] **sma:t**  
 10, 21, 32  
 smell n, v **smel** 85  
 smile v **smail** 9  
 smooth **smu:ð** 1  
 smoothie **'smu:ði** 49  
 snack **snæk** 16  
 snake **sneɪk** 8  
 snow v **snəu** 7  
 snowing **'snəʊɪŋ** 7  
 snowy **'snəʊi** 7  
 so **səu** 94  
 so do/am I **səu du:/ð m ai** 68  
 so that **səu ðt** 94  
 soap opera **səʊp 'ɒpərə** 52  
 sociable **'səʊʃəbl** 72  
 social networking site  
**'səʊʃəl 'netwɜ:kɪŋ** sait 55  
 socket **'spkɪt** 31  
 sofa **'səufə** 18  
 soft **spft** 18  
 software **'spftweə** 54  
 sold out **səuld aut** 30  
 soldier **'səuldʒə** 35, 59  
 solo artist **'səuləu 'a:tɪst** 44  
 solution **sə'lju:sən** 58  
 some people believe ...  
**sʌm 'pi:pəl bɪ'lɪv** 97  
 something wrong with  
**'sʌmθɪŋ rəŋ wið** 77  
 songwriter **'spɔ:raɪtə** 44  
 sooner or later **'su:nər ə: 'leɪtə**  
 75  
 sore throat **sə: ðrəut** 20  
 sorry to disturb you  
**'spri tu: dɪs'tɜ:b ju:** 65  
 sorry to keep you waiting  
**'spri tu: ki:p ju: 'weɪtɪŋ** 65  
 sort of **sɔ:t ɒv** 76  
 sort sth out **sɔ:t 'sʌmθɪŋ aut** 79  
 sound **saund** 85  
 sour **'saʊə** 25  
 south **sauθ** 6  
 South America **sauθ ə'merɪkə** 5  
 South Korea **sauθ kə'rɪə** 5  
 south-east **sauθ 'i:st** 6
- south-west **sauθ 'west** 6  
 souvenir **,su:vəniə** 51  
 space **speis** 17  
 spacebar **'speisba:** 54  
 Spain **spein** 5  
 spam **spæm** 55  
 Spanish **'spænɪʃ** 5  
 spare room **speə ru:m** 18  
 spare time **speə taim** 16  
 sparkling **'spa:kəlɪŋ** 48  
 speaking [on the  
phone] **'spi:kɪŋ** 53  
 special offer **'speʃəl 'ɒfə** 23  
 spectacular **spek'trækjələ** 45  
 speech **spɪ:tʃ** 82  
 speed limit **spɪ:d 'lɪmit** 29  
 spell **spel** 31  
 spelling **'speliŋ** 31  
 spend (money) on **spend ɒn** 77  
 spend time **spend taim** 51, 74  
 spicy **'spaisi** 25  
 spider **'spaɪdə** 8  
 spill **spil** 19  
 spinach **'spɪnɪtʃ** 24  
 spoonful **'spu:nfol** 64  
 square adj, n **skweə** 63  
 St **seɪnt/strɪt** 100  
 stadium **'steɪdiəm** 41  
 stall **stɔ:l** 23  
 star [famous actor] **sta:** 43  
 starter **'sta:tə** 48  
 state education  
**steɪt ,edʒu'keɪʃən** 32  
 station  
[broadcasting] **'steɪʃən** 52  
 statue **'stɪ:tju:** 50  
 stay n **stei** 48  
 stay at school **stei ə:t sku:l** 32  
 stay behind **stei bi'haind** 32  
 stay in **stei ɪn** 16  
 stay out late **stei aut leit** 14  
 stay the same **stei ðə seim** 40  
 steal **stiel** 56  
 stepfather **'step,fɑ:rðə** 13  
 steps **steps** 17  
 sterling **'stɜ:liŋ** 19  
 stick **stik** 41  
 still [continuing] **stɪl** 93  
 still [of water] **stɪl** 48  
 stir **stɜ:** 25  
 stomach ache **'stʌmæk eɪk** 20  
 store **stɔ:** 54  
 storm **stɔ:m** 7  
 straight **streit** 10  
 straight away **streit ə'wei** 75  
 stranger **'streɪndʒə** 69  
 strawberry **'strɔ:bəri** 24  
 street market **streit 'ma:kɪt** 23  
 stress [emphasis] **stres** 4  
 stress [worry] **stres** 12  
 stressed **strest** 26  
 stressful **'stresful** 26  
 strict **strikt** 14, 32  
 stripe **straɪp** 63  
 stroll **strəʊl** 51  
 strong (wind) **strɒŋ** 7  
 study n **'stʌdi** 18

- stuff **stʌf** 95  
 student loan **'stju:dənt ləʊn** 19  
 stupid **'stju:pɪd** 11, 71  
 stupidity **stjur:pɪdəti** 71  
 student loan 19  
 stylish **'stailɪʃ** 21, 63  
 subject **'sʌbdʒɪkt** 32  
 subtraction **səb'trʌkʃən** 61  
 succeed (in doing sth) **sək'si:d** 34, 37  
 success **sək'ses** 37  
 successful **sək'sesfəl** 34, 37  
 suddenly **'sʌdnəli** 91  
 suffer **'sʌfə** 58  
 suffer from sth **'sʌfə frəm** 'sʌmθɪŋ 20  
 suffix **'sʌfɪks** 4  
 suggest (+-ing) **sə'gɛst x** 87  
 suggest + that **sə'gɛst ðət** 88  
 suggestion **sə'gɛstʃən** 66  
 suit n **suit** 21  
 suit v **su:t** 21, 22  
 suitable **'su:təbəl** 72  
 suitcase **'su:tkeɪs** 47  
 sun **sʌn** 7  
 sunbathe **'sʌnbɛɪð** 51  
 sunbathing **'sʌnbɛɪðɪŋ** 51  
 sunburn **'sʌnbɜ:n** 51  
 sun cream **sʌn kri:m** 51  
 sunglasses **'sʌn,gla:sɪz** 73  
 sunny **'sʌni** 7  
 sunscreen/sunblock **'sʌnskrɪ:n/'sʌnblok** 51  
 sunset **'sʌnset** 27  
 sunshine **'sʌnsain** 51  
 suntan **'sʌntən** 51  
 superb **su:'pɜ:b** 42  
 support [help] **sə'pɔ:t** 57, 98  
 sure **ʃɔ:** 66  
 surf the web **sɜ:f ðə web** 55  
 surface **'sɜ:fɪs** 6  
 surfing **'sɜ:fiŋ** 51  
 surgeon **'sɜ:ðən** 20, 35  
 surgery [an operation] **'sɜ:ðəri** 20  
 surgery [a place] **'sɜ:ðəri** 35  
 surrounded by **sə'raʊndɪd** **bəɪ** 27  
 swap (places) **swɒp** 31  
 sweater **'swetə** 21  
 sweets **swi:ts** 23  
 swerve **swɜ:v** 29  
 swimmer **'swimə** 41  
 swimming costume **'swimɪŋ 'kɒstju:m** 41  
 Swiss **swi:s** 5  
 switch sth off **swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ of** 58  
 switch sth on **swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ on** 46, 79  
 Switzerland **'swɪtsələnd** 5  
 syllable **'sɪləbəl** 4  
 synonym **'sɪnənɪm** 1  
 system **'sistəm** 32  
 tablet **'tæblət** 20  
 take [accept sth] **teɪk** 81  
 take [remove sth] **teɪk** 81  
 take [steal] **teɪk** 56, 81  
 take [write down] **teɪk** 81  
 take (size 12) **teɪk** 81  
 take (time) **teɪk** 60  
 take a break **teɪk ə breɪk** 81  
 take a course **teɪk ə kɔ:s** 81  
 take/make a decision **teɪk/meɪk ə dr'sɪzən** 81  
 take a look **teɪk ə lok** 81  
 take a photo **teɪk ə 'fəʊtəʊ** 81  
 take/have a shower **teɪk/hʌv ə 'ʃaʊə** 16, 81  
 take action **teɪk 'ækʃən** 58  
 take away **teɪk ə'weɪ** 49  
 take/do an exam **teɪk/du: ən ig'zəm** 33  
 take care **teɪk keə** 69  
 take/do exercise **teɪk/du: 'eksəsaɪz** 16, 81  
 take over sth **teɪk 'əvə 'sʌmθɪŋ** 39  
 take part **teɪk part** 42  
 take sb on **teɪk 'sʌmbədi on** 79  
 take sth back **teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk** 79  
 take sth off **teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ of** 21, 80  
 take sth up **teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp** 39  
 take things/it easy **teɪk θɪŋz/it 'i:zi** 81  
 takeaway **'teɪkəwei** 16  
 take-off **'teɪkɒf** 47  
 talent **'tælənt** 11  
 talented **'tæləntɪd** 11  
 tallish (person) **tɔ:lɪf** 10  
 tall person/tree/building **tɔ:l 'pɜ:sən/tri:/'bɪldɪŋ** 62  
 tap **tæp** 18, 58  
 taste [flavour] n, v **teɪst** 25, 85  
 taste [what you like] **teɪst** 44  
 tasty **'teɪsti** 25  
 tax **tæks** 57  
 taxi rank **'tæksi ræŋk** 28  
 teaching **'ti:tʃɪŋ** 34  
 team **ti:m** 42, 96  
 tear v **teə** 19  
 teenager **'ti:n,eɪtʃə** 14  
 teens **ti:nz** 14  
 tell + obj + that **tel ðət** 88  
 tell sb a joke **tel 'sʌmbədi ə dʒəuk** 74  
 telly **'teli** 100  
 temperature **'temprətʃə** 6, 20  
 temple **'tempəl** 50  
 ten pound note **ten paund** **nəut** 19  
 tent **tent** 41, 86  
 term **tɜ:m** 32  
 terminal (building) **'tɜ:minəl** 47  
 terribly sorry **'terəbli 'spri** 65, 74  
 terrific **tə'rɪfɪk** 89, 95  
 terrifying **'terəfaiɪŋ** 89  
 text v **tekst** 53  
 texting **'tekstɪŋ** 53  
 Thai **tai** 5  
 Thailand **'taɪlənd** 5  
 thank goodness/God **ðə nk 'gudnəs/god** 69  
 thank sb (for sth) **ðə nk 'sʌmbədi** 88
- 98  
 thanks (very much) **ðə nk s** 65  
 that/it depends **ðət/it dr'pendz** 76  
 that sort/kind of thing **ðət sɔ:t/kaɪnd ɒv θɪŋ** 76  
 that's a great idea **ðət ə greit ai'dɪə** 66  
 that's a pity **ðət ə 'pɪti** 22  
 that's a shame **ðət ə 'seim** 22  
 that's all right/okay **ðət ɔ:l rait/ə'kei** 65  
 that's to say **ðət tu: sei** 100  
 that's very kind of you **ðət 'veri kaɪnd ɒv ju:** 65  
 the best/worst thing about ... **ðə best/wɜ:st θɪŋ ə'baut** 27  
 the cold **ðə kəuld** 7  
 the last time **ðə la:st taim** 60  
 the news **ðə nju:z** 52  
 the other day **ði 'ʌðə dei** 60  
 the thing is ... **ðə θɪŋ iz** 95  
 theft **θeft** 56  
 there's something wrong with ... **ðeəz 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wið ...** 19  
 therefore **'ðeəfɔ:** 94  
 these days **ði:z deɪz** 60  
 thick [not thin] **θɪk** 62  
 thick fog **θɪk fog** 7  
 thief **θi:f** 56  
 thin **θɪn** 62  
 think of (+-ing) **θɪŋk ɒv** 77, 87  
 though **ðəʊ** 93  
 thousand **'θauzənd** 61  
 three quarters **θri: 'kwɔ:təz** 61  
 thriller **'θrɪlə** 43  
 through **θru:** 90  
 throw sth away **θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ** ə'weɪ 23, 58  
 throw sth to/at sb **θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ** tu:/ðt 'sʌmbədi 77  
 thumb **θʌm** 9  
 thunder **'θʌndə** 7  
 thunderstorm **'θʌndəstɔ:m** 7  
 tick **tɪk** 3  
 tie **tai** 21  
 tiger **'tægə** 8  
 tight **tæt** 22  
 tights **tæts** 21  
 tiles **taɪlz** 18  
 time (for us) to go/leave (etc.) **taɪm tu: gəu/li:v** 60  
 times **taiムz** 61  
 timetable **'taɪm,teɪbəl** 32  
 tin (of fruit, etc.) **tin** 64  
 tiny **'tæni** 62, 89  
 tip [advice] **tip** 2, 96  
 tip [money] **tip** 2  
 tired **'taɪəd** 89  
 tired of sth **taɪəd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ** 77  
 tiring **'taɪəriŋ** 89  
 tissue **'tɪʃu:** 63  
 to be honest **tu: bi: 'ɒnɪst** 75  
 to begin with **tu: bi'gin wið** 92  
 to some extent **tu: sʌm ik'stent** 67  
 toast **toast** 86  
 toastie **'təʊsti** 49

- toddler *tɒdlə* 14  
 toe *teʊ* 9  
 tomato *tə'mætəʊ* 24  
 too *tu:* 93  
 toothbrush *'tu:θbrʌʃ* 73  
 toothpaste *'tu:θpeɪst* 73  
 top *tɒp* 21  
 top floor *tɒp flɔ:* 17  
 topic *'tɒpɪk* 2  
 totally *'tətəlɪ* 67, 91  
 touch n, v *tʌtʃ* 85  
 tournament *'tuənəmənt* 42  
 towards *te'wə:dz* 90  
 town centre *taʊn 'sentə* 26  
 toy *tɔɪ* 63  
 track [music] *træk* 43  
 track [sport] *træk* 41  
 tractor *'træk'tər* 27  
 trade *treɪd* 40  
 tradition *trə'dɪʃən* 44  
 traditional *trə'dɪʃənl* 45, 72  
 traffic jam *'træk'fɪk dʒæm* 26  
 traffic light(s) *'træk'lɪt* 29, 73  
 trainers *'treɪnəz* 21  
 training *'treɪnɪŋ* 37  
 translate (sth into sth) *trænz'leɪt* 2, 71, 77  
 translation *trænz'leɪʃən* 2, 71  
 translator *trænz'leɪtə* 71  
 travel agent *trævəl 'eɪgənt* 73  
 tray *treɪ* 49  
 treat *tri:t* 35  
 tree *tri:* 27  
 trend *trend* 40  
 trolley *'trɔli* 23, 47  
 trousers *'trauzəz* 21  
 truck *trʌk* 28  
 trumpet *'trʌmpɪt* 44  
 trumpeter *'trʌmpɪtə* 44  
 trunk *trʌŋk* 8  
 trust *trʌst* 11  
 try sth on *trai 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn* 22  
 try/do your best *trai/du: jɔ:b*  
     best 33  
 T-shirt *'ti:fɜ:t* 21, 73  
 tube *tju:b* 64  
 tune *tju:n* 44  
 Turkey *'tɜ:ki* 5  
 Turkish *'tɜ:kiʃ* 5  
 turn sth down [reduce volume] *tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn* 31  
 turn sth/sb down [reject] *tɜ:n*  
     'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmbədi daʊn 80  
 turn sth off *tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf* 80  
 turn sth on *tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn* 80  
 turn sth up *tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp* 31  
 turning *'tɜ:nɪŋ* 29  
 twenty-euro note *trɪn*  
     twentysix-euro note 19  
 twentyish *trɪn*  
     twentysix 10  
 twice *trwaɪs* 69  
 twin(s) *trɪn* 13  
 twin room *trɪn ru:m* 48  
 type v *taɪp* 38, 96  
 ugly *'ʌgli* 10  
 UK *jʊ:kɪ* 5  
 UN *'ju:n* 100  
 unable *ʌn'eibəl* 70  
 unbelievable *,ʌnbɪ'lɪxəbəl* 72  
 uncle *'ʌŋkəl* 13  
 uncomfortable *ʌn'kʌmfθəbəl*  
     70, 72  
 uncountable  
     (noun) *ʌn'kaʊntəbəl* 4  
 under [movement] *'ʌndə* 90  
 under arrest *'ʌndər ə'rest* 56  
 under one roof *'ʌndə wʌn*  
     ru:f 23  
 undergraduate *'ʌndə'grædʒuət*  
     34  
 underneath *'ʌndə'nɪ:θ* 90  
 undo *ʌn'du:* 21  
 unemployed *ʌnɪm'plɔɪd* 37  
 unemployment *ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt*  
     37  
 unfair *ʌn'feə* 70  
 unfashionable *ʌn'fæʃənəbəl* 72  
 unforgettable *ʌnfə'getəbəl* 72  
 unfriendly *ʌn'frendli* 11  
 uniform *'ju:nɪfɔ:rm* 32  
 United States of America  
     jur'naitɪd steɪts ɒv ə'merɪkə 5  
 unkind *ʌn'kaind* 11  
 unless *ən'les* 94  
 unlikely *ʌn'lɑ:kli* 70  
 unlock *ʌn'lɒk* 70  
 unlucky *ʌn'ləki* 70  
 unnecessary *ʌn'nesəsəri* 2  
 unpack *ʌn'pæk* 70  
 unpleasant *ʌn'plezənt* 11  
 unreasonable *ʌn'rɪ:zənəbəl* 72  
 unreliable *ʌn'rɪ'laiəbəl* 11, 72  
 unsociable *ʌn'səʊʃəbəl* 72  
 unsuccessful *ʌnsək'sesfəl* 34  
 unsuitable *ʌn'suitəbəl* 72  
 untidy *ʌn'taɪdi* 2  
 until *ən'tɪl* 60  
 up [further along] *ʌp* 62  
 up [not in bed] *ʌp* 27  
 up and down *ʌp ɒnd daʊn* 76  
 up to *ʌp tu:* 45  
 upload *ʌp'ləud* 55  
 upset adj *ʌp'set* 12  
 upstairs *ʌp'steəz* 17  
 up-to-date *,ʌptə'deɪt* 78  
 urgently *'ɜ:ðəntli* 91  
 USA *ju:es'eɪ* 5  
 use n *ju:s* 31  
 use v *ju:z* 31  
 used to *ju:sd tu:* 68  
 useful *ju:sfəl* 72  
 useless *ju:sles* 72  
 username *'ju:zəneɪm* 54  
 utility room *ju:tɪlɪtɪ ru:m* 18  
 valley *'væli* 27  
 value *'vælju:* 40  
 value for money  
     'velju:fɔ:'mʌni 19, 26  
 van *væn* 28  
 variety *və'raɪəti* 26, 39  
 vase *væz* 64  
 vast majority *vɑ:st*  
     'mædʒorɪtɪ 61  
 veal *vɪ:l* 24  
 vegetarian *'vedʒɪ'teəriən* 24, 49  
 vehicle *'vi:kəl* 28  
 verb *vɜ:b* 4  
 vet *vet* 36, 100  
 via *'vaiə* 29  
 victory *'viktəri* 42  
 video clip *'vɪdiə klip* 55  
 view *vju:* 17  
 village *'vɪlɪdʒ* 27  
 vinegar *'vɪnɪgə* 24  
 violence *'vaiələns* 59  
 violent *'vaiələnt* 59  
 violin *'vaiə'lɪn* 44  
 violinist *'vaiə'lɪnist* 44  
 virus [computer] *'vairəs* 54  
 visa application form  
     'vi:zə, ɒplɪ'keɪʃən fɔ:m 96  
 vitally important *'vaiələtɪ*  
     im'pɔ:tənt 74  
 vocational training *vəʊ'keɪʃənəl*  
     'treɪnɪŋ 32  
 volleyball *'vɒlibɔ:l* 51  
 vote *vəʊt* 57  
 vowel *'vauəl* 33  
 wage *weɪdʒ* 36  
 waffle *'wɔfl* 49  
 waist *weɪst* 9  
 wait and see *weɪt ɒnd si:* 76  
 wake (up) *weɪk* 79  
 wake (sb) up *weɪk ʌp* 16  
 war *wɔ:* 59  
 wardrobe *'wɔ:drəʊb* 22  
 warn (+ obj + inf) *wɔ:n* 88  
 warning *'wɔ:nɪŋ* 30  
 wash n, v *wɔʃ* 16  
 washbasin *'wɔʃ,bɛɪsən* 18  
 washing [dirty clothes] *'wɔʃɪŋ* 16  
 washing machine *'wɔʃɪŋ*  
     mə'ʃɪn 18  
 waste *weɪst* 19, 58  
 waste of money *weɪst ɒv*  
     'mʌni 19  
 watch *wɒtʃ* 85  
 waterfall *'wɔ:təfɔ:l* 6  
 wave to somebody  
     weɪv tu: 'sʌmbədi 9  
 waves (in the sea) *weɪvz* 51  
 wavy *'weɪvi* 10  
 way [route] *wei* 29  
 we could ... *wi: kud* 66  
 weak *wi:k* 71  
 weakness *'wi:kнəs* 71  
 wear *wei* 32  
 weather forecast  
     'weðə 'fɔ:ka:st 52  
 webcam *'webkəm* 55  
 website *'websaɪt* 55  
 wedding *'wedɪŋ* 15  
 weekend break *wi:kend*  
     breɪk 46  
 weekly *'wi:kli* 1, 52  
 weigh *wei* 10, 47  
 weight *weɪt* 10  
 well *wel* 10  
 well aware *wel ə'weə* 74  
 well done [meat] *wel dʌn* 48  
 well known *wel nəʊn* 52

west <b>west</b> 6	while [comparing] <b>'wail</b> 93	work [function] <b>wɜ:k</b> 19, 38
wet <b>wet</b> 7	while [during] <b>'wail</b> 92	work experience <b>wɜ:k ɪk'spiəriəns</b> 96
whale <b>weɪl</b> 8	Who's calling? <b>hu:z 'kɔ:lɪŋ</b> 53	work on sth <b>wɜ:k ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 33
What are you up to? <b>wɒt a: ju: ʌp tu:</b> 95	Why don't we ...? <b>wai dəʊnt wi: 66</b>	work out <b>wɜ:k aut</b> 41
What do you do? <b>wɒt du: ju: du:</b> 36	Why not? <b>wai not</b> 76	work sth out <b>wɜ:k 'sʌmθɪŋ aut</b> 61
What do you do for a living? <b>wɒt du: ju: du: fɔ:r ə 'lɪvɪŋ</b> 36	wide [not narrow] <b>waɪd</b> 62	worry about sth <b>'wʌri ə'baut</b> <b>'sʌmθɪŋ</b> 77
What do you think of/about ...? <b>wɒt du: ju: θɪŋk ɒv/ə'baut</b> 67	wide awake <b>waɪd ə'weɪk</b> 74	worth [value] <b>wɜ:θ</b> 56
What does he/she look like? <b>wɒt dəz hi:/fi: lʊk laɪk?</b> 10	wide choice <b>waɪd tʃɔɪs</b> 74	worth (+ noun/-ing) <b>wɜ:θ</b> 50
What does that involve? <b>wɒt dəz ðət ɪn'velv?</b> 36	wide range <b>waɪd reɪndʒ</b> 23	would rather <b>wud 'ra:ðə</b> 68
What does X mean? <b>wɒt dəz eks mi:n</b> 31	wide vocabulary <b>waɪd və'kʌbjələri</b> 33, 74	wow <b>wau</b> 31
What does X stand for? <b>wɒt dəz eks stʌnd fɔ:</b> 100	widow <b>'widəʊ</b> 13	wrap <b>rʌp</b> 49
What for? <b>wɒt fɔ:</b> 76	width <b>wɪtθ</b> 62	wrist <b>rɪst</b> 9
what if <b>wɒt if</b> 76	wi-fi password <b>wai.far</b> <b>'pa:sfwɜ:d</b> 46	write down <b>raɪt daʊn</b> 2
What's he/she/it like? <b>wɒts hi:/fi:/it laɪk?</b> 11	wild (animals) <b>waɪld</b> 8	wrong number <b>rwɪg 'nʌmbə</b> 53
what's more <b>wɒts mɔ:</b> 93	willing <b>'wilɪŋ</b> 33	yard <b>ja:d</b> 62
What's on? <b>wɒts ɒn</b> 43	win <b>win</b> 42	yawn <b>jə:n</b> 9
What's your job? <b>wɒts jo: ðəb</b> 36	wind n <b>wind</b> 7	yet <b>jet</b> 93
wheelchair <b>'wi:ltʃeə</b> 73	windsurfing <b>'wɪndsr:fɪŋ</b> 51	yoga <b>'jəʊgə</b> 41
whereas <b>weər'zəz</b> 93	windy <b>'wɪndi</b> 7	you (don't) get ... <b>ju: get</b> 26, 27
whether <b>'weðə</b> 94	wing <b>wɪŋ</b> 8	you know <b>ju: nəʊ</b> 76
	winner <b>'winə</b> 42	you must be joking <b>ju: mʌst bi:</b> <b>'fəʊkiŋ</b> 76
	wish <b>wɪʃ</b> 11	Yours faithfully/sincerely <b>jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/sɪn'siəli</b> 98
	won't be long <b>waʊnt bi: lɒŋ</b> 65	zero <b>'zɪərəʊ</b> 61
	wonderful <b>'wʌndəfəl</b> 89	zip <b>zip</b> 21
	wood <b>wud</b> 35	zoo <b>zu:</b> 8
	wooden <b>'wudən</b> 18, 63	
	woods <b>wudz</b> 27	

# Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: B = Below, BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, BC = Below Centre, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, L = Left, R = Right, T = Top, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

## Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from GettyImages.

p. 10 (Kazuo): Siri Stafford/DigitalVision; p. 10 (Eun): Layland Masuda/Moment; p. 10 (Andrey): Neustockimages/E+; p. 10 (Donata): Lava; p. 10 (Rafael): Jon Feingersh/Blend Images; p. 14: Bertrand Demee/photographer's Choice RF; p. 18 (TL): Stephen Alvarez/National Geographic; p. 18 (CL): Keren Su/China Span/China Span; p. 18 (BL): Jane Sweeney/The Image Bank; p. 18 (R): Oleksiy Maksymenko; p. 22 (parrot): Zedcor Wholly Owned/photoObjects.net/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (rabbit): Life On White/photodisc; p. 22 (mouse): Joseph Zellner/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (donkey): Ralf Kraft/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (snake): Simon Murrell/Cultura; p. 22 (frog): Miroslaw Kijewski/E+; p. 22 (bull): nicolasprimola/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (spider): Thomas Bedenk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (goat): Eric Issele/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (monkey): Catherine Ledner/Stone; p. 22 (camel): jamesbenet/E+; p. 22 (giraffe): kotomiti/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (tiger): luamduan/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (lion) & p. 22 (bee): GlobalP/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (leopard): Eric Issele/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (bear): JackF/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (elephant): DaddyBit/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (ant): Henrik\_L/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (mosquito): Anest/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (fly): Antagain/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (butterfly): AmbientIdeas/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (whale): freestylephoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (dolphin): DrPAS/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 22 (shark), p. 134 (paper), p. 135 (Ex 64.2.3) & p. 135 (Ex 64.2.9): Dorling Kindersley; p. 22 (octopus): Mike Hargreaves/photolibrary; p. 26 (straight): Mike Harrington/Stone; p. 26 (wavy): Nick Dolding/Stone; p. 26 (curly), p. 138 (photo 6) & p. 138 (photo 12): Plume Creative/DigitalVision; p. 26 (hair): VladTeodor/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 28: Tempura/E+; p. 30: Patrick Foto/Moment; p. 32 (T), p. 92 (comedies), p. 92 (complicated), p. 112 (BL), p. 116 (B), p. 140 (CL), p. 136 (photo 3) & p. 138 (photo 7): Hero Images; p. 32 (B): Dave Nagel/The Image Bank; p. 34: H. Armstrong Roberts/ClassicStock/Archive photos; p. 37: Jupiterimages/Stockbyte; p. 39: Erik Isakson; p. 40: David Clapp/Oxford Scientific; p. 44 (10 pound): Bank of England; p. 44 (20 euro): The European Central bank; p. 44 (50 dollar): malerapaso/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 44 (one pound): claudiividizia/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 44 (one euro), p. 89 (skiing) & p. 89 (swimming): Westend61/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 44 (one dollar): Usmint.gov; p. 44 (woman): ariwasabi/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 44 (cashpoint): Ken Welsh/Design Pics; p. 48 (TL): Vincent Besnault/DigitalVision; p. 48 (TR): David Lees/DigitalVision; p. 48 (CL): Thomas Barwick/DigitalVision; p. 48 (BL): vgajic/E+; p. 48 (CR): Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision; p. 50 (B): Monkey Business Images/Stockbroker/Monkey Business/Getty Images Plus; p. 50 (T): Nurphoto; p. 50 (customer 1): 4x6; p. 50 (customer 3): Ivanko\_Brnjakovic; p. 51: Thomas Barwick/Iconica; p. 52 (T): Cultura RM Exclusive/Line Klein/Cultura Exclusive; p. 52 (B): Apeloga AB/Cultura; p. 53: Ken Welsh/Design Pics/Perspectives; p. 54 (peach):

yvdavyd/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (pear) & (garlic): RedHelga/E+; p. 54 (pineapple): Tim Hawley/photolibrary; p. 54 (strawberry): Rosemary Calvert/photographer's Choice; p. 54 (melon): Smneedham/photolibrary; p. 54 (grapes): JazzIRT/E+; p. 54 (lemon): Davies and Starr/The Image Bank; p. 54 (olives): Laszlo Selly/photolibrary; p. 54 (coconut): Viktar Malyshchyts/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (beans): fotogal/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (aubergine): mr\_Prof/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (peas): li\_jingwang/E+; p. 54 (courgette): Daniel Loiselle/E+; p. 54 (onion): Natikka/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (bell pepper): Lew Robertson/StockFood Creative; p. 54 (cabbage): chengyu zheng/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (carrot): rimglow/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (broccoli): loops7/E+; p. 54 (mushrooms): MaxRiesgo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (spinach): Florea Marius Catalin/E+; p. 54 (lettuce): Craig Allsop/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (tomato): Stuart Minzey/photographer's Choice RF; p. 54 (cucumber): JohnGollop/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (olive oil): hilmi\_m/E+; p. 54 (vinegar): Blaz Kure/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 54 (prawns): Ermin Gutenberger/E+; p. 54 (mussels): Floortje/E+; p. 54 (crab): malerapaso/E+; p. 54 (fish): italiaStock/artzoeks; p. 56 (barbecue): Steve Wisbauer/photolibrary; p. 56 (grill): monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (saucepans): schulzie/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (pan): Paul Poplis/photolibrary; p. 56 (oven): gerenme/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 56 (apple pie): Zoonar/S. Heap/Zoonar/Getty Images Plus; p. 58: Danita Delimont/Gallo Images; p. 59: Tim Graham/Getty Images News; p. 62 (bus): sound35/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 62 (coach), p. 63 (Ex 28.2.1) & p. 63 (Ex 28.2.5): mladn61/E+; p. 62 (lorry): deepblue4you/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 62 (van): Dmitry Vereshchagin/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 62 (bicycle): Nikada/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 62 (motorbike) & p. 63 (Ex 28.2.3): Rawpixel Ltd/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 62 (T): Frank P wartenberg/Picture Press; p. 62 (C): William King/Taxi; p. 62 (B): Rubberball/Mike Kemp; p. 63 (Ex 28.2.2): DarthArt/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.2.4): RistoArnaudov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.2.6): VladislavStarozhilov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 66 (museum): Grzegorz Wozniak/EyeEm; p. 66 (out of order): Sharon Pruitt/EyeEm; p. 66 (sold out): Marcus Brodt/EyeEm; p. 66 (no vacancies): Richard Coombs/EyeEm; p. 66 (goat): Karl Schatz/Aurora; p. 70 (lipstick): bravo1954/E+; p. 72: Andersen Ross/photodisc; p. 73: BrianAJackson/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 75: Peopleimages/E+; p. 76 (soldier): JOHN GOMEZ/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 76 (sailor): Michael Peuckert/imageBROKER; p. 76 (pilot): Stocktrek Images/Stocktrek Images; p. 76 (police): Peter Dazeley/photographer's Choice RF; p. 76 (firefighter): Elliot Elliot/Johner Images; p. 78 (TL), p. 92 (film director) & p. 136 (photo 10): Richard Drury/Stone; p. 78 (CR): Neustockimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 78 (BL) & p. 136 (photo 14): Tim Roberts/The Image Bank; p. 78 (TR): Rick Gomez/Blend Images; p. 78 (CL) & p. 78 (BR): drbimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 80: Jose Luis Pelaez/Iconica; p. 84: Oleksiy Maksymenko/All Canada photos; p. 89 (boxer): Hill Street Studios; p. 89 (sailor): Glow Images, Inc/Glow; p. 89 (runner): Pete Saloutos/Blend Images; p. 90: ADRIAN DENNIS/AFP; p. 92 (horror film): Colin Hawkins/Stone; p. 92 (good review): David Schaffer/Caiainimage; p. 92 (big star): Owen Richards/Stone; p. 92 (fancy): Caiainimage/Sam Edwards/OJO+; p. 94 (piano): filo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 94 (violin): C Squared Studios/photodisc; p. 94 (cello): futureimage/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 94 (trumpet): Tetra Images; p. 94 (guitar): Dorling Kindersley/Dorling Kindersley; p. 94 (drums): Nerthuz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 94 (saxophone): Andreas Herpens/E+; p. 94 (keyboard): tiler84/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 94 (bass guitar): Cenker Atila/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 94 (flute), p. 132

(shirt) & p. 134 (tin): Hemera Technologies/photoObjects.net/ Getty Images Plus; p. 95: Amy T. Zielinski/Redferns; p. 96 (T): Andrew Watson/photolibrary; p. 96 (B): Lane Oatey/Blue Jean Images; p. 97: photo by Victor Ovies Arenas/Moment; p. 98 (skiing): Bernard van Dierendonck/LOOK-foto/LOOK; p. 98 (family holiday): Caiaimage/Paul Bradbury/OJO+; p. 98 (beach): Dennis Macdonald/photographer's Choice; p. 98 (rafting): Gary Pearl/photographer's Choice RF; p. 98 (cruise): oliale72/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; p. 98 (city break): NickNick\_ko/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; p. 102: kevinjeon00/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 103: Jupiterimages/photolibrary; p. 104 (latte): Peerayut Aoudsuk/EyeEm/EyeEm; p. 104 (cappuccino): djgunner/E+; p. 104 (coffee) & p. 120 (flag): Image Source; p. 104 (hot chocolate): creacart/E+; p. 104 (milkshake): John Shipes/StockFood Creative; p. 104 (tea): goir/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (smoothie): ma-k/E+; p. 104 (waffle): Brian Macdonald/DigitalVision; p. 104 (toastie): 9parusnikov/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (panini): David Murray/Dorling Kindersley; p. 104 (bagel), p. 104 (croissant), p. 132 (chair) & p. 140 (BL): Juanmonino/E+; p. 104 (wrap): Magone/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (crisps): Ever/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (baguette): olgna/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (muffin): Brian Hagiwara/photolibrary; p. 104 (cupcake): RuthBlack/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (crisps): Florin1605/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 104 (fries): Maximilian Stock Ltd./photolibrary; p. 104 (BR): PeopleImages/DigitalVision; p. 106 (fountain): DEA/S. VANNINI/De Agostini; p. 106 (mosque): Neil Farrin/robertharding/robertharding; p. 106 (cathedral): Paolo Neri/photodisc; p. 106 (temple): saiko3p/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 106 (market): UniversalImagesGroup/Universal Images Group; p. 106 (castle): Charles Bowman/photolibrary; p. 106 (statue): Gorazd Bertalanic/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 108: diverroy/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 110: Vincenzo Lombardo/photographer's Choice RF; p. 112 (TL): Sam Edwards/Caiaimage; p. 112 (TR): Matt Lincoln/Cultura; p. 112 (BR): Nick David/Iconica; p. 114 (webcam): Jupiterimages/photos.com/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (screen): Aydn PERÇEM/E+; p. 114 (microphone): vlat456/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (keyboard): Meilun/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (computer tower): fotos-v/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (mouse): keattikorn/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (memory stick): Grassetto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (printer): rasslava/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 114 (cd-rom): kyoshino/E+; p. 116 (T): Leontura/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 117: goir/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 119: lovegulii/E+; p. 120 (woman): Compassionate Eye Foundation/DigitalVision; p. 122 (globe): Anterovium/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 122 (T): Federica Grassi/Moment; p. 122 (B): Franciscus Nanang Triana/Moment; p. 124 (T): Jane Sweeney/Lonely Planet Images; p. 124 (B): RAMZI HAIDAR/AFP; p. 132 (bell): Dario Lo Presti/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 132 (fur hat): greg801/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 132 (bone): jclegg/E+; p. 132 (flag): AndreaAstes/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 132 (top): isa arslan/E+; p. 132 (sofa): praethip/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 132 (ladder): MargoJH/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 132 (tissue): stuartbur/E+; p. 132 (backet): flyfloor/E+; p. 133 (sofa): 5second/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 133 (chair): sunstock/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 133 (mirror): koosen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 133 (shirt): fruttipics/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 133 (table): DonNichols/E+; p. 133 (hat): David Franklin/photographer's Choice RF; p. 134 (shopping bag): Natalia Bolshan/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (chocolate box): clubfoto/E+; p. 134 (toothpaste): Bet\_Noire/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (apple juice): karandaev/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (biscuits): vovashevchuk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (flowers): jonathansloane/E+; p. 134 (jam): Andy Crawford; p. 134 (sugar): Ziviani/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (crisps): Ever/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (jug): Andy Crawford/

Dorling Kindersley; p. 134 (cola): scanrail/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (chocolate bar): subjug/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (juice): Andres Rodriguez/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (beef): Barcin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 134 (sugar): Science photo Library/Science photo Library; p. 134 (keys): Peter Dazeley/photographer's Choice; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.1): Nick Purser/Ikon Images; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.2): Jack Wild/Stockbyte; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.4): Lee Rogers/E+; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.5): Oktay Ortakcioglu/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.6): ansonsaw/E+; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.7): Hanis/E+; p. 135 (Ex 64.2.8): ferlistockphoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 136 (photo 1): Nick Dolding/Taxi; p. 136 (photo 2) & p. 142 (TR): Shannon Fagan/The Image Bank; p. 136 (photo 4): Sam Diephuis/Blend Images; p. 136 (photo 5) & p. 138 (photo 3): Hoxton/Martin Barraud/Hoxton; p. 136 (photo 6) & p. 138 (photo 2): Tara Moore/Stone; p. 136 (photo 7): Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 136 (photo 8): FangXiaNuo/E+; p. 136 (photo 9): Caiaimage/Sam Edwards/Caiaimage; p. 136 (photo 11): Nick Dolding/Iconica; p. 136 (photo 12): Kelvin Murray/Stone; p. 136 (photo 13): Portra/E+; p. 138 (Ex 66. c): DRB Images, LLC/E+; p. 138 (photo 1): Ezra Bailey/DigitalVision; p. 138 (photo 4): Multi-bits/The Image Bank; p. 138 (photo 5): Lilly Roadstones/Stone; p. 138 (photo 8): Bloom Productions/DigitalVision; p. 138 (photo 9) & p. 186 (garden): Michael Blann/Iconica; p. 138 (photo 10): Compassionate Eye Foundation/DigitalVision; p. 138 (photo 11): Erik Von Weber/The Image Bank; p. 138 (photo 13): Andrew Olney/DigitalVision; p. 138 (photo 14) & p. 140 (TL): Ezra Bailey/Iconica; p. 140 (BR): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; p. 142 (happy smiley) & (sad smiley): Valya Velcheva/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 142 (TL): Hoxton/Tom Merton/Hoxton; p. 142 (BL): Henrik Sorensen/Riser; p. 142 (BR): Flashpop/Stone; p. 150: Shioguchi/photographer's Choice; p. 152 (DJ): Dougal Waters/The Image Bank; p. 152 (hairdresser): skyneshers/E+; p. 152 (sunglasses): Coprid/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 152 (crossroads): Ryan McVay/The Image Bank; p. 152 (cashpoint): Richard Newstead/Moment; p. 152 (drawers): Andrey Semenov/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 152 (wheelchair): Talaj/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 152 (traffic lights): Zelfit/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 152 (toothpaste): Alexandrum79/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 152 (earrings): Elnur Amikishiyev/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 176 (nectarine): Tuomas\_Lehtinen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 176 (alarm): claudiividizia/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 176 (coconut): Viktar/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 176 (silk): neyro2008/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 178 (bin): GeorgePeters/E+; p. 178 (tent): Karam Miri/Hemera/Getty Images Plus; p. 178 (sleeping bag): Steve Gorton, Tim Ridley, Andy Crawford/Dorling Kindersley; p. 178 (torch): Tpopova/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 178 (toast): JoeGough/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 182: photoPlus Magazine/Future Publishing; p. 186 (danvers): UpperCut Images/UpperCut Images; p. 186 (chemist): Ariel Skelley/Blend Images; p. 186 (farm): Tara Moore/Taxi; p. 186 (river): shapecharge/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 186 (cushions): Maskot/DigitalVision; p. 186 (office): Axel Bueckert/EyeEm/EyeEm; p. 186 (building): Juice Images/Cultura; p. 204 (photo 1): SilviaJansen/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 204 (photo 2): sturti/E+.

### Illustrations

John Goodwin (Eye Candy Illustration), 302 Martina (KJA Artists), Gavin Reece (New Division), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Laszlo Veres (Beehive Illustration), Martin Diaz Rivas (Beehive Illustration), Kathy Baxendale, Humberto Blanco, Mark Duffin, Gillian Martin, David Whittle, Jo Taylor.

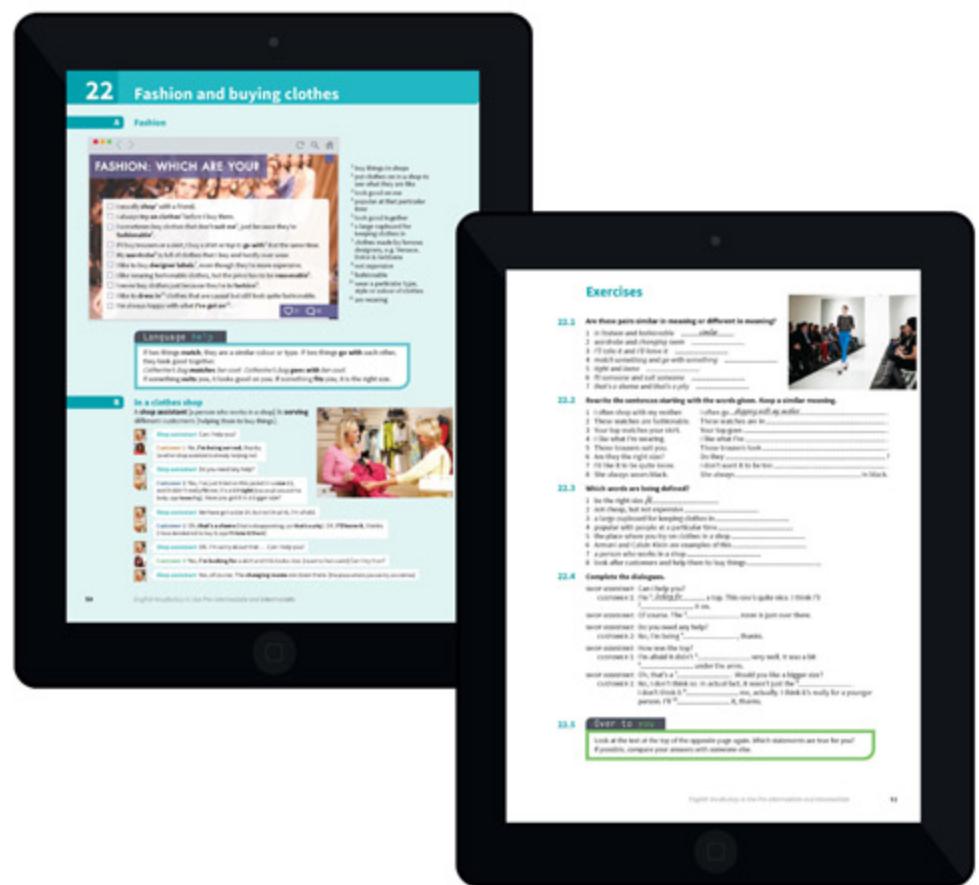
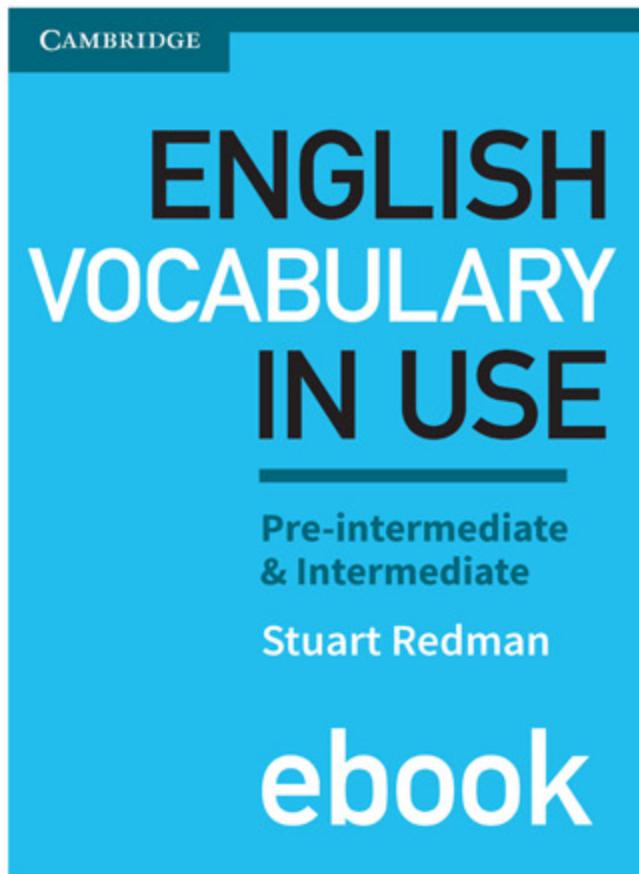
Cambridge dictionaries are the world's most widely used dictionaries for learners of English. The dictionaries are available in print and online at [dictionary.cambridge.org](http://dictionary.cambridge.org). Copyright © Cambridge University Press, reproduced with permission.

Designed and typeset by QBS.

Audio Production by Hart McLeod, Cambridge

# Enhanced ebook

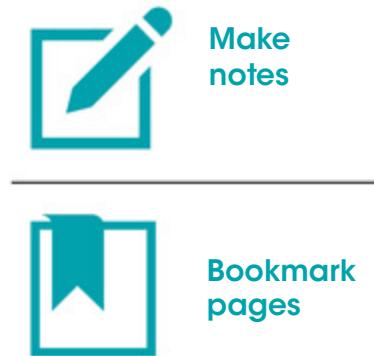
You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations as the book.



## Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

Using the ebook you can:



## How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions on the inside front cover of this book.